OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 27

The Death of King Arthur

La Mort Artu

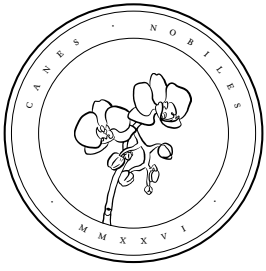
The Death of King Arthur

Part Two: The Battle of Salisbury

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

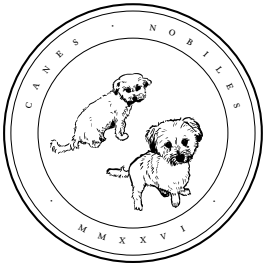


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 27 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows J. Douglas Bruce's text,
Mort Artu, an Old French Prose Romance of the XIIIth Century
(Halle, 1910), from Bibliothèque nationale MS. fr. 342

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps the manuscript's spelling as Bruce prints it, with u for v and i for j, almost no accents, and words joined as the scribe joined them (kil, sen, lapiela); his square brackets supply what the manuscript leaves out.

CONTENTS

I · Lancelot's Message Refused 9
II · The First Battle 18
III · The Second Battle 25
IV · Lancelot Spares the King 33
V · The Pope's Command 39
VI · The Queen Returned 45
VII · Lancelot Leaves Logres 54
VIII · Bors and Lionel Crowned 63
IX · Arthur Leaves Logres to Mordred 68
X · The Old Woman's Warning 73
XI · The Battle Before Gaunes 78
XII · Mordred's Forged Letter 84
XIII · Mordred Seeks the Queen 90

XIV · The Queen's Respite 94
XV · The Tower of London 99
XVI · The Siege of the Tower 105
XVII · Gawain's Challenge 109
XVIII · Lancelot Receives the Challenge 114
XIX · The King's Dismay 119
XX · The Terms of the Duel 125
XXI · Peace Refused 131
XXII · The Duel Begins 137
XXIII · Gawain's Strength at Midday 143
XXIV · The Midday Advantage 147
XXV · Lancelot Spares Gawain 154
XXVI · Gawain Carried Back 160
XXVII · The Romans Invade 164
XXVIII · The Battle with the Romans 168
XXIX · News of Mordred's Treason 177
XXX · Gawain's Counsel 181
XXXI · Mordred's Muster 185
XXXII · The Queen's Flight 191
XXXIII · The Queen in the Abbey 195
XXXIV · The Death of Gawain 200
XXXV · Gawain's Bier 207

XXXVI · The Lady of Beloe 212
XXXVII · The Tomb at Camelot 216
XXXVIII · The Wheel of Fortune 220
XXXIX · Merlin's Inscription 225
XL · Mordred's Defiance 229
XLI · The Battalions at Salisbury 234
XLII · Yvain and the Saxons 239
XLIII · King Yon Slain 243
XLIV · King Carados 250
XLV · The Fourth Battalion 256
XLVI · Mordred's Charge 264
XLVII · Arthur and Mordred Meet 269
XLVIII · The Death of Mordred 274
XLIX · The True Chapel 280
L · Excalibur 285
LI · The Tombs in the Chapel 292
LII · Lancelot Returns to Logres 296
LIII · The Battle of Winchester 302
LIV · The Archbishop's Hermitage 307
LV · Lancelot the Hermit 312
LVI · The Death of Lancelot 317

Lancelot's Message Refused

I

Lancelot weeps in a chamber, and tells the queen it grieves him that he cannot have peace with Arthur, whom he will spare in any battle. He promises his knights a sally before prime. In the host Mador wagers his head that the castle is full of knights. At dawn the red banner rises, Bors and Hector charge from the wood, and the castle opens its gate. Bors unhorses King Yon's brother, and Arthur's own pavilion falls with the dragon on its pole.

Atant se part la damoisele del host et fait tant
Thereupon herself departs the damsel from-the host and does so-much
kele uient au castiel, v ele estoit atendue. Si entre
that-she comes to-the castle where she was awaited So enters-she
dedens si celeement que nus ne saperchut de li, ne
within so secretly that any not himself-perceived of her neither
a lissir ne a lentree. Et quant ele fu uenue deuant
at the-going-out nor at the-entry And when she was come before
son signor et ele li ot conte ke il en nule maniere
her lord and she to-him had told that he in any manner
ne poroit pais trouer ne acorde enuers le roi Artu, Il en
not could peace find nor accord toward the king Arthur He thereof
fu molt courouchies — Non pas por cou kil doutast le
was very angered Not at-all for this that-he feared the
roi mais por cou kil lamoit de si grant amor que il en
king but for this that-he him-loved with so great love that he in
nule maniere ne uolsist son courouc ne sa mesceance. Lors
any manner not would-wish his anger nor his mischance Then
entra en vne cambre et commenca a penser trop durement,
entered-he into a chamber and began to think too hard
et en cel penser souspiroit trop parfondement Et les larmes
and in that thinking sighed-he too deeply And the tears

li uenoient as iex ki contreual la face li couroient.
to-him came to-the eyes which down the face to-him ran
Et quant il ot grant piece este en tel maniere tant dolans
And when he had great while been in such manner so sorrowful
ke nus plus, Si auint par auenture ke la roine soruint la
that none more So happened-it by adventure that the queen came-upon there
et le troua si pensif quele fu grant piece deuant lui, ains
and him found so pensive that-she was great while before him before
ke il le ueist. Et quant ele uoit kil pense si durement,
that he her saw And when she sees that-he thinks so hard
ele laraisna et li demanda por coi il faisoit si mate
she him-addressed and to-him asked for why he made so dejected
chiere; et il li dist ke lui pesoit trop angousseusement
face and he to-her said that to-him weighed too anguishedly
de cou kil ne puet trouer pais enuers le roi Artu. 'Dame',
of this that-he not can find peace toward the king Arthur Lady
fait il, 'si ne le di ie mie por cou ke ie aie paour
says he yet not it say I at-all for this that I may-have fear
kil ne nos puist gramment greuer, Mais io le di por cou
that-he — us may much harm But I it say for this
kil ma faites tantes honors et tantes bontes kil me
that-he me-has done so-many honors and so-many kindnesses that-it me
peseroit trop, sil li auenoit de son cors mescheance.'
would-weigh too-much if-it to-him happened in his body mischance
'Sire', fait ele, 'il couient regarder sa force, Mais totes
Lord says she it behooves to-regard his force But all
uoies ke en baes uos a faire?' 'Ie bee', fait il, 'que nos
the-same what thereof aspire you to do I aspire says he that we
nos en istrons demain et ke nos nos combatons a
ourselves thence shall-go-out tomorrow and that we ourselves fight with
ciaus del ost, et qui Dex en donra lonnor si lait,
those of-the host and to-whom God thereof will-give the-honor so it-have

car par defaute endroit moi ne por cose ke ie en
for by default on-the-part-of me nor for thing which I thereof
puisse faire ne remanra il pas ke li os, dont cis castiaus
may do not will-remain it at-all that the host whereby this castle
est assegies, nen soit prochainement ostes. Et, puis kil
is besieged thence may-be soon removed And since that-it
est ensi que ie en iaus ne puis pais trouer, ie sui cil
is thus that I in them not can peace find I am he
ki iamais nul nen espargnera, fors tant seulement al
who ever any not-thereof will-spare except so only to-the
cors le roi, car celui ne greueroie en nule maniere.'
body of-the king for him not would-I-harm in any manner
Atant ont finet lor conseil, et Lanselos ist de
Thereupon have-they finished their counsel and Lancelot goes-out from
la cambre et uient el grant palais Si sasiet entre ses
the chamber and comes into-the great palace So sits-himself among his
cheualiers et fait molt grignor samblant de ioie ke ses cuers
knights and makes much greater show of joy than his heart
ne li aportast, et commande ke les tables soient mises,
— to-him brought and commands that the tables be put
et kil fussent tot sierui ausi richement v plus comme
and that-they were all served as richly or more as
sil fussent en la maison le roi Artu. Si furent cele nuit
if-they were in the house of-the king Arthur So were-they that night
serui en la Ioieuse Garde et honoree Si hautement ke a
served in the Joyous Gard and honored So highly that with
paines peussent estre mieus. Et quant il orent mangiet,
pains might-they be better And when they had eaten
cil ki mieus estoient de Lanselot et plus priue li
those who best were with Lancelot and most intimate to-him
commencierent a demander: 'Sire, ke ferons nos demain?
began to ask Lord what shall-do we tomorrow

dont ne baes uos a issir de chaiens et asalir ciaus del ost
whether not aspire you to go-out from in-here and to-assail those of-the host
ains eure de thierce? Ciertes, se nos sommes plus ensierre
before hour of tierce Certainly if we are more shut-in
en tel maniere ke nos naillons ueoir ciaus ki la fors sont,
in such manner that we not-go to-see those who there out are
il nos tenront por falis?' 'or ne vos caille', fait Lanselos,
they us will-hold for failed now not you let-it-trouble says Lancelot
'de cou ke nos ne nos soumes meu. sont il ore plus
of this that we not ourselves are moved are they now more
aseur kil nestoient deuant et nos doutent mains kil
assured than-they not-were before and us fear less than-they
ne soloient; Car il quident ore bien, por cou ke nos ne
— were-wont For they think now well for this that we not
sommes fors issu, que nos naiemes arme chaiens; Mais,
are out gone-forth that we not-have armed-men in-here But
se Deu plest, ains demain uespre saront il bien ke ie ne
if God please before tomorrow evening will-know they well that I not
sui mie seus chaiens et se repentiront de cou kil ont
am at-all alone in-here and themselves will-repent of this that-they have
enpris, car, sans faille, ains eure de prime istrons nos de
undertaken for without fail before hour of prime shall-go-out we from
cest castiel et lor courrons sus. Et por cou si uos pri
this castle and on-them shall-run up And for this so you pray-I
que uos soiies garni de uos armes bien matin, Si ke nos
that you may-be furnished with your arms well early So that we
puissons monter de quele eure ke nos uerrons nostre point.'
may mount at whatever hour that we shall-see our point
A cest conseil sasentent tot, car molt lor plaist et
To this counsel themselves-assent all for much to-them pleases and
atalente kil puissent assambler as gens le roi Artu,
suits that-they may join-battle with-the men of-the king Arthur

et ce lor donne grant cuer et grant hardement kil
and this to-them gives great heart and great boldness that-they
ont en aide Boort et Lanselot, les deus cheualiers del
have in aid Bors and Lancelot the two knights of-the
monde ki plus sont renoumet de grant prouece. Et quant
world who most are renowned for great prowess And when
il fu eure daler couchier, si salerent reposer tresca
it was hour to-go to-bed so themselves-went-they to-rest until
lendemain et se tinrent cele nuit si coiement kil
the-morrow and themselves held that night so quietly that-they
en parlerent asses en lost et disent au roi tout
thereof spoke a-good-deal in the-host and said to-the king all
vraiement ke bien seust il kil auoit laiens si poi de
truly that well might-know he that-it had in-there so little of
gent ke legierement et tost pora prendre le castiel.
men that lightly and soon he-will-be-able take the castle
Et li rois dist kil ne pooit croire kil ni eust grant
And the king said that-he not could believe that-it not-there were great
plente de gent: ‘Ciertes, sire’, fait Mador de la Porte, ‘ie uos
plenty of men Certainly lord says Mador of the Gate I you
di por uoir kil i a gent a grant plente et cheualerie
tell for truth that-it there has men in great plenty and chivalry
bonne et meruilleuse.’ ‘Coment le saues uos?’ fait me sire
good and marvelous How it know you says my lord
Gauains. ‘Sire’, fait Mador, ‘ie le sai bien et si uos dirai
Gawain Lord says Mador I it know well and so you shall-I-tell
coument. Ie uos donrai ma teste a coper, se uos ne les uees
how I you shall-give my head to cut if you not them see
issir fors ains demain au soir.’ en tel maniere parlerent
go-out forth before tomorrow at-the evening in such manner spoke-they
cele nuit molt longement en lost de ciaus del castiel. Et
that night very long in the-host of those of-the castle And

quant il fu eure de couchier il fisent lor ost escargaitier
when it was hour of going-to-bed they had their host watched
de toutes pars si bien et si meruilleusement ke poi lor
from all sides so well and so marvelously that little to-them
peust on forfaire, sans grant effort de gent. A lendemain,
could one harm without great force of men On the-next-day
si tost comme cil del castiel estoient apareilliet et il
so soon as those of-the castle were arrayed and they
orent establies iuskes a .vi. batailles, Il fisent drecer sor la
had established up to six battalions They had raised upon the
maistre tour de laiens lensegne uermeille. Et si tost comme
master tower of in-there the-banner red And so soon as
cil ki estoient en lagait le coisirent, Si le moustrerent
those who were in the-ambush it spied So it showed-they
a Boort et a Hestor. Et Boors dist maintenant a ses
to Bors and to Hector And Bors said at-once to his
compaignons: 'biau signor, or ni a ke del mouoir. ie
companions fair lords now not-there has but of-the setting-out I
uoi bien a cele ensegne ke me sires est montes, entre lui
see well by that banner that my lord is mounted between him
et sa compaignie, et kil istront fors tot maintenant. or
and his company and that-they will-go-out forth all at-once now
ni a ke del ferir nos en lost Si meruilleusement
not-there has but of-the striking ourselves into the-host So marvelously
ke en nostre uenir ne remaigne tres ne pauillons en estant
that in our coming not may-remain tent nor pavilion in standing
ne rien ke nos encontrons ke tot ne soit uerse a
nor anything that we may-meet that all not may-be overturned to
terre.' et cil dient que asseur soient il kil feront tot
ground and they say that sure be they that-they will-do all
lor pooir de destruire et de confondre lor anemis.
their power to destroy and to confound their enemies

A ceste parole sen issent del boskiel v il
At this word themselves-thence go-out-they from-the thicket where they
auoient fait lor enbuscement, et se misent tot fors au
had made their ambush and themselves put all out on-the
plain, puis laissierent corre uers lost au plus coiement
plain then let-they run toward the-host at-the most quietly
kil porent. Mais onques si coiement ne le sorent faire ke
that-they could But ever so quietly not it knew-they do that
cil del ost ne sen apercheussent bien par le friente
those of-the host not themselves-thereof might-perceive well by the din
de ciaus kil oirent uenir si secreement. Si sescrierent
of those whom-they heard come so secretly So themselves-cried-out
cil ki premiers les uirent: 'or as armes! or as armes!'
those who first them saw now to-the arms now to-the arms
Et ce fu si haut que cil del castiel les oirent tot
And this was so loud that those of-the castle them heard all
clerement et disent entraus que li agais sestoit ferus
clearly and said among-themselves that the ambush had-itself struck
en lost: Or ne faloit fors daler apres et dassalir les de
into the-host Now not lacked-it except to-go after and to-assail them from
lautre part. Si le fisent tot ensi com il le deuiserent. Lors
the-other side So it did-they all thus as they it devised Then
commanda Lanselos que la grans porte soit ouierte et kil
commanded Lancelot that the great gate be opened and that-they
ississent tot fors, si ordeneement com il deuoient. Et cil si
should-go-out all forth so orderly as they ought And they so
fisent maintenant, car molt auoient grant talent de fors issir.
did at-once for much had-they great desire of out to-go
Et Boors, ki fu issus de son enbuscement, il encontra
And Bors who was gone-out from his ambush he met
sor .i. destrier, grant et fort, le frere au roi Yon, arme
upon a charger great and strong the brother of-the king Yon armed

molt biel et molt ricement; et, si tost com il sentreuirent,
very fairly and very richly and so soon as they each-other-saw
il laissent aler les ceuaus li uns encontre lautre. Li freres
they let go the horses the one against the-other The brother
au roi brise sa lance et fait uoler en pieces. Et Boors
of-the king breaks his lance and makes fly in pieces And Bors
le fiert si durement ke li escus ne li haubiers nel
him strikes so hard that the shield nor the hauberk not-him
garantist kil ne li mece par mi le cors le fier del
protected that-he not to-him might-put through amid the body the iron of-the
glaue. Il len paint bien si le porte del ceual a la
lance He him-thence pushes well so him carries from-the horse to the
terre si atorne kil gist en pasmisons, si comme cil ki
ground so served that-he lies in swoons so as he whom
angousse de mort destraint. Et li autre, ki apres uenoient,
anguish of death constrains And the others who after came
se fierent en lost. Si commencent a abatre tres et
themselves struck into the-host So begin-they to knock-down tents and
pauillons et a ocire et a metre par tiere quan kil
pavilions and to kill and to put to ground whatever that-they
pueent ataindre. Adont commence par mi lost li cris
can reach Then begins through amid the-host the cry
et la huee, si grans ke on ni oist pas Diu
and the shouting so great that one not-there would-have-heard at-all God
tonnant. Si keurent as armes cil ki desarme estoient. et
thundering So run to-the arms those who unarmed were and
quant me sire Gauains uoit ke la cose est a cou menee,
when my lord Gawain sees that the thing is to this brought
Il commande ke on li aport ses armes hasteement, et
He commands that one to-him may-bring his arms hastily and
cil si font qui il lot commande. Li rois se fait armer
they so do whom he it-had commanded The king himself has arm

a grant besoing et ausi font tot li haut baron del ost,
in great need and also do all the high barons of-the host
roi et prince, Si comme cil ki ne sont pas aseur por la
kings and princes So as those who not are at-all sure for the
grant noise kil oent de toutes pars. Et si tost comme
great noise which-they hear from all sides And so soon as
li rois fu montes, entre lui et sa gent, Il uit ke ses
the king was mounted between him and his men He saw that his
pauillons chei a tiere et li dragons ki par deseure le
pavilion fell to ground and the dragon which right above the
pumiel estoit; et ausi commenchierent a cheoir et a uerser
pommel was and also began to fall and to overturn
a terre tot li autre pauillon, ki pres diluec estoient.
to ground all the other pavilions which near from-there were
et tot cou faisoit Boors et Hestor, ki ne baoient fors a
and all this did Bors and Hector who not aspired except to
sousprendre le roi en son pauillon, sil le peussent faire.
surprise the king in his pavilion if-they it could do

The First Battle

II

Gawain stuns Hector, and Bors strikes Gawain's helmet two fingers deep. Lancelot rescues Bors's men, and the slaughter is great on both sides. Grieving for Gaheriet, Gawain kills sixty knights by his own hand, and wounds Lionel in the shoulder. The castle loses seven score knights and the host a hundred, and both sides give the prize to Gawain and Lancelot. Lancelot tells his men they have tested the host, and they agree to ride out again.

Quant me sire Gauains uit la mellee et la merueille kil
When my lord Gawain saw the melee and the marvel which-they
faisoient des pauillons abatre et uerser et dommes ocire,
made of-the pavilions to-knock-down and to-overturn and of-men to-kill
a lor pooirs, Si les moustre le roi et li dist: 'Sire, ueschi
to their powers So them shows-he the king and to-him said Lord see-here
Boort et Hestor, ki nos font si grant damage.' Lors laisse
Bors and Hector who us do so great harm Then lets
corre me sire Gauains a Hestor Si le fiert si durement de
run my lord Gawain at Hector So him strikes-he so hard from
sor le hiaume ke tot lestonne, et, sil ne se fust pris au
upon the helmet that all him-stuns and if-he not himself were taken to-the
col del ceual legierement, peust estre cheus. Me sire Gauains,
neck of-the horse lightly he-might be fallen My lord Gawain
ki tant le het mortelment kil ne puet plus, quant il le
who so-much him hates mortally that-he not can more when he him
uoit si estonne, Si nel uieut pas laissier atant, comme cil
sees so stunned So not-him wishes-he at-all to-leave so-far as he
ki molt sauoit de guerre, ains requeure et le fiert un autre
who much knew of war rather strikes-again and him strikes an other
cop Si kil le fait tot enbronchier sor le col del ceual. Et
blow So that-he him makes all bow-down upon the neck of-the horse And

quant Boors uoit mon signor Gauain, ki si tient pres Hestor
when Bors sees my lord Gawain who so holds close Hector
ke por .i. poi kil ne laporte a tiere, Il ne se puet tenir
that for a little that-he — him-carries to ground He not himself can hold
kil ne li aide, car molt amoit Hestor. Il sadrece
that-he — to-him may-help for much loved-he Hector He himself-directs
uers mon signor Gauain, lespee drechie encontremont, si le
toward my lord Gawain the-sword raised upward so him
fiert si durement de tote sa force quil li met lespee
strikes-he so hard with all his force that-he to-him puts the-sword
par mi lelme .ij. dois en parfont. Li cols fu grans et
through amid the-helm two fingers in deep The blow was great and
si furnis ke me sire Gauains en fu tos estonnes. Si point
so stout that my lord Gawain thereof was all stunned So spurs-he
outre maintenant et laisse Hestor et se part de Boort
past at-once and leaves Hector and himself parts from Bors
si estourdis kil ne set quel part ses cheuaus le porte.
so dazed that-he not knows what way his horse him carries
Ensi fu commenchie la bataille et grans et meruilleuse
Thus was begun the battle both great and marvelous
deuant le tre le roi Artu, Mais cil de la compaignie
before the tent of-the king Arthur But those of the company
Boort, ki en mi lost sestoient enbatu, a cou kil
of-Bors who in amid the-host themselves-were thrust for this that-they
nestoient mie grant gent, fussent maintenant mal bailli
not-were at-all great people would-have-been at-once ill used
et ocis, Se ne fust Lanselos et cil del castiel ki les
and killed If not were Lancelot and those of-the castle who them
secoururent au plus tost kil porent. Et quant ce
succored at-the most soon that-they could And when this
fu cose kil se furent mellet as autres, Lors
was thing that-they themselves were mingled with-the others Then

ueissies cols donner et recheuoir et hommes morir
might-you-have-seen blows given and received and men die
et ocire a molt grant dolour. Si sentremoustrerent bien en
and kill with very great sorrow So each-other-showed-they well in
poi deure kil sentrehaioient de mortel haine, car tant
little of-hour that-they each-other-hated with mortal hatred for so-many
en i ot docis et de mors celui iour, et dune part
thereof there had of-slain and of dead that day both on-one side
et dautre, kil na el monde si dur cuer ki toute
and on-the-other that-it not-has in-the world so hard heart which all
pitie nen deust auoir. Mais sor tous ciaus ki a cele
pity not-thereof ought to-have But above all those who at that
bataille furent et ki le iour porterent armes le fisent bien
battle were and who the day bore arms it did well
entre mon signor Gauain et Lanselot. Si dist li contes ke
between my lord Gawain and Lancelot So says the tale that
tant estoit me sire Gauains dolans de la mort Gaheriet,
so-much was my lord Gawain sorrowful for the death of-Gaheriet
son frere, kil lor ocist le ior .lx. cheualiers de sa main,
his brother that-he of-them killed the day sixty knights by his hand
sans ciaus kil naura et sans maint autre grant damage
without those whom-he wounded and without many another great harm
kil lor a fait. Et, sans faille, onques en tot le ior
which-he to-them has done And without fail ever in all the day
ne pot recroire, ains dura ses biens faires en tel maniere
not could-he grow-weary rather lasted his well doing in such manner
desci au uespre, et plus eust il dure, se ne fust Boors
until to-the evening and more would-have he lasted if not were Bors
ki apres eure de uespres le sousprist en la bataille, si
who after hour of vespers him surprised in the battle so
comme cil ki le gaitoit. Si le feri a la trauerse parmi
as he who him watched So him struck-he at the cross through-the

lelme Mais il ne li fist pas gramment de mal. et lors
helm But he not to-him did at-all much of harm and then
sentrecoururent sus et commencierent une mellee si grant
ran-at-each-other up and began a melee so great
et si felenesse ke asses tost en peust on ueoir le plus
and so cruel that a-good-deal soon thereby might one see the most
preu. Mais cil ki entor estoient ne le soufrirent pas, ains
valiant But those who around were not it suffered at-all rather
se ferirent entraus, Si ke iluec endroit recommencha
themselves struck among-them So that there right began-again
la bataille si perilleuse ke maint preudomme i furent
the battle so perilous that many worthy-men there were
mort. Si i peussent tost pierdre cil dedens, a cou kil
dead So there might soon lose those within for this that-they
estoient trop mains ke cil de fors, Se ne fussent li
were too-much fewer than those from outside If not were the
.iiij. cousin, Lanselos et Boors et Hestors et Lyoniaus.
four cousins Lancelot and Bors and Hector and Lionel
Et nanporquant Lyoniaus sen ala naures dune plaie
And nevertheless Lionel himself-thence went wounded of-a wound
ke me sire Gauains li fist en lespaule senestre, molt
which my lord Gawain to-him made in the-shoulder left very
grant. Si se misent les gens Lanselot en lor castiel Et
great So themselves put the men of-Lancelot in their castle And
cil de lost retornerent a lor loges, au plus tost kil
those of the-host returned to their lodges at-the most soon that-they
porent, si comme cil qui le ior auoient eut asses trauail et
could so as those who the day had had much toil and
paine. Et quant cil dedens furent descendu et desarme, il
pain And when those within were dismounted and disarmed they
regarderent combien de gent il pooient auoir perdu en cele
looked how-many of men they could have lost in that

bataille Si trouerent kil lor en faloit bien iusques a
battle So found-they that-it to-them thereof lacked fully up to
.vij. uins cheualiers, Sans les serians ki estoient ocis, dont
seven score knights Without the sergeants who were killed whereof
li contes ne fait pas mention; ne de tot cou nauoient il
the tale not makes at-all mention nor for all this not-had they
nul restor fors ke .x. cheualiers prisons, kil auoient
any recompense except that ten knights prisoners whom-they had
pris en la bataille, et les auoient amenes auoec aus.
taken in the battle and them had brought with them

Quant il furent apareillie en lor osteus, il alerent tot
When they were made-ready in their lodgings they went all
mangier a cort, li naure Et li autre sain, si com il estoit
to-eat at court the wounded And the others sound so as it was
mieus auenu a lun ca lautre. Cele nuit apres souper
best happened to the-one than the-other That night after supper
parlerent asses de mon signor Gauain et disent bien li plus
spoke-they a-good-deal of my lord Gawain and said well the most
preudomme de laiens ke, sans faille, me sire Gauains estoit li
worthy-men of in-there that without fail my lord Gawain was the
plus preudom de son eage et li miudres cheualiers ki fust;
most worthy-man of his age and the best knight who were
Ne nus ne lauoit si bien fait celui ior com il, fors solement
Nor any not it-had so well done that day as he except only
Lanselos. Et cil del ost, quant il furent reuenu a lor tentes
Lancelot And those of-the host when they were returned to their tents
et il orent regarde combien de cheualiers il pooient auoir
and they had looked how-many of knights they could have
perdus, Si trouerent kil en auoient perdu .c. dont
lost So found-they that-they thereof had lost a-hundred whereof
il furent molt courouchiet. Et quant il orent mangiet celui
they were very angered And when they had eaten that

soir, Si commencierent a parler de ciaus del castiel et disent
evening So began-they to speak of those of-the castle and said
ke uoirement nestoit mie li castiaus sans gent et kil
that truly not-was at-all the castle without men and that-they
estoient asses preudomme et uighereus. Si donnerent celui
were a-good-deal worthy-men and vigorous So gave-they that
ior le pris et lonor a mon signor Gauain et a Lanselot
day the prize and the-honor to my lord Gawain and to Lancelot
et disent ke ce estoient li doi ki mieus lauoient fait en
and said that these were the two who best it-had done in
la bataille. Et quant il fu eure de couchier, si salerent
the battle And when it was hour of going-to-bed so themselves-went-they
reposer li un et li autre, car molt estoient trauilliet et lasset.
to-rest the ones and the others for very were-they toiled and wearied
Et li autre gaitierent lost tote la nuit, por ce ke, se cil
And the others watched the-host all the night for this that if those
del castiel uenissent, kil nes trouaissent mie desgarnis.
of-the castle should-come that-they not-them might-find at-all unprovided

Cele nuit apres souper parla Lanselos a ses compaignons
That night after supper spoke Lancelot to his companions
et lor dist: 'Signor, or aues apris comment cil del ost
and to-them said Lords now have-you learned how those of-the host
seuent ferir de lance et despee, car pres vos ont asaies
know-how to-strike with lance and with-sword for closely you have-they tried
et vos iaus. Mais, Deu merci, il ne sen puent pas
and you them But God thanks they not themselves-thereof can at-all
molt esioir del gaaing kil ont fait, encor eussent il en
much rejoice of-the gain which-they have made though had they in
camp asses plus de gent ke nous. Il nos est, Diu mercit,
field a-good-deal more of men than we It to-us is God thanks
bien auenut de ceste iornee. Or esgardes entre uos ke nos
well happened of this day Now consider among you what we

ferons demain et comment nos nos conterrons des ore en
shall-do tomorrow and how we ourselves shall-conduct from now on
auant, car ie uolroie bien, sil pooit estre, ke nos mesisons
forward for I would-wish well if-it could be that we might-put
ceste guerre a si honorable fin ke nostre honors i fust
this war to so honorable end that our honor therein were
maintenue autresi com ele a este ailleurs que chi; Et, sil uos
maintained just as it has been elsewhere than here And if-it you
plaisoit, ie uolroie bien ke nos ississons demain fors, ausi
pleased I would-wish well that we should-go-out tomorrow forth just
comme nos fesimes hui, et assamblissons a ciaus del ost.
as we did today and should-join-battle with those of-the host
Et, sil uos estoit auis ke mieus vausist li remanoirs, Par
And if-it you were opinion that better would-be-worth the remaining By
foi, ancois remanroie ie chi auoec vos que ie ne fesise uostre
faith rather would-remain I here with you than I not would-do your
uolente del tot. or me dites le quel vos uolres ke ie en
will of-the all now me tell the which you will-wish that I thereof
face, car rien nen sera fait sans uostre los.' Et il
may-do for anything not-thereof will-be done without your counsel And they
sacordent tot a ceste cose kil sen istront demain.
themselves-agree all to this thing that-they themselves-thence will-go-out tomorrow

The Second Battle

III

The castle forms eight battalions, Lancelot leading the last. Bors vows to avenge Lionel on Gawain. Next morning Gawain and Bors run each other through and fall, Bors the worse hurt. A knight of the Land Outer routs Arthur's men, and the castle's men would have carried Gawain off had Yvain not killed that knight and rescued him. Arthur fights all day better than any man of his age, but Lancelot and Hector keep his men from winning the field.

Ore fait Lanselos: 'puis kil est ensi ke uos uoles assambler
Now says Lancelot since that-it is thus that you wish to-join-battle
a aus, or regardes entre uos ki demain istra premiers.'
with them now consider among you who tomorrow will-go-out first
Et Boors dist ke ia nus nen istra deuant lui, car ia si
And Bors said that ever any not-thence will-go-out before him for ever so
tost li iors ne sera uenus kil sen istra del castiel
soon the day not will-be come that-he himself-thence will-go-out from-the castle
tos aprestes dassambler a ciaus del ost. Et Hestor dist kil
all ready to-join-battle with those of-the host And Hector said that-he
sen istra apres a tote le seconde bataille. Et Elyser,
himself-thence will-go-out after with all the second battalion And Eliezer
li fils au roi Pelles, dist kil conduira la tierce bataille,
the son of-the king Pelles said that-he will-lead the third battalion
ciaus meesmes kil amena de son pais, ki bien estoient a
those same whom-he brought from his country who well were at
tot le mains .cc. cheualier preu et hardit. Et uns autres
all the least two-hundred knights valiant and bold And an other
cheualiers de Sorelois, dus d'Aroel (et estoit ensi apieles) —
knight of Sorelois duke of-Aroel and was thus called
cheualiers ert molt preus et hardis — demande la quarte
knight was-he very valiant and bold asks the fourth

bataille a conduire, et on li otroia molt uolentiers, por
battalion to lead and one to-him granted-it very willingly for
cou ke preudom estoit. et apres fisent tant kil establirent
this that worthy-man he-was and after did-they so-much that-they established
des gens de laiens de chi a .viij. batailles; et ot en
of-the men of in-there from here to eight battalions and had-it in
cascune a tot le mains cent homes. Et en la derraine, v
each at all the least hundred men And in the last where
il auoit le grignor pooir et le grignor fiance de secors a
it had the greater power and the greater confidence of help to
auoir, se mestiers lor fust, misent il a conduire Lanselot.
have if need to-them were put they to lead Lancelot

Ensi establirent il lor batailles des le soir deuant. Et
Thus established they their battalions from the evening before And
misent chieuetaines et conduiseours en cascune tel com il
put-they captains and leaders in each such as they
quidoient ke mestiers lor fust. Cele nuit regarderent les
thought that need to-them were That night looked-they-at the
naures et les blecies, Et quant Boors uit ke Lyoniaus, ses
wounded and the hurt And when Bors saw that Lionel his
freres, estoit blecies et il sot ke mesire Gauains lot ensi
brother was hurt and he knew that my-lord Gawain him-had thus
naure, il nen fu pas petit courouchies, car molt amoit
wounded he not-thereof was at-all little angered for much loved-he
son frere de bonne amor. Si dist, oiant tos ciaus de laiens,
his brother with good love So said-he hearing all those of in-there
kil le uengeroit, sil en uenoit en liu v de mon
that-he him would-avenge if-he thereto came in place either on my
signor Gauain meesme v de son frere ki remes estoit. Si
lord Gawain himself or on his brother who remained was So
ot iluec plusors ki le tinrent a enfance de menachier
had-there there several who it held for childishness to threaten

mon signor Gauain, car bien connissoient et lun et lautre.
my lord Gawain for well knew-they both the-one and the-other
Cele nuit se reposerent bien cil del castiel ki naure
That night themselves rested well those of-the castle who wounded
estoient, car molt erent lasse et trauillie. Et lendemain, si
were for much were-they weary and toiled And the-next-day so
tost comme li iors aparut, ancois ke li solaus fust leues,
soon as the day appeared before that the sun were risen
tot maintenant kil se furent uestu et cauchie, Il
all at-once that-they themselves were dressed and shod They
coururent a lor armes. Et quant il furent apreste et monte
ran to their arms And when they were ready and mounted
sor lor cheuaus, Il issirent del castiel, li uns apres lautre,
upon their horses They went-out from-the castle the one after the-other
Si ordeneement com il lauoient deuiset le soir deuant.
So orderly as they it-had devised the evening before
Mais ce fu au plus coiement kil porent, por cou ke
But this was at-the most quietly that-they could for this that
cil del ost nen oisent la friente ne le tumulte, Mais
those of-the host not-thereof might-hear the din nor the tumult But
onques nel sorent faire si coiement ke cil del ost nel
ever not-it knew-they do so quietly that those of-the host not-it
seussent tot maintenant kil commencierent a deualer. Si
might-know all at-once that-they began to descend So
commencierent erraument a crier ‘as armes!’ Et lors salirent
began-they forthwith to cry to arms And then leapt
sus par lost cil ki erent desarme Si prisent lor armes
up through the-host those who were unarmed So took-they their arms
et issent fors des pauillons, tot apareillie, et montent
and go-out forth from-the pavilions all arrayed and mount
au mieus kil porent et apreste de recheuoir cex kil
at-the best that-they could and ready to receive those whom-they

ueoient uenir a grans effors. Et, se cil dedens auoient lor
saw come with great efforts And if those within had their
gent apareillie au mieus kil porent, autresi fisent cil de
men arrayed at-the best that-they could likewise did those from
fors. Si auint ke cil de fors, quant il furent apreste,
outside So happened-it that those from outside when they were ready
[uirent] ke me sire Gauains conduist la premiere bataille
saw that my lord Gawain led the first battalion
et fu deuant tos ses compaignons a lassambler. Et quant
and was before all his companions at the-joining And when
il uit uenir Boort, ki ausi conduisoit la premiere bataille,
he saw come Bors who also led the first battalion
Si le connut bien as armes et en fu molt lies; car ce
So him knew-he well by-the arms and thereof was much glad for this
estoit uns hom qui il haoit molt morteument, car on li
was a man whom he hated very mortally for one to-him
auoit dit kil auoit ocis de sa main Guerrehet, son frere.
had said that-he had killed with his hand Guerrehet his brother
Quant il sentraprochierent, si laissent courre li un
When they each-other-approached so let run the ones
encontre les autres, les glaues alongies, tant comme li cheual
against the others the lances lengthened as-far as the horses
pueent aler. Et sentrefierent si durement ke li escut ne li
can go And each-other-strike-they so hard that the shields nor the
hauberc ne les garandiscent kil ne se metent les fiers
hauberks not them protect that-they not themselves may-put the irons
des glaues parmi les cors Si en parfont ke merueille iert
of-the lances through the bodies So in deep that marvel would-be
sil en garissent. Il senpaignent bien Si sentreportent
if-they thereof should-recover They themselves-push well So each-other-carry
a terre tot en trauers, si enfierret kil ni a celui qui
to ground all in across so ironed that-it not there-has the-one who

ait pooir de releuer. Ne ce nest pas merueille, car a
may-have power of rising-again Nor this not-is at-all marvel for in
lun et a lautre paroit li fiers par detriers, Mais Boors
the-one and in the-other appeared the iron by behind But Bors
fu li plus blechies. Apres cestui cop se desbuschierent
was the most hurt After this blow themselves came-out-of-ambush
les .ij. premieres batailles Si laissent courre li un encontre
the two first battalions So let run the ones against
les autres et se uont entreferir si efforciement, a
the others and themselves go to-strike-each-other so forcefully for
cou kil sentrehaoient si morteument ke trop. Si en
this that-they each-other-hated so mortally that too-much So thereof
peussies ueoir en poi deure .c. caoir, ki nont pooir
could-you see in little of-hour a-hundred fall who not-have power
diaus releuer, car li plusor en gisent mort et li plusor
of-them to-rise for the most thereof lie dead and the most
en sont nauret. Si torna a cele fois la desconfiture et
thereof are wounded So turned at that time the rout and
li meschies sor ciaus del ost, Car en la premiere bataille
the mishap upon those of-the host For in the first battalion
cex del castiel auoit .i. cheualier de tiere foraine ki
of-those of-the castle had-it a knight of land outer who
faisoit trop grant merueilles darmes en cele enpainte, Si
did too great marvels of-arms in that charge So
que par lui se desconfirent li home le roi Artu.
that through him themselves discomfited the men of-the king Arthur
Et quant il orent .i. poi widie la place, cil del castiel
And when they had a little emptied the place those of-the castle
coururent cele part v me sire Gauains et Boors gisoient
ran that way where my lord Gawain and Bors lay
naures Si les prisent et en eussent porte a force mon
wounded So them took-they and thence would-have carried by force my

signor Gauain, a cou kil nauoit en lui nule deffense, Se
lord Gawain for this that-he not-had in him any defense If
ne fust mesire Yuains, li fils au roi Vrien, ki conduisoit
not were my-lord Yvain the son of-the king Urien who led
la seconde bataille au roi Artu. Si uint cele part a
the second battalion of-the king Arthur So came-he that way with
tote sa bataille, por lui rescoure, et se feri entraus, ausi
all his battalion for him to-rescue and himself struck among-them just
comme li leus se fiert entre les brebis, et sadrece au
as the wolf himself strikes among the sheep and himself-directs to-the
cheualier de tiere foraine et le fiert si durement de sa
knight of land outer and him strikes so hard with his
lance que li escus ne li haubiers ne li fu garans kil
lance that the shield nor the hauberk not to-him was protection that-he
ne li face lame partir del cors. puis se fiert
not to-him may-make the-soul part from-the body then himself strikes
entre les autres Et fiert tant a destre et a senestre que,
among the others And strikes so-much to right and to left that
maugre aus tous, lor fait laissier mon signor Gauain,
despite them all them makes-he leave my lord Gawain
v il uolsist v non. Et nanporquant en cele angousse
whether they would or not And nevertheless in that anguish
se trauaillierent il tant kil en porterent Boort
themselves toiled they so-much that-they thence carried Bors
dedens son escut el castiel amont. Si ne uit onques
within his shield into-the castle above So not saw ever
nus hom si grant duel faire a nule dame comme la roine
any man so great grief make to any lady as the queen
Genieure en fist, quant ele le uit si durement nauret.
Guinevere thereof made when she him saw so hard wounded

Atant furent li mire mandet ki li traisent le
Thereupon were the physicians sent-for who to-him drew the
tronchon fors del cors atot le fier. Et quant il orent ueue
stump out of-the body with-all the iron And when they had seen
sa plaie, ensi com il le porent ueoir, si disent kele estoit
his wound thus as they it could see so said-they that-it was
molt perilleuse, Mais totes uoies le quidoient il rendre tot
very perilous But all the-same him thought they to-render all
sain et tot haitie dedens cort tierme. Si i metent entente
sound and all healthy within short term So thereto put-they attention
et paine, selonc cou kil pueent. Et me sire Yuains, ki
and pain according-to this that-they can And my lord Yvain who
estoit en la bataille, saisist mon signor Gauain, maugre tos ses
was in the battle seized my lord Gawain despite all his
anemis, et lenporta a garison. Mais cil ki furent assamble
enemies and him-carried-off to safety But those who were assembled
es pres sor la riuiere del Hombre commencierent des
in-the meadows upon the river of-the Humber began from
bien matin la mellee, ki dura dusques a eure de uespres,
well early the melee which lasted until to hour of vespers
en tel saison comme en este. Si ne ueistes onques, ne
in such season as in summer So not saw ever neither
vos ne autres, si cruel bataille ne si felenesse comme cele fu
you nor others so cruel battle nor so fierce as that was
le ior, car molt en i ot docis et de naures dune part
the day for many thereof there had of-killed and of wounded on-one side
et dautre. Celui ior porta li rois Artus armes et le fist si
and on-the-other That day bore the king Arthur arms and it did so
bien kil nauoit el mont home de son eage ki ausi bien
well that-it not-had in-the world man of his age who as well
le peust auoir fait. Et encore laferme lestore kil ni
it might have done And still it-affirms the-history that-it not-there

ot de sa partie icelui ior ne uiel ne ione ki ausi bien le
had on his part that day neither old nor young who as well it
fesist de toutes cheualeries com il le fist; et par la proece
did of all chivalries as he it did and by the prowess
de lui et par lessample de son bien faire kil donnoit si
of him and by the-example of his well doing which-he gave so
bien a ses hommes, fisent si bien si cheualier ke cil del
well to his men did so well his knights that those of-the
castiel eussent le tot pierdu et tot entierement desconfit,
castle would-have the all lost and all entirely discomfited
se ne fust Lanselos et Hestor, ki soustenoient a tos les
if not were Lancelot and Hector who sustained at all the
besoins les grans cols et les grans effors de lor anemis et
needs the great blows and the great efforts of their enemies and
faisoient souuent widier place et remuer lor anemis as
made often empty place and move their enemies by-the
cols kil donnoient, v cil de Logres uolsissent v
blows which-they gave whether those of Logres would or
non. Si remest par la proece diaus deus ke li home le
not So remained-it by the prowess of-them two that the men of-the
roi Artu ne gaaignierent icelui iour le camp et la uictore.
king Arthur not won that day the field and the victory

Lancelot Spares the King

IV

Arthur charges Lancelot, who will not strike him, and kills his horse. Hector knocks the king to the ground and tells Lancelot to cut off his head, but Lancelot will defend him against anyone, and remounts him. Arthur tells his council that Lancelot has won his heart by graciousness, and Gawain is angered. The siege lasts six months. The pope lays Logres under interdict unless Arthur takes back his wife, and the king, still loving her, consents, though the war will go on.

Ensi soufrirent cil doi tant icelui iornee kil ne lor
Thus endured those two so-much that day that-they not to-them
remest au departir de la bataille armeure entiere. Et
remained at-the parting of the battle armor whole And
ce lor aida et ualu[t] molt durement kil furent tot
this them helped and availed very greatly that-they were all
le ior li uns dales lautre, Si ke li uns feroit a destre
the day the one beside the-other So that the one struck to right
et li autres a senestre; et sentraidoient a tous besoins
and the other to left and each-other-helped at all needs
Si meruilleusement ke nus nosoit aprochier diaus, Sil
So marvelously that any not-dared approach of-them If-they
nestoient grant gent ensamble. icelui ior meesme, entor eure
not-were great people together that day itself about hour
de nonne, auint la v la bataille estoit plus destroite
of nones happened-it there where the battle was most hard-pressed
et plus mellee que li rois Artus encontra Lanselot, ki
and most confused that the king Arthur met Lancelot who
abatoit deuant lui quanquil ataignoit. Et quant li rois, ki
struck-down before him whatever-he reached And when the king who
bien le connut as armes kil portoit, uit les merueilles
well him knew by-the arms which-he bore saw the marvels

kil faisoit, si dist a soi meesme: 'En non Diu, se cil
which-he did so said-he to himself even In name of-God if this
hom uit longement, il honnira tos mes homes.' Lors li
man lives long he will-shame all my men Then on-him
ceurt sus li rois, lespee traite, comme cil ki trop estoit
runs up the king the-sword drawn as he who too-much was
de grant hardement. Et quant Lanselos le uit uenir et il
of great boldness And when Lancelot him saw come and he
le connut, onques ne sapareilla de lui ferir, car il amoit
him knew ever not himself-prepared-he of him to-strike for he loved
le roi de si grant amor kil ne peust pas auoir cuer de
the king with so great love that-he not might at-all have heart of
lui mal faire. Et li rois, ki ot son cop entese, le feri de
him evil to-do And the king who had his blow aimed him struck with
si grant uertu kil li trencha tot son ceual par deuant
so great force that-he to-him cut all his horse through before
lespaule, Si kil abati en .i. mont Lanselot et le cheual.
the-shoulder So that-he struck-down in a heap Lancelot and the horse
Mais Lanselos not nul mal de celui cop, car li rois fali
But Lancelot not-had any harm from that blow for the king failed
a lui ataindre. Et quant Hestor, ki pres de Lanselot estoit,
to him to-reach And when Hector who near to Lancelot was
uit celui cop, il nen fu mie petit couroucies, car il auoit
saw that blow he not-thereof was at-all little angered for he had
doutance que Lanselos ne fust naures. Si laisse maintenant
fear that Lancelot — were wounded So lets-he at-once
corre au roi Artu et le fiert de lespee parmi lelme
run at-the king Arthur and him strikes with the-sword through-the helm
si grant colp et si meruilleus que li rois en deuint si
so great blow and so marvelous that the king thereof became so
estordis, kil ne sot sil estoit nuis v iors. Et Hestor,
dazed that-he not knew if-it was night or day And Hector

ki bien connoist que ce est li rois et kil le het de
who well knows that this is the king and that-he him hates with
mortel haine, recueure .i. autre cop et le fiert si durement
mortal hatred strikes-again an other blow and him strikes so hard
de tote sa force ke li rois na pooir kil remaigne en
with all his force that the king not-has power that-he may-remain in
siele, ains uole del ceual a terre de ioste Lanselot. et,
saddle rather flies from-the horse to ground of beside Lancelot and
quant Hestor le uoit a terre, il dist a Lanselot: 'Sire,
when Hector him sees on ground he says to Lancelot Lord
copes lui la teste. Si sera uostre guerre afinee del tot.'
cut him the head So will-be your war ended of-the all

Quant Lanselos entent ceste parole, Si respont a son frere:
When Lancelot hears this word So answers-he to his brother
'Ha! Hestor, ke ce est ke uos dites? Ia, se Diu plest, mal
Ah Hector what this is that you say Ever if God please harm
ne li ferai, car il ma bien fet et honor de quankes
not to-him shall-I-do for he me-has well done and honor of whatever
il pot; par coi il nara ia mal por moi; ains le
he could for which he not-will-have ever harm through me rather him
garandirai, a mon pooir, en quel conques liu que ie soie.
shall-protect-I to my power in whatever ever place that I may-be
Ne ia ni penses ke uos mal li facies, tant comme
Nor ever not-there think that you harm to-him may-do so-long as
ie soie chi; car ce seroit painne gastee. et sachies bien ke
I may-be here for this would-be pain wasted and know well that
ie li deffendrai uers uos et uers autrui, a mon pooir.' Par
I him shall-defend against you and against others to my power By
ceste parole rescoust Lanselos le roi Artu de mort icelui
this word rescued Lancelot the king Arthur from death that
ior, car Hestor, sans faille, leust ocis, a cou kil
day for Hector without fail him-would-have killed for this that-he

en estoit bien au desus. Et quant Lanselos meesmes ot
thereof was well on-the top And when Lancelot himself had
le roi remonte et il se furent departi de cele bataille,
the king remounted and they themselves were parted from that battle
ki molt ot este grans celui ior, et li rois fu reuenus a
which much had been great that day and the king was returned to
son tre en lost, Si dist a mon signor Yuain et a ciaus ki
his tent in the-host So said-he to my lord Yvain and to those who
auoec lui estoient: 'aues ueu ke Lanselos a hui fait por
with him were have-you seen what Lancelot has today done for
moi, ki hui fu au desus de moi ocire et si ne uolt
me who today was on-the top of me to-kill and yet not would-he
onques metre main en moi, tot me peust il auoir mort,
ever put hand on me though me might he have dead
se lui pleust? Ciertes or a il passe de debonnairete et de
if him pleased Certainly now has he surpassed in graciousness and in
cortoisie tos les cheualiers del monde dont iou oisse parler.
courtesy all the knights of-the world whereof I heard speak
or volroie ie bien, se Dex me conseut, que ceste guerre
now would I well if God me help that this war
neust onques este commencie; car plus a hui uencu mon
not-had ever been begun for more has-he today vanquished my
cuer par sa debonnairete que tos li mons neust par force.'
heart by his graciousness than all the world would-have by force

Ceste parole dist li rois Artus a son priue conseil, dont
This word said the king Arthur to his privy council whereof
mesire Gauains, ki estoit naures, fu molt courouchies, quant
my-lord Gawain who was wounded was much angered when
il li oi dire. Et quant Lanselos a toute sa compaignie fu
he him heard say And when Lancelot with all his company was
reuenus en son castiel, Cil ki de lui seruir sentremetoient
returned into his castle Those who of him to-serve themselves-busied

trouerent, quant il lorent desarme, kil auoit mainte petite
found when they him-had disarmed that-he had many small
plaie et mainte grant, dont maint autre cheualier se
wound and many great whereof many another knight themselves
tenissent molt a encombre. et autresi auoit Estors, ki le ior
would-hold much at trouble and likewise had Hector who the day
auoit recheut maint colp despee. Et quant il furent desarme,
had received many blow of-sword And when they were disarmed
il alerent ueoir Boort, por sauoir comment il le faisoit et
they went to-see Bors for to-know how he it did and
se il gariroit legierement. Si demanderent a son mire sil
if he would-recover lightly So asked-they of his physician if-he
estoit molt naures. Et cil lor dist que la plaie estoit molt
was much wounded And he to-them said that the wound was very
grans, sans faille, et fu ferue de grant uertu, Mais il en
great without fail and was struck with great force But he thereof
gariroit bien tost, si com il quidoit uraiement. Et Lanselos
would-recover well soon so as he thought truly And Lancelot
len proia molt de metre i paine, a son pooir, et li
him-thereof prayed much to put therein pain to his power and to-him
promist grant cose. Si demorerent en tel maniere cele nuit,
promised great thing So stayed-they in such manner that night
et fisent regarder lor plaies et lauer et apres medeciner.
and had look-at their wounds and wash and after dress

Ensi ot li rois Artus assegiet la Ioieuse Garde .vi. mois v
Thus had the king Arthur besieged the Joyous Gard six months or
plus. Si auint ke cil dedens issirent fors souent et menu
more So happened-it that those within went-out forth often and repeatedly
et assamblerent tantes fois a ciaus de fors kil i
and joined-battle so-many times with those from outside that-they there
perdirent gramment de lor cheualiers. Dedens celui termine
lost much of their knights Within that term

auint que li apostoles de Romme sot uraiement que li
happened-it that the pope of Rome knew truly that the
rois Artus nestoit pas auoec sa feme, et li fu la cose
king Arthur not-was at-all with his wife and to-him was the thing
moustree en tel maniere que on li dist kil lauoit cachie
shown in such manner that one to-him said that-he her-had driven
ensus de lui. Si ne li fu mie descouierte la uerites et
away from him So not to-him was at-all disclosed the truth and
li dist on kil lociroit, sil le tenoit. Et quant il oi
to-him said one that-he her-would-kill if-he her held And when he heard
dire kele nauoit pas este prise prouee en aucun meffait, por
say that-she not-had at-all been taken proved in any misdeed for
coi il le deust destruire, Il manda as euesques et as
which he her ought to-destroy He sent to-the bishops and to-the
arceuesques del pais ke toute la terre ke li rois Artus
archbishops of-the country that all the land which the king Arthur
tenoit fust mise en entredit et en escumeniement, sil
held were put under interdict and under excommunication if-he
ne reprendoit sa feme et sil nel tenoit auoec lui en pais
not took-back his wife and if-he not-her held with him in peace
et en honor, ensi comme rois doit tenir roine. Et quant li
and in honor thus as king ought to-hold queen And when the
rois oi cest mandement, il en fu molt courouchies. Et
king heard this command he thereof was much angered And
nanporquant il amoit la roine de si grant amor, tot quidast
nevertheless he loved the queen with so great love though thought
il bien kele li eust meffait, kil si fust acordes
he well that-she him had wronged that-he himself-thereto would-be agreed
legierement. Mais il dist ke, se la roine reuenoit ariere, ia
lightly But he said that if the queen came back ever

por cou ne remanroit la guerre de lui ne de Lanselot, car
for this not would-remain the war from him nor from Lancelot for
il lauoit prise si a ciertes kil nel laissast en nule maniere.
he it-had taken so in earnest that-he not-it would-leave in any manner

The Pope's Command

V

The bishop of Rochester brings the queen the pope's command and the king's promise to hold her in honor. Lancelot, weeping, says she must go for her honor. Bors warns that he will repent it more than anything and may die of grief, and Hector and Lionel beg him to keep her, but he will give her back. The queen sends word that she will come only if Lancelot's company goes free to Gaunes, and the bishop thanks God.

Lors uait li euesques de Rouencestre a la roine se li
Then goes the bishop of Rochester to the queen so to-her
dist: 'Dame', fet il, 'il couient ke uos en reuignies auoec
said Lady says he it behooves that you thence may-return with
le roi, uostre signor, car ensi la commandet nostre peres,
the king your lord for thus it-has commanded our father
li apostoles, et il uos creantera kil uos tenra des ore en
the pope and he you will-promise that-he you will-hold from now on
auant ausi comme rois doit tenir roine et ausi honorablement
forward just as king ought to-hold queen and as honorably
Ne ke de parole ki ait este dite de vos et de Lanselot
Nor that of word which may-have been said of you and of Lancelot
ne tenra ia mais li rois comte ne hom de sa cort en
not will-hold ever more the king account nor man of his court in
liu v vos soies.' 'Sire', fait ele, 'ie men conseillerai et
place where you may-be Lord says she I me-thereof shall-take-counsel and
vos dirai prochainement ce com men loera a faire.'
you shall-tell soon this which-one me-thereof will-advise to do

Atant sen entre la roine en vne cambre Si mande
Thereupon herself-thence enters the queen into a chamber So summons-she
Lanselot et Hestor et Boort et Lyonel. Et Boors estoit
Lancelot and Hector and Bors and Lionel And Bors was
ia garis de la plaie ke me sire Gauains li auoit faite.
already healed of the wound which my lord Gawain to-him had made
Et quant li .iiij. cousin furent assamble deuant li, Si lor
And when the four cousins were assembled before her So to-them
dist ensi: 'Segnor', fait ele, 'uos estes li home el monde
said-she thus Lords says she you are the men in-the world
v ie ai grignor fiance ke uos me consillies a mon preu
in-whom I have greater confidence that you me may-counsel to my benefit
et a monnor, selonc cou ke uos quideres ki mius me
and to my-honor according-to this that you will-think which best me
vaille. Car ore mest uenue une nouiele ki molt me doit
may-avail For now to-me-is come a news which much me ought
plaire et a uos tous ausi. Car me sire li rois, ki est li plus
to-please and to you all also For my lord the king who is the most
preudom del monde, si comme vos meesmes dites cascun
worthy-man of-the world so as you yourselves say each
ior, ma fait requerre ke ie men aille a lui, et il men
day me-has had asked that I me-thence may-go to him and he me-thence
terra des ore mais autre si chiere comme il onques fist v
will-hold from now more other so dear as he ever did or
plus. Si me fait molt grant honor de cou kil me requiert
more So me does-he very great honor of this that-he me asks
et de cou kil nesgarde mie a cou que ie sui itant mesfaite
and of this that-he not-regards at-all to this that I am so-much misdone
uers lui. et vos i aueres preu, car ia, sans faille, ne me
toward him and you there will-have benefit for ever without fail not myself
partirai de chaiens, sil ne vos pardonne le maltalent kil
shall-depart from in-here if-he not you pardons the ill-will which-he

a uers vos, A tot le mains kil uos en laira aler de
has toward you At all the least that-be you thence will-let go from
cest pais atot uostre compaignie, en tel maniere ke uos
this country with-all your company in such manner that you
ni perdres, tant comme vos seres en cest pais, vaillant
not-there will-lose so-long as you will-be in this country worth
vn esporon. Or me dites ce ke uos volres que ie en face;
a spur Now me tell this which you will-wish that I thereof may-do
Car, sil vos plest mieus que ie remaigne chi auoec vos, ie
For if-it you pleases better that I may-remain here with you I
remanrai, et se vos uoles que ie men aille, ie men irai'.
shall-remain and if you wish that I me-thence may-go I me-thence will-go
'Dame', fait Lanselos 'se on en faisoit ce que mes
Lady says Lancelot if one thereof did this which my
cuers volroit mieus, vos remanries; car, sans faille, de
heart would-wish better you would-remain for without fail from
vos me consirrai ie maluaisement, quant vos seres de
you myself shall-do-without I badly when you will-be from
nos partie. Et nanporquant, por cou que ie aim mieus que
us parted And nevertheless for this that I love better that
cis afaires aut selonc uostre honor que selonc mon
this affair may-go according-to your honor than according-to my
desirier, Il sera ensi que vos en ires a mon signor le
desire It will-be thus that you thence will-go to my lord the
roi Artu. Car, se uos ore ni ales apres cest offre kil
king Arthur For if you now not-there go after this offer which-he
uos fait, Il nest nus ki ni puisse apertement connoistre
you makes It not-is any who not-there may openly know
uostre honte et ma grant desloiaute. Et por ce voel ie ke
your shame and my great disloyalty And for this wish I that
uos mandes au roi que vos en ires demain a lui. Et ie
you may-send to-the king that you thence will-go tomorrow to him And I

vos di ke, quant vos partires de chaiens, vos seres conuoie
you tell that when you will-depart from in-here you will-be escorted
si richement, a nos pooirs, que onques nule haute dame ne
so richly to our powers that ever any high lady not
fu plus biel ne plus honniestement. et ceste cose, dame,
was more fairly nor more honorably and this thing lady
ne vos di ie mie, por ce que ie ne vos aime plus que
not you say I at-all for this that I not you may-love more than
onques, a nos uiuans, cheualiers nama dame, Mais ie le di,
ever in our living knight not-loved lady But I it say
por uostre honor auanchier et uostre honte courir'. Et lors
for your honor to-advance and your shame to-cover And then
li commencent li oel a larmoier. Et la roine recommence
to-him begin the eyes to weep And the queen begins-again
a plorer de lautre part trop durement et a mener duel.
to weep on the-other side too hard and to lead grief
Quant Boors entent que la cose est a ce uenue que
When Bors hears that the thing is to this come that
Lanselos a otroiet a la roine kele sen aille auoec le
Lancelot has granted to the queen that-she herself-thence may-go with the
roi, Si dist a Lanselot: 'Sire, sire, vos aues ceste cose otroie
king So says-he to Lancelot Lord lord you have this thing granted
molt legierement. or doinst Dex ke biens vos en uiegne,
very lightly now may-give God that good to-you thereof may-come
car certes ie le uolroie molt. Et vos en aues fet ce ke
for certainly I it would-wish much And you thereof have done this which
uostre cuers vos en aporte. Mais, si mait Dex, ie ne quic
your heart to-you thereof brings But so me-help God I not think
que vos onques mais fesissies cose dont vos vos repentissies
that you ever more did thing whereof you yourself would-repent
autre tant comme vos feries de cesti. Or vos en ires en
other so-much as you would-do of this Now you thence will-go into

Gaunes et madame la roine remanra en cest pais en tel liu
Gaunes and my-lady the queen will-remain in this country in such place
que vos ne le uerres ne tost ne tart, ne une fois ne autre.
that you not her will-see neither soon nor late nor one time nor other
Ie connois tant uostre cuer et le grant desirier que uos
I know so-much your heart and the great desire which you
aues enuers li que ie sai uraiement que ia ni ares
have toward her that I know truly that ever not-there will-you-have
este .i. mois que vos uolries auoir donne tot le monde, sil
been a month that you would-wish to-have given all the world if-it
estoit en uostre baillie, par si ke uos onques neussies fait
were in your power by so that you ever not-had made
cest otroi. Et, certes, se iou onques rien connui, vos en
this grant And certainly if I ever anything knew you thereof
morres de duel, se vos naues trop ailleurs a entendre. Si
will-die of grief if you not-have too-much elsewhere to attend So
le uos di ore tot auant ke ma dame sen soit alee et
it you say-I now all before that my lady herself-thence may-be gone and
deuant li meesmes, por ce que ie volroie bien kele remansist
before her herself for this that I would well that-she might-remain
sil uos plaisoit, et por cou ke iou ai grant doutance
if-it you pleased and for this that I have great fear
kil ne vos en uiegne noaus ke vos ne quidies. Et sil
that-it — you thereof may-come worse than you not think And if-it
uos en auenoit maus, tos vostres parentes en seroit
you thereof happened evil all your kindred thereby would-be
uieus et abaissies et vos tieres desiertees a tous iors mais.'
vile and brought-low and your lands disinherited for all days more

Quant Boors ot dite ceste parole, li doi autre si
When Bors had said this word the two others themselves-thereto
acorderent bien et commencent molt a blasmer Lanselot de
agreed well and begin much to blame Lancelot for

cou kil uieut la roine rendre. Puis li dient: 'Sire, quel
this that-he wishes the queen to-render Then to-him say-they Lord what
paour aues vos del roi que uos madame li rendes? Certes,
fear have you of-the king that you my-lady to-him may-render Certainly
molt plus estes uos au desus de ceste guerre kil nest et
much more are you on-the top of this war than-he not-is and
mains le deues vos ore douter kil ne doit vos. Sire, por
less him ought you now to-fear than-he — ought you Lord for
Diu, ne li rendes pas Mais retenes le auoec vos, car ce
God not to-him render at-all But keep her with you for this
sauons nos bien por uoir ke uos ne vos pores consirer
know we well for truth that you not yourself will-be-able do-without
de li.' Et Lanselos respont kil li rendera, comment kil
of her And Lancelot answers that-he to-him will-render however that-it
len doie auenir, Neis sil en deuoit morir par defaute
him-thereof may befall Even if-he thereof should die by want
de li. Et lors est fines li parlemens, car il en laissent
of her And then is ended the parley for they thereof leave
la parole atant, tot maintenant kil oent que Lanselos
the word thereupon all at-once that-they hear that Lancelot
dist kil nel lairoit en nule maniere kil ne rendist la
says that-he not-it would-leave in any manner that-he not would-render the
roine. Et quant la roine uoit kele a outreement congiet,
queen And when the queen sees that-she has utterly leave
ele uient a leuesque de Rouencestre, ki en mi le palais
she comes to the-bishop of Rochester who in amid the palace
latendoit, se li dist: 'Sire, or uos en poes raler a mon
her-awaited so to-him said Lord now you thence can go-back to my
signor le roi. Si le salues de par moi et se li dites
lord the king So him greet on behalf of-me and so to-him say
que ie en nule maniere ne me departiroie de chaiens, sil
that I in any manner not myself would-depart from in-here if-he

outreement nen laissoit aler tot quite en Gaunes Lanselot
utterly not-thence let go all free into Gaunes Lancelot
et sa compaignie, ensi kil ni perdent vaillant .i. sol
and his company so that-they not-there may-lose worth a single
.d. ne nus de sa partie'. Et quant li euesques entent ceste
penny nor any of his party And when the bishop hears this
parole, Si mercie Deu de bon cuer, car or voit il bien,
word So thanks-he God with good heart for now sees he well
ce li est auis, que ceste guerre est falie, a cou kil
this to-him is opinion that this war is failed for this that-he
pense bien que li rois en laira aler Lanselot tot quite.
thinks well that the king thence will-let go Lancelot all free

The Queen Returned

VI

Arthur grants Lancelot free passage and his own fleet. At dawn the lovers exchange rings. Lancelot leads the queen to the king with five hundred knights, saying he rescued her not for any kindness of hers but because she is the most valiant lady in the world. At Gawain's demand the king banishes Lancelot, and when Gawain swears endless war, Bors offers to settle the quarrel in single combat.

Lors descent del palais apres cou kil ot la roine
Then descends-he from-the palace after this that-he had the queen
commandee a Diu et ciaus de laiens Se se haste de
commended to God and those of in-there So himself hastens to
ceuauchier tant que il uint au tre le roi. Et kant il
ride so-much that he came to-the tent of-the king And when he
li a dites les nouieles quil aporte del castiel et li
to-him has told the news which-he brings from-the castle and the
rois entent ke Lanselos li rent si uolentiers la roine,
king hears that Lancelot to-him renders so willingly the queen

Si dist, oiant tos ciaus ki de ioste lui estoient: 'Par Diu,
So says-he hearing all those who of beside him were By God
sil fust autant Lanselot de la roine comme on ma fait
if-it were so-much Lancelot of the queen as one me-has made
entendant, il nest mie si au desos de ceste guerre kil
understanding he not-is at-all so on-the bottom of this war that-he
le rendist des mois, sil lamast de fole amor. Et por ce
her would-render of months if-he her-loved with foolish love And for this
kil a fait de ceste cose si debonairement ma uolente, ferai
that-he has done in this thing so graciously my will shall-do
ie outreement ce ke la roine me mande; car ie len
I utterly this which the queen to-me sends for I him-thence
lairai aler de cest pais, ensi kil ne trouera ia ki
shall-let go from this country so that-he not will-find ever any-who
li toille del sien vaillant .i. estrelin que ie ne li
from-him may-take of-the his worth a sterling which I not to-him
rende au double, car trop par est debonaires et cortois.'
may-render at-the double for too much is-he gracious and courteous
Atant commande li rois a leuesque kil sen aille
Thereupon commands the king to the-bishop that-he himself-thence may-go
ariere au castiel et si die a la roine de par lui
back to-the castle and so may-say to the queen on behalf of-him
que Lanselos sen puet aler tos quites fors del pais.
that Lancelot himself-thence can go all free out of-the country
Et li rois meesmes, por cou kil a faite sa requeste
And the king himself for this that-he has done his request
si debonnairement, li trouera del sien propre nauie por
so graciously to-him will-find of-the his own fleet for
passer en Gaunes. Li euesques remonte et sen reuient
to-cross into Gaunes The bishop remounts and himself-thence returns
el castiel et conte a la roine tot cou que li rois li
into-the castle and tells to the queen all this which the king to-her

mande. Si est la cose ensi afermee dambes .ij. pars que la
sends So is the thing thus affirmed from-both two sides that the
roine sera rendue a lendemain a son signor Et Lanselos
queen will-be rendered on the-next-day to her lord And Lancelot
se partira del roiaume de Logres et sen ira,
himself will-depart from-the kingdom of Logres and himself-thence will-go
entre lui et sa compaignie, el roiaume de Gaunes v en
between him and his company into-the kingdom of Gaunes or into
celui pais dont il est drois oirs. Cele nuit furent cil del
that country whereof he is right heir That night were those of-the
ost liet et ioiant, quant il uirent que la guerre estoit
host glad and joyful when they saw that the war was
remese; car molt auoient grant paour, li plusor daus, que li
stayed for much had-they great fear the most of-them that the
noaus nen tornast sor aus, Se li afaires durast longement.
worse thereof might-turn upon them If the affair lasted long
Et sil furent liet et ioiant asses plus quil ne soloient
And if-they were glad and joyful a-good-deal more than-they — were-wont
estre, Cil del castiel furent dolant et plain de larmes et de
to-be Those of-the castle were sorrowful and full of tears and of
plors, ausi li poure comme li rice. Et saues uos por coi
weepings as-much the poor as the rich And know you for why
il estoient si dolant? por cou kil ueoient que Lanselos
they were so sorrowful for this that-they saw that Lancelot
et Hestor et Boor et Lyoniaus faisoient .i. duel si tres
and Hector and Bors and Lionel made a grief so very
grant, comme sil ueissent deuant aus tot le monde mort.
great as if-they saw before them all the world dead
Cele nuit ot asses grant duel par tot communalment
That night had-there a-good-deal great grief through all commonly
el castiel de la Ioieuse Garde, ne onques ni ot
in-the castle of the Joyous Gard nor ever not-there had-there

grant ne petit ki laiens mangast, ains dura li dieus en tel
great nor small who in-there ate rather lasted the grief in such
maniere desi a lendemain. Et quant li iors fu aiornes, si
manner until to the-next-day And when the day was dawned so
comme Deu plot, Lanselos dist a la roine: 'dame, hui est li
as God pleased Lancelot said to the queen lady today is the
iors que uos departires de moi et que il men couenra aler
day that you will-depart from me and that it me-thence will-behoove to-go
de cest pais. Ie ne sai se ie iamais vos uerrai. Vees chi un
from this country I not know if I ever you shall-see See here a
anelet que vos me donastes ia dis, quant ie macointai de
little-ring which you me gave long ago when I myself-acquainted with
uos premierement. Ie lai des lors garde iusques chi. or vos
you first I it-have from then kept until here now you
proi ie ke uos le portes des ore en auant por lamor de moi
pray I that you it may-wear from now on forward for the-love of me
et ie porterai celui que vos aues en uostre doi por lamor
and I shall-wear that-one which you have on your finger for the-love
de uos.' Et ele lotroie molt uolentiers Si rechoit lanel kil
of you And she it-grants very willingly So receives-she the-ring which-he
li donne et puis li baille celui ki estoit el sien doit.
to-her gives and then to-him hands that-one which was on-the her finger
Atant finent lor parlement, si se uont apareiller tot
Thereupon end-they their parley so themselves go to-make-ready all
li cheualier del castiel et parer au plus ricement kil
the knights of-the castle and to-adorn at-the most richly that-they
pueent. Celui ior furent li .iiij. cousin acesme plus noblement
can That day were the four cousins arrayed more nobly
kil nauoient este onques mais nul ior de lor uies. et
than-they had been ever more any day of their lives and
quant il furent montet, et il et tot li autre del castiel,
when they were mounted both they and all the others of-the castle

Il uinrent par sauues triues dusques a lost a plus de
They came by safe truce as-far to the-host with more than
.v.c. cheualiers, tos lor ceuaus couiers de dras de soie.
five-hundred knights all their horses covered with cloths of silk
Et uenoient behordant et faisant le grignor samblant de
And came-they jousting and making the greatest show of
ioie que vos onques ueissies. Et li rois Artus fu uenus
joy that you ever might-have-seen And the king Arthur was come
encontre aus atot molt grant ceualerie. Et si tost comme
toward them with-all very great chivalry And so soon as
Lanselos uit le roi aprochier de lui, Il descendi et prist la
Lancelot saw the king approach to him He dismounted and took the
roine par le frain et dist au roi: 'Sire, ues ci ma dame
queen by the bridle and said to-the king Lord see here my lady
la roine, que ie vos renc, ki fust piecha morte par la
the queen whom I you render who would-be long-ago dead by the
desloiautet de cex de uostre ostel, se ie ne men fusse
disloyalty of those of your household if I not me-thereto had
mis en auenture de li rescoure. Si ne le fis ie pas por
put in adventure of her to-rescue So not it did I at-all for
bonte kele meust onques faite, fors por tant solement que
kindness which-she to-me-had ever done except for so only that
ie le connissoie a la plus vaillant dame del mont, dont il
I her knew for the most valiant lady of-the world whereof it
eust este trop grans damages et trop dolereuse pierte, Se
would-have been too great harm and too sorrowful loss If
li desloial de uostre ostel, ki a mort lauoient liuree et
the disloyal of your household who to death her-had delivered and
iugie, en eussent fait ce kil en baoient a faire. Si
judged thereof had done this which-they thereof aspired to do So
fu molt mieus, se Dex mait, kil en fussent mort en
was-it much better if God me-help that-they thereof were dead in

lor desloiaute que cele seule i perdist la uie, ki riens
their disloyalty than she alone there should-lose the life who anything
ni auoit forfait'. Lors le rent au roi et il le rechoit
not-there had misdone Then her renders-he to-the king and he her receives
molt pensis des paroles que Lanselos li a dites. Et
very pensive from-the words which Lancelot to-him has said And
Lanselos dist au roi: 'Sire, or sachies tot vraiement que,
Lancelot says to-the king Lord now know all truly that
se ie ma dame la roine amaisse de fole amor, ensi comme
if I my lady the queen loved with foolish love thus as
li desloial de uostre ostel le vos faisoient entendant, ie
the disloyal of your household it you made understanding I
ne le vos rendisse des mois; car vos uees bien ke a force
not her you would-render of months for you see well that by force
de iustice ne fusse ie en piece menes a cou, car nostre
of justice not would-be I in a-while brought to this for our
castiaus est si fors kil ne crient ne uostre siege ne
castle is so strong that-it not fears neither your siege nor
lautrui et si estoit garnis de si bone ceualerie ke molt
the-other's and so was-it furnished with so good chivalry that much
deuiens estre aseur et si bien garnis de uiandes queles
we-ought to-be sure and so well furnished with victuals that-they
nos peussent largement soufire iusques a. v. ans'.
us could amply suffice until to five years

A ceste parole respondi li rois et dist: 'Lanselot, uos
To this word answered the king and said Lancelot you
en aues tant fait por moi que ie uos en sai molt bon
thereof have so-much done for me that I you thereof know very good
gre. Et ce ke uos en aues ore fait por moi vos poroit
gratitude And this that you thereof have now done for me you could
encore en aucun tans bien ualoir'. Lors uient auant me sire
still in some time well avail Then comes forward my lord

Gauains Si dist a Lanselot: 'Mesire Lanselot, vos en aues
Gawain So says-he to Lancelot My-lord Lancelot you thereof have
tant fait por mon signor le roi que bon gre vos en
so-much done for my lord the king that good gratitude to-you thereof
set. Mais encore uos requiert il dune autre cose'. 'De coi,
knows-he But still you asks he of-an other thing Of what
sire?' fait Lanselos. 'dites le moi et ie le ferai, se ie puis'.
lord says Lancelot tell it to-me and I it shall-do if I can
'Il vos requiert', fait me sire Gauains, 'que vos sa terre
He you asks says my lord Gawain that you his land
li widies en tel maniere que vos ni soies troues
to-him may-empty in such manner that you not-there may-be found
dore en auant tant com il uiue'. 'Sire', fait Lanselos
from-now on forward so-long as he may-live Lord says Lancelot
au roi, 'vos plaist il ensi ke ie le face? est ce par vostre
to-the king you pleases it thus that I it may-do is this by your
commandement?' 'Puis que Gauains le uiolt,' fait li rois, 'il
command Since that Gawain it wishes says the king it
me plaist bien. Laissies moi ma terre par de cha et ales
me pleases well Leave me my land by of this-side and go
vos ent de la en la uostre, ki est asses biele et
you thence from there into the yours which is a-good-deal beautiful and
rice'. 'Biaus sire', fait Lanselos, 'quant ie serai en ma terre,
rich Fair lord says Lancelot when I shall-be in my land
serai ie asseures de uos lequel atendrai ie de vos, v
shall-be I assured of you which shall-await I from you either
pais v guerre?' 'Aseur poes vos estre', fet me sire Gauains,
peace or war Sure can you be says my lord Gawain
'que a la guerre ne poes vos falir, tant com me sire li
that to the war not can you fail so-long as my lord the
rois ait si grant pooir com il a encore. Ne ia por ce,
king may-have so great power as he has still Nor ever for this

se uos estes en uostre pais, ne remanra que uos naies
if you are in your country not will-remain that you not-may-have
guerre, plus grant et plus fort que vos naies iusques chi
war more great and more strong than you may-have until here
eue. Et durra cele guerre — ce sacies vos vraiement —
had And will-last that war this know you truly
tant que Gaheries, mes freres, li miudres cheualiers de
so-long as Gaheriet my brother the best knight of
nostre linage, qui uos ocesistes desloiaument, sera uengies
our lineage whom you killed disloyally will-be avenged
de uostre cors meesmes. Ne ie nen prendroie mie tot le
on your body itself Nor I not-thereof would-take at-all all the
mont en escange de ce que vos nen pierdes la teste, se
world in exchange for this that you not-thereof may-lose the head if
ie en puis uenir au desus.' 'Mesire Gauain', fait Boors,
I thereto can come on-the top My-lord Gawain says Bors
'or laissies atant le manechier, car ie vos di seurement que
now leave thereupon the threatening for I you tell surely that
me sire ne vos crient, se de raison non. Et se vos tant
my lord not you fears except of reason not And if you so-much
faites que vos apres nos vignies el roiaume de Gaunes
do that you after us may-come into-the kingdom of Gaunes
v en celui de Benuic, Ie vos asseur que vos seres plus tost
or into that of Benwick I you assure that you will-be more soon
en point de pierdre la teste que me sires ne sera et plus
in point of losing the head than my lord not will-be and more
tost en seres en doutance, se vos uenes souent as
soon thereof will-you-be in fear if you come often to-the
assamblees. Et, certes, de ce que vos aues dit que me sire
encounters And certainly of this that you have said that my lord
ocist desloiaument vostre frere, Gaheriet, di ie, sauue vostre
killed disloyally your brother Gaheriet say I saving your

grasse, que ce nest pas uerites. Et, se uos uolies prouer
grace that this not-is at-all truth And if you wished to-prove
comme cheualiers que ce fust uoirs, Ie en deffendroie mon
as knight that this were true I thereof would-defend my
signor encontre vostre cors, ia soit cou que vos soies
lord against your body though be this that you may-be
li miudres cheualiers del monde, apres un, et meesmes li
the best knight of-the world after one and even the
hom qui ie plus aim qui riens ne me soit, fors mon
man whom I most love who anything not to-me may-be except my
signor le roi. Mais ie le di, por lonnor mon signor garder,
lord the king But I it say for the-honor my lord to-guard
et si le uolroie deffendre en tel maniere que, se ie en
and so it would-wish-I to-defend in such manner that if I thereof
estoie uencus en camp, ke mesire en fust malbaillis comme
were vanquished in field that my-lord thereof were ill-used as
desloiaus et ie destruis, et, se ie uos pooie faire recreant en
disloyal and I destroyed and if I you could make recreant in
camp, que vos en fussies honnis comme faus apieleres et
field that you thereof were shamed as false appellant and
la guerre remansist atant. Et certes, sil uos plaisoit, mieus
the war might-remain thereupon And certainly if-it you pleased better
seroit il et plus couignable cose que par moi et par vos
would-be it and more fitting thing that by me and by you
en fust ceste queriele desrainie ke par .lx. Mil homes.'
thereof were this quarrel decided than by sixty Thousand men

Lancelot Leaves Logres

VII

Gawain and Bors offer gages, but the king forbids the combat. Lancelot reminds Arthur how he saved his crown against Galehaut, and Gawain how he freed him from the Sorrowful Tower, and Gawain answers that his brothers' deaths outweigh it all. Lancelot sends his shield to hang in Saint Stephen's at Camelot, with four pack horses of treasure. From the ship he blesses the sweet land, and he lands and rides to Benwick, where his people receive him as their lord.

Quant me sire Gauains entent ceste parole, si fu trop
When my lord Gawain hears this word so was-he too
ioians, si tent son gage maintenant auant et dist au roi:
joyful so holds-out his gage at-once forward and said to-the king
'Sire, puis que il sest offiers a ceste cose, il nen ira
Lord since that he himself-has offered to this thing he not-thence will-go
iamais ariere, car ie sui pres de moustrer encontre son cors
ever back for I am ready to show against his body
ke par desloiaute et par traison ocist Lanselos Gaheriet,
that by disloyalty and by treason killed Lancelot Gaheriet
mon frere.' Et Boors saut auant et dist kil est pres del
my brother And Bors leaps forward and says that-he is ready of-the
contredire. Si fust ia ceste [batail]le afermee dune part
gainsaying So would-be already this battle affirmed on-one side
et dautre, se li rois uolsist; car me sire Gauains ne desiroit
and on-the-other if the king had-wished for my lord Gawain not desired
tant cose ne Boors ne demandoit plus fors kil fust mors
so-much thing nor Bors not asked more except that-he were set
cors contre mon signor Gauain, mais li rois refusa a ambes
body against my lord Gawain but the king refused to both
.ij. lor gages et dist ke ia ceste bataille ne seroit otroie en
two their gages and said that ever this battle not would-be granted in

nule maniere Mais ki mius pora faire, puis kil seront
any manner But who best will-be-able do after that-they will-be
diluec parti, Si le fesist, et bien fust Lanselos aseur
from-there parted So it may-do and well might-be Lancelot sure
que ia plus tost ne seroit en son pais kil troueroit
that ever more soon not would-be-be in his country than-he would-find
la guerre graindre asses plus kil ne poroit quidier.
the war greater a-good-deal more than-be — could think
'Certes, sire', fait Lanselos au roi, 'de ceste guerre
Certainly lord says Lancelot to-the king of this war
maintenir ne fussies vos pas si bien aaisies comme vos estes
to-maintain not would-be you at-all so well at-ease as you are
ore, se ie eusse este autretant en uostre nuisement comme
now if I had been as-much in your harm as
ie fui en uostre aide le iour ke Galehos, li sires des
I was in your aid the day that Galehaut the lord of-the
Lontainnes Illes, deuint uostres hom liges, en celui point
Distant Isles became your man liege at that point
meesmes kil auoit pooir de vos tolir terre et honor et
itself that-he had power to you take-away land and honor and
de vos cachier de camp. Iluec uos fis ie auoir tote honor
to you chase from field There you made I to-have all honor
la v vos esties aprochies de re[cheuoir] tote honte, ce
there where you were come-near to receive all shame this
estoit de pierdre couronne et de morir uieus et desiretes.
was to lose crown and to die vile and disinherited
et sil de cele iornee uos ramenbrast, ensi com il deust faire,
and if-it of that day you remembered thus as it ought to-do
Ia certes de ceste guerre bastir entre uos et moi ne vos
Ever certainly of this war to-build between you and me not you
ramenbrast. Ne ceste cose ne uos di ie mie, sire, por paour
would-remember Nor this thing not you say I at-all lord for fear

ne por doutance que ie aie de uos, ains le uos di por
nor for dread which I may-have of you rather it you say-I for
lamor que vos deussies auoir a moi, Se vos fussies si bons
the-love which you ought-to have to me If you were so good
guerredonneres de bontes comme rois doit estre. Car, certes,
rewarder of kindnesses as king ought to-be For certainly
puis ke nos serons uenu en nostre pais entre nos homes
since that we shall-be come into our country among our men
liges et nos aurons mandes nos pooirs, cascuns de sa gent,
liege and we shall-have summoned our powers each of his people
et garnis nos castiaus, ie uos aseur uraiement que, se uos
and furnished our castles I you assure truly that if you
i uenes et nos vos uolons nuire de tot nostre pooir,
there come and we you wish to-harm with all our power
onques certes uoie ne fesistes dont vos vos repentissies
ever certainly journey not made-you whereof you yourself would-repent
autretant comme vos feres de ceste; car vos soies aseur
as-much as you will-do of this for you may-be sure
que ia ni ares preu ne honnour. Et uos, me sire
that ever not-there will-you-have profit nor honor And you my lord
Gauain, ki chi estes ore si crueus de nos enpirier vers le
Gawain who here are now so cruel of us worsening toward the
roi, certes uos nel deussies pas faire, Car, sil uos souuenist
king certainly you not-it ought at-all to-do For if-it you remembered
de cou que ie uos ostai iadis de la prison de la dolereuse
of this that I you removed formerly from the prison of the sorrowful
tour, celui iour que ie ocis Charado le Grant, ki uos auoit
tower that day that I killed Carados the Great who you had
mis ensi comme a la mort, Ia neussies haine enuers
put thus as to the death Ever not-would-you-have hatred toward

moi, se uos fussies si dous et si debonnaires comme bons
me if you were so sweet and so gracious as good
cheualiers doit estre et comme on dist ke uos estes.'
knight ought to-be and as one says that you are
'Me sire Lanselot', fet me sire Gauains, 'onques ne fesistes
My lord Lancelot says my lord Gawain ever not did-you
bonte por moi que uos ne maies trop chier uendue au
kindness for me which you not me-may-have too dear sold at-the
derrains, car uos maues si dolereusement damagie de ciaus
last for you me-have so sorrowfully harmed of those
de mon linage ke ie plus amoie, si comme de mes freres,
of my lineage whom I most loved so as of my brothers
que vos aues ocis, que nostre parentes en est tos abaissies
whom you have killed that our kindred thereby is all brought-low
et ie en sui honnis; por coi il ne poroit pas auoir
and I thereby am shamed for which it not could at-all have
legierement amour entre moi et vos ne iamais tant comme
lightly love between me and you nor ever so-long as
ie uiue.' Lors dist Lanselos au roi: 'Sire, ie men irai
I may-live Then says Lancelot to-the king Lord I me-thence shall-go
de uostre terre en tel maniere que por tous les seruices
from your land in such manner that for all the services
que ie uos fis onques, puis que ie fui primes cheualiers,
which I you did ever since that I was first knight
nen porterai del uostre le uaillant dun esporon.'
not-thence shall-carry-I of-the yours the worth of-a spur
Atant finent lor parlement si en reuient li rois en
Thereupon end-they their parley so thence returns the king into
ses tentes et enmaine auoec lui la roine. Et lors commence
his tents and leads-away with him the queen And then begins
entraus la feste et la ioie autresi grans comme se Ihesu
among-them the feast and the joy just-as great as if Jesus

Christ meesmes i fust descendus. Mais encontre ce kil
Christ himself there were descended But against this that-they
sentreuinrent baut et ioiant, sen alerent cil del
each-other-met merry and joyful themselves-thence went those of-the
castiel a lor repaire dolant et courouchiet, car trop
castle to their dwelling sorrowful and angered for too-much
estoient amalaise de ce kil ueoient lor segnor plus amati
were-they ill-at-ease from this that-they saw their lord more dejected
kil ne soloit. Quant Lanselos fu descendus, si commanda
than-he — was-wont When Lancelot was dismounted so commanded-he
a sa maisnie kil apareillaissent lor harnois, car il moura
to his household that-they should-make-ready their harness for he will-set-out
demain, ensi com il quide a aler a la mer, por passer en la
tomorrow thus as he thinks to go to the sea for to-cross into the
tiere de Gaunes. Celui iour prist Lanselos un sien escuier
land of Gaunes That day took Lancelot a his-own squire
ki auoit non Canains Se li dist: 'prent mon escu en cele
who had name Kanahin So to-him said take my shield in that
cambre Si ten ua a tot droit a Camaalot, et le porte
chamber So thee-thence go to all straight to Camelot and it carry
en la maistre eglise de Saint Estieuene et le laisse iluec en
into the master church of Saint Stephen and it leave there in
tel maniere kil i puist remanoir et v il soit ueus,
such manner that-it there may remain and where it may-be seen
Si ke cil ki des ore mais le uerront aient en ramenbrance
So that those who from now more it will-see may-have in remembrance
les merueilles ke ie en ai faites en ceste terre. Et ses
the marvels which I thereby have done in this land And know
tu por coi ie faic al liu ceste honor? por ce que ie i
thou for why I do to-the place this honor for this that I there
rechui premierement lordene de ceualerie. Si en aim le
received first the-order of chivalry So thereby love-I the

liu et la cite plus que nul autre et amerai tant comme ie
place and the city more than any other and shall-love so-long as I
uiuerai mais. et por ce uoel ie ke mes escus i soit en
shall-live more and for this wish I that my shield there may-be in
liu de moi, car ie ne sai pas se auenture mi aportera
place of me for I not know at-all if adventure me-there will-bring
iamais, Puis que ie me serai partis fors de chaiens.' Li
ever Since that I myself shall-be departed out from in-here The
valles prent tot maintenant lescut, et auoec lescut, por
squire takes all at-once the-shield and with the-shield for
cou ke cil del eglise porroiassent por Lanselot a tos iors
this that those of-the church should-pray for Lancelot for all days
mes, lor enuoia il por essaucement et por amendement
more to-them sent he for exaltation and for improvement
del liu .iiij. soumiers, v il auoit molt grant tresor, dont
of-the place four pack-horses where it had very great treasure whereof
cil del eglise sescrurent molt puis et monteplijerent.
those of-the church themselves-enriched much after and multiplied

Quant cil ki cest present portoient furent uenut a
When those who this present carried were come to
Camaalot, on les rechut molt liement, et, quant il uirent
Camelot one them received very gladly and when they saw
lescut Lanselot, il nen furent pas mains liet que del
the-shield Lancelot they not-thereof were at-all less glad than of-the
autre don. Si le fisent pendre en miliu del mostier a
other gift So it had-they hung in middle of-the minster with
vne chaaine dargent, autresi chierement comme se ce fust
a chain of-silver just-as dearly as if this were
uns cors sains. Et quant cil del pais le sorent, il le
a body holy And when those of-the country it knew they it
uinrent ueoir espessement et a grant presse, et ploroient li
came to-see thickly and in great press and wept the

plusor daus, quant il ueoient lescut, De ce que Lanselos
most of-them when they saw the-shield For this that Lancelot
sen estoit issus de Logres. Mais le ior apres ke
himself-thence was gone-out from Logres But the day after that
la roine fu rendue au roi Artu, se parti Lanselos de
the queen was rendered to-the king Arthur himself departed Lancelot from
la Ioieuse Garde, entre lui et sa compaignie, et fu uoirs
the Joyous Gard between him and his company and was-it true
kil dona par lotroiement del roi meesme celui castel a
that-he gave by the-grant of-the king himself that castle to
.i. sien cheualier ki serui lauoit longement, en tel maniere
a his-own knight who served him-had long in such manner
que en quelconques liu que li rois fust, il recheuroit
that in whatever place that the king might-be he would-receive
les rentes del castiel a tot son uiuant. Et quant Lanselos
the rents of-the castle for all his living And when Lancelot
en fu issus a tos ciaus ki conpaignie li faisoient, Si
thence was gone-out with all those who company to-him made So
regarderent kil pooient bien estre .iiij. cent cheualiers,
looked-they that-they could well be four hundred knights
sans les escuiers ki auoec aus estoient et sans les autres
without the squires who with them were and without the others
ki a piet et a cheual siuoient la route. Et quant ce fu
who on foot and on horse followed the rout And when this was
cose que Lanselos fu a la mer et il fu entres en la nef
thing that Lancelot was at the sea and he was entered into the ship
et il commencha a regarder la terre et le pais v il
and he began to look-at the land and the country where he
auoit eus tant de ses delis et de ses bons et on li
had had so-many of his delights and of his goods and one to-him
auoit tantes honors faites que onques uns seus cheualiers
had so-many honors done that ever a single knight

nen auoit plus eut, Il commencha a muer coulor et a
not-thereof had more had He began to change color and to
gieter sospirs grans et parfons Se li commencierent li
cast sighs great and deep So to-him began the
oel a larmoier molt tenrement. Et quant il orent une grant
eyes to weep very tenderly And when they had a great
piece este en tel maniere, Si dist si basset ke nus ki fust
while been in such manner So said-be so low that any who were
en la nef nel entendi, fors tot solement Boors, ses cousins:
in the ship not-it understood except all only Bors his cousin
'Ha! douce tiere, debonnaire et delitable, ioieuse et enuoisie
Ah sweet land gracious and delightful joyous and merry
et plaine de toutes bonnes eurtes et de toutes aises! douce
and full of all good fortunes and of all comforts sweet
terre, debonnaire et delitable, ioieuse et enuoisie et de tos
land gracious and delightful joyous and merry and with all
biens raemplie! douce terre en qui mes cuers et mes esperis
goods filled sweet land in which my heart and my spirit
et mame remainent! outreement beneoite soies tu, et beneoit
and my-soul remain utterly blessed be thou and blessed
soient tot cil et toutes celes ki en toi remainnent, soient
be all those and all those-women who in thee remain be-they
mi ami v mi anemi! pais aient il et repos! Ioie lor doinst
my friends or my enemies peace may-have they and rest Joy to-them may-give
Dex grignor ke ie naie! victore et honor et glore lor enuoit
God greater than I have victory and honor and glory to-them may-send
Dex enuers tos ciaus ki riens lor volront forfaire! et certes
God against all those who anything to-them will to-harm and certainly
si auront il, Car nus ne poroit estre en si douc pais comme
so will-have they For any not could be in so sweet country as
cis est kil ne fust plus bons eureus ke nus autres. por moi
this is that-be not were more good fortunate than any other for me

le di ie, ki esproue lai, car tant comme ie i demorai me
it say I who proved it-have for so-long as I there stayed to-me
uint bone eurtes plus abandoneement a cent doubles kil
came good fortune more abundantly by a-hundred doubles than-it
ne fesist, se ie fusse en vne autre terre, ia ne fust si bonne'.
— would-do if I were in a other land ever not were-it so good
Teus paroles dist Lanselos, quant il se fu partis del
Such words said Lancelot when he himself was departed from-the
roiaume de Logres. tant com il pot ueoir le pais, le
kingdom of Logres so-long as he could see the country it
regarda, Et, quant il en ot del tot perdue la ueue, si
looked-at-he And when he thereof had of-the all lost the sight so
sala couchier en son lit. Et lors commencha a faire
himself-went-he to-lie in his bed And then began-he to make
un si grant duel et si meruilleus ke nus nel ueist ki
a so great grief and so marvelous that any not-it might-see who
grant pitie nen deust auoir, et dura cis dieus dusques a
great pity not-thereof ought to-have and lasted this grief until to
lariuer. Et quant il uinrent a terre atot lor estorement,
the-landing And when they came to land with-all their fleet
Il monta, entre lui et sa compaignie, et alerent tant kil
He mounted between him and his company and went-they so-much that-they
aprochierent dun bois. Et lors descendi Lanselos et conmanda
approached a wood And then dismounted Lancelot and commanded
ke ses pauillons fust iluec tendus, car il i uoloit anuit mais
that his pavilion were there pitched for he there wished tonight more
remanoir. Et cil le tendirent maintenant, ki de tel mestier
to-remain And those it pitched at-once who of such office
deuoient seruir. Cele nuit se herbega iluec et Lanselos
ought to-serve That night themselves lodged there both Lancelot
et tote sa gent, et lendemain sen parti. Puis erra
and all his people and the-morrow himself-thence departed-he Then traveled-he

tant par ses iornees kil uint el roiaume de Benuic.
so-much by his days'-journeys that-he came into-the kingdom of Benwick
et quant cil del pais sorent kil deuoit uenir, Se li
and when those of-the country knew that-he was-to come So to-him
uinrent a lencontre et le rechurent a molt grant ioie,
came-they to the-meeting and him received with very great joy
comme celui ki estoit lor drois sires lieges et il si home.
as him who was their right lord liege and they his men

Bors and Lionel Crowned

VIII

In Benwick Lancelot asks Bors and Lionel a gift: Bors is to be crowned king of Benwick and Lionel of Gaunes on All Saints' Day, and Lancelot will hold nothing of Gaul, which Arthur gave him. At the feast the high men of many lands gather for love of him, but he is the most pensive of all. News comes that Arthur will make war in the spring at Gawain's urging; Lancelot says the king will be well received, but Gawain will not go home sound.

A lendemain, quant il fu uenus en tel maniere, Il uint a
On the-next-day when he was come in such manner He came to
Boort et a Lionel si lor dist: 'donnes moi', fait il, 'un
Bors and to Lionel so to-them said give me says he a
don tel comme ie le uos demanderai; et gardes que uos ne
gift such as I it you shall-ask and see-to-it that you not
men faillies, car ie seroie trop dolans'. 'Sire', font il, 'il
me-thereof may-fail for I would-be too sorrowful Lord say they it
ne couient pas que uos nos proies de cose ke uos uoellies
not behooves at-all that you us may-pray of thing which you may-wish
que nos fachons, mais commandes tot seurement, car nos ne
that we may-do but command all surely for we not

laisserons pas por pierdre les uies que nos ne fachons tot
shall-leave at-all for to-lose the lives that we — may-do all
maintenant uostre commandement'. 'dont vos requier ie', fait
at-once your command then you ask I says
il, 'que uos retignies lonnor de Benuic et tot le roiaume
he that you may-keep the-honor of Benwick and all the kingdom
ensi com il sestent a uostre oes.' Et che dist il a Boort:
thus as it itself-extends to your use And this said he to Bors
'et uoel que vos en soies coronnes le ior de feste Tos
and wish that you thereof may-be crowned the day of feast All
Sains. Et uos, Lyoniaus, biaus cousins, aueres lonour uostre
Saints And you Lionel fair cousin will-have the-honor your
pere: ce est, le roiaume de Gaunes. et en seres couronnes
father this is the kingdom of Gaunes and thereof will-be crowned
a celui ior meesmes et si sera ceste feste et ceste ioie en
on that day itself and so will-be this feast and this joy in
la cite de Benuic. Del roialme de Gaule ne tenrai ie la
the city of Benwick Of-the realm of Gaul not shall-hold I the
parole, por ce que li rois Artus le me dona; car, sil mauoit
word for this that the king Arthur it me gave for if-he me-had
ore tot le monde donne, si li rendroie ie a cestui point,
now all the world given so to-him would-render I at this point
por ce ke de lui ne uolroie riens tenir.' Et il dient
for this that from him not would-wish anything hold And they say
kil le feront molt uolentiers, puis ke sa uolentes i est.
that-they it will-do very willingly since that his will there is
Tout ensi com il lor dist, si len uont ambedoi au piet
All thus as he to-them said so thence go both to-the foot
et rechoiuent de lui ceste signorie. Et de celui iour kil les
and receive from him this lordship And from that day that-he them
en saisist nauoit iusques al iour de la Tous Sains que
thereof invested not-had-there until to-the day of the All Saints but

.ij. mois et .ij. iors. Quant cil des .ij. roiaumes sorent que
two months and two days When those of-the two kingdoms knew that
a celui iour deuoient estre li doi frere couronnet et saisi,
on that day were-to be the two brothers crowned and invested
Li uns de la terre de Benuic et li autre del roiaume des
The one of the land of Benwick and the other of-the kingdom of
Gaunes, Lors peussies ueoir grant ioie par tote la terre et
Gaunes Then might-you-have seen great joy through all the land and
laboureours esleechier contre cou kil ne soloient. Si pooient
laborers rejoice beyond this that-they not were-wont So could
bien dire cil del pais que tous li plus pensis de tous et
well say those of-the country that all the most pensive of all and
li plus amatis estoit Lanselos, car a paines en pooit on
the most dejected was Lancelot for with pains thereof could one
traire biele chiere. Et nanporquant encore faisoit il asses
draw fair face And nevertheless still made he a-good-deal
grignor ioie et graindre feste que ses cuers ne li aportoit.
greater joy and greater feast than his heart — to-him brought
Al iour ke la feste de Tous Sains fu uenue furent
On-the day that the feast of All Saints was come were
asamble en la cite de Benuic tot li haut home ki de cha
assembled in the city of Benwick all the high men who of this-side
la mer auoient signorie, Del roiaume d'Escoce, de Logres,
the sea had lordship Of-the kingdom of-Scotland of Logres
d'Irlande, de Sorelois et del roiaume de Terre Gaste et
of-Ireland of Sorelois and of-the kingdom of Land Waste and
de Terre Forraine. Si i uinrent tot li haut homme, car
of Land Outer So there came all the high men for
tant auoient amet Lanselot por la bonte de sa cheualerie
so-much had-they loved Lancelot for the goodness of his chivalry
kil auoient en lui ueue kil ne fust si lontaine terre
which-they had in him seen that-it not were so distant land

kil nalaissent bien, por lui faire compaignie et honor,
that-they not-would-go well for him to-make company and honor
por tant kil quidassent kil lor pleust. et a celui
for so-much that-they thought that-it to-them might-please and on that
ior meesme que li doi frere furent courone, oi Lanselos
day itself that the two brothers were crowned heard Lancelot
nouieles ke li rois Artus sapareilloit por uenir a ost sor
news that the king Arthur was-making-ready for to-come in host upon
lui et i uenroit, sans faille, tot maintenant ke li yuers
him and there would-come without fail all at-once that the winter
seroit passes; car ia auoit auques fait son estorement. et
would-be passed for already had-he somewhat made his preparation and
tote ceste cose estoit par lesmute mon signor Gauain. Et
all this thing was by the-urging my lord Gawain And
quant il oi ceste parole, si respont a celui ki les nouieles
when he heard this word so answers-he to him who the news
li ot dites: 'Or laissies,' fait il, 'uenir mon signor, le
to-him had told Now let says he come my lord the
roi Artu, ke bien soit il uenus. Ciertes, nos le recheurons
king Arthur for well may-be he come Certainly we him shall-receive
bien et seurement, se Diu plest, car nostre castiel sont fort
well and surely if God please for our castles are strong
de murs et dautres coses et nostre terre est bien garnie
of walls and of-other things and our land is well furnished
de uiande et de cheualerie. Or viegne me sire li rois
with victuals and with chivalry Now may-come my lord the king
seurement, car ses cors na garde de moi en liu v iou
surely for his body not-has fear of me in place where I
soie, tant comme ie le puisse connoistre. Mais de mon
may-be so-long as I him may know But of my
signor Gauain, ki si nos contralie — et si nel deust mie
lord Gawain who so us thwarts and so not-it ought at-all

faire — et ki si porcache nostre mal a son pooir, vos di
to-do and who so pursues our harm to his power you tell
ie ke, sil uient cha, kil nen retornera iamais en son
I that if-he comes here that-he not-thence will-return ever into his
pais, sains ne haities, se ie onques puis. Ne onques ior de
country sound nor healthy if I ever can Nor ever day of
sa uie nentreprist guerre, dont il se repentist autre tant
his life not-undertook-he war whereof he himself would-repent other so-much
com il fera de ceste, se il i uient.' Ensi dist Lanselos a
as he will-do of this if he there comes Thus said Lancelot to
celui ki li dist les nouieles de la guerre et bien laseura
him who to-him told the news of the war and well him-assured
ke li rois Artus seroit mieus recheus kil ne poroit
that the king Arthur would-be better received than-he — could
quidier. Et cil dist ke ia li rois ne sen entremesist,
think And he said that ever the king not himself-thereof would-have-meddled
se ne fust me sire Gauains. Mais atant laisse ore li contes
if not were my lord Gawain But thereupon leaves now the tale
ichi endroit a parler de Lanselot Si retorne au roi Artu
here in-place to speak of Lancelot So returns-it to-the king Arthur
et a mon signor Gauain, ki sont el roiaume de Logres.
and to my lord Gawain who are in-the kingdom of Logres

Arthur Leaves Logres to Mordred

IX

Through the winter Gawain presses Arthur to renew the war, and the king promises to leave no stone of Benwick and Gaunes on another. After Easter, as the host gathers in London, Mordred offers to keep the land and the queen, and Arthur gives him the queen, his treasure, and the barons' oaths of obedience, which he will repent on Salisbury Plain. The queen, foreseeing trouble, weeps at the shore that they will never meet again, and a good wind carries the host over.

Or dist li contes ke tot celui yuier demora li rois Artus
Now says the tale that all that winter stayed the king Arthur
el roiaume de Logres tant a aise ke nus plus, car il nauoit
in-the kingdom of Logres so at ease that none more for he not-had
cose ki li despleust mie graument. Endementiers kil aloit
thing which him displeased at-all much Meanwhile that-he went
par ses bonnes uiles seiornant de ior en ior et par ses
through his good towns sojourning from day to day and through his
castiaus la v il les ueoit mieus aaisies, lamonesta tant
castles there where he them saw best at-ease him-urged so-much
me sire Gauains kil recommenchast la guerre encontre
my lord Gawain that-he should-begin-again the war against
Lanselot et kil alast sor lui a force de gent quil li
Lancelot and that-he should-go upon him with force of men that-he to-him
creanta comme rois que ia plus tost ne seroit la Paske
promised as king that ever more soon not would-be the Easter
passee kil manderoit ses hommes, tos ciaus ki poroient
passed than-he would-summon his men all those who could
armes porter, et iroit, sans faille, a ost banie sor
arms bear and would-go without fail in host proclaimed upon
Lanselot et tant sen traueilleroit, sil i deuoit morir
Lancelot and so-much himself-thereof would-toil if-he there should die

et demorer, kil abatroit les fortereces de Benuic et de
and stay that-he would-cast-down the fortresses of Benwick and of
Gaunes, en tel maniere kil ne lairoit es murs piere sor
Gaunes in such manner that-he not would-leave in-the walls stone upon
autre. Ceste promesse fist li rois a mon signor Gauain, por
other This promise made the king to my lord Gawain for
cou kil laloit si angoussant de la guerre de ior en iour.
this that-he him-went so pressing about the war from day to day
Se li promist cou kil ne li pot tenir; car, quant il
So to-him promised-he this which-he not to-him could hold for when he
i fu uenus, il i troua tel gent ki bien li contredisent,
there was come he there found such men who well to-him gainsaid
Si kil ne pot a la cite forfaire ne ce ne coi, se petit non.
So that-he not could to the city harm nor this nor that except little not

Apres la Paske, au tans nouel que la froidure fu
After the Easter in-the time new that the cold was
auques departie, semonst li rois Artus tous ses barons et
somewhat departed summoned the king Arthur all his barons and
apareilla sa nauie, por passer mer. et fu cele assamblee
made-ready his fleet for to-cross sea and was that assembly
en la cite de Londres. Et quant il durent mouoir, mesire
in the city of London And when they were-to set-out my-lord
Gauains demanda au roi, son oncle: 'Sire, en la qui garde
Gawain asked of-the king his uncle Lord in the whose keeping
laires uos uostre terre et la roine?' et li rois commenca
will-leave you your land and the queen and the king began
tot maintenant a penser a qui il le pora laissier. Et
all at-once to think to whom he it will-be-able leave And
Morderes, li freres mon signor Gauain, saut auant tot
Mordred the brother my lord Gawain leaps forward all
erraument et dist au roi: 'Sire, sil uos plest, ie remanrai,
forthwith and said to-the king Lord if-it you pleases I shall-remain

por le garder, et ma dame en sera plus saluement et vos
for it to-keep and my lady thereby will-be more safely and you
en seres plus asseur, par raison, que sele estoit en autrui
thereby will-be more sure by reason than if-she were in another's
main et en autrui garde.' Et li rois dist kil remaigne
hand and in another's keeping And the king said that-he may-remain
et kil le gart comme son cors. 'Sire', fait Mordres,
and that-he her may-keep as his body Lord says Mordred
'ie vos creanc que ie le garderai ausi loiaument et ausi
I you promise that I her shall-keep as loyally and as
chi[e]rement comme feroie mon cors meesmes.' Et li rois
dearly as I-would-do my body itself And the king
prent tot maintenant la roine Se li baille; et li dist
takes all at-once the queen So to-him hands and to-him says
kil le gart ausi loiaument comme liges hom doit garder
that-he her may-keep as loyally as liege man ought to-keep
la feme son signor. Et il le rechoit en tel maniere. Si en
the wife of-his lord And he her receives in such manner So thereof
fu la roine molt coroucie de ce kele li fu baillie a
was the queen much angered from this that-she to-him was handed to
garder, car ele sauoit tant de mal en lui et de desloiaute
keep for she knew so-much of evil in him and of disloyalty
quele pensoit bien ke courous et anuis len uenroit de
that-she thought well that anger and trouble her-thence would-come from
ceste garde. et si fist il asses plus grant kele ne peust
this keeping and so did it a-good-deal more great than-she — could
quidier. Et li rois baille Mordret les cles de tos ses tresors,
think And the king hands Mordred the keys of all his treasures
por ce ke, se lui estoit mestiers dor et dargent, quant
for this that if to-him were need of-gold and of-silver when
il sera passes el roiaume de Gaunes, ke Mordres li
he will-be crossed into-the kingdom of Gaunes that Mordred to-him

enuoit cou kil li mandera. Et lors commande li rois a
may-send this which-he to-him will-send-for And then commands the king to
tous ses cheualiers ki el pais demorroient kil fesissent
all his knights who in-the country would-stay that-they should-do
outreement quan ke Mordres lor commanderoit; et lor
utterly whatever that Mordred to-them would-command and them
fist iurer sor sains que ia cose quil lor comandast
made swear upon relics that ever thing which-he to-them commanded
ne trespasseroient kil nel facent de maintenant. et cil
not would-they-transgress that-they not-it may-do of at-once and they
li fisent le sairement dont li rois se repenti puis
to-him made the oath whereof the king himself repented afterward
si dolereusement kil en dut estre uencus en camp en
so sorrowfully that-he thereby was-to be vanquished in field in
la plaigne de Salesbieres, v la bataille morteus fu, ensi
the plain of Salisbury where the battle mortal was thus
comme li istore le uos deuisera cha auant apertement.
as the history it you will-tell here-on forward openly

Apres ceste cose sesmut li rois Artus tot maintenant
After this thing himself-set-out the king Arthur all at-once
de Longres a tot grant compaignie de bonne gent et
from London with all great company of good men and
erra tant kil uint a la mer. et toutes uoies le
journeyed so-much that-he came to the sea and all the-same him
conuoia la roine iusques la, v il uolsist u non. Et
escorted the queen until there whether he wished or not And
quant il dut entrer en mer, ele commencha a faire trop
when he was-to enter into sea she began to make too
grant duel de sor lui. Et li dist tot en plorant la
great grief from over him And to-him said all in weeping there
v il le baisoit: ‘Sire, Nostre Sires uos conduise et uos
where he her kissed Lord Our Lord you may-guide and you

ramaint par sa pitie, sain et haitie; car, si mait Dex, ie
may-bring-back by his pity sound and healthy for so me-help God I
noi onques mais de uos ne de uostre aler si grant paour
not-had ever more of you nor of your going so great fear
comme ie ai orendroit. Et coment kil soit de uostre
as I have now And however that-it may-be of your
reuenir et de uostre aler, mes cuers me dist ke ie iamais
returning and of your going my heart me tells that I ever
iour de ma uie ne vos uerrai ne uos moi.' 'Dame', fet li
day of my life not you shall-see nor you me Lady says the
rois, 'si feres, si Diu plest. naies mie si grant doutance,
king so you-will-do if God please not-have at-all so great dread
car en paour auoir ne pories uos riens gaaignier.' Atant
for in fear to-have not could you anything gain Thereupon
entra li rois en sa nef. Et li uoile furent leue, por le uent
entered the king into his ship And the sails were raised for the wind
retenir, et li maistre furent apareillie tot ensi et fisent
to-hold and the masters were made-ready all thus and did
tot ensement come il deuoient faire. Si ne demora pas
all likewise as they ought to-do So not stayed-it at-all
granment que li uens les ot si eslongies de la riue kil
much that the wind them had so distanced from the shore that-they
se porent ueoir en haute mer. Il orent bon uent et
themselves could see in high sea They had good wind and
fort et si bien portant kil ne demandoient pas millor,
strong and so well bearing that-they not asked at-all better
et par cou uinrent tost a riue. Si en merchierent Nostre
and through this came-they soon to shore So thereof thanked-they Our
Signor de cou quil estoient uenu a riue si saluement, et
Lord for this that-they were come to shore so safely and
lor cors sains et haities et totes lor coses sauues. Quant
their bodies sound and healthy and all their things safe When

il furent uenu a riue, Li rois commanda maintenant kil
they were come to shore The king commanded at-once that-they
traisissent fors des nes tot lor harnois et tendissent lor
should-draw out of-the ships all their harness and should-pitch their
pauillons sor la riue, por cou kil se uoloit reposer.
pavilions upon the shore for this that-he himself wished to-rest
Et cil le fisent tot ensement kil lor ot commande.
And they it did all likewise as-he to-them had commanded

The Old Woman's Warning

X

Arthur lands with sixty thousand and finds every castle of Benwick refortified. Gawain urges marching straight on Gaunes, against Yvain's advice. Near the city an old lady on a white palfrey warns the king that the siege will bring him neither profit nor honor, and tells Gawain that he will never see Logres again sound and whole, as was foretold when he left the Fisher King's house. She rides into Gaunes, and Lancelot says they will ride out at prime.

Cele nuit uit li rois en vne praerie asses pres de la riue
That night lay the king in a meadow quite near to the shore
de la mer. Et au matin, quant il se parti diluec, Il
of the sea And in-the morning when he himself departed from-there They
regarderent combien il pooient auoir de gent si trouerent
looked how-many they could have of men so found-they
kil estoient plus de .lx. Mile, ke cheualier ke seriant,
that-they were more than sixty Thousand as-much knights as sergeants
dont il nen i auoit nul ki asses ne fust deffensables.
whereof it not-thereof there had any who a-good-deal not were capable-of-defense
Si cheuaucierent en tel maniere tant ke il vinrent el
So rode-they in such manner so-long that they came into-the

roiaume de Benuic. Mais quant il i furent entre, il
kingdom of Benwick But when they there were entered they
ne trouerent pas les castiaus desgarnis, car il ni auoit
not found at-all the castles unprovided for it not-there had
celui que Lanselos neust fait amender et refaire tot de
that-one which Lancelot not-had had amended and remade all of
nouiel. Et quant il furent enbatu el roiaume de Benuic,
new And when they were thrust into-the kingdom of Benwick
Li rois Artus demanda a ses hommes quele part il iroient.
The king Arthur asked of his men what way they should-go
'Sire', fait me sire Gauains, 'nos irons droit a la cite de
Lord says my lord Gawain we shall-go straight to the city of
Gaunes, v li rois Boors et li rois Lions et Lanselos et
Gaunes where the king Bors and the king Lionel and Lancelot and
Hestors demeurent atot lor pooir de gent. Et se nos ciax
Hector dwell with-all their power of men And if we those
poons entreprendre en aucune maniere, Nos poriens apres
can surprise in any manner We could after
legierement nostre guerre mener a fin.' 'Par Deu, me sire
lightly our war bring to end By God my lord
Gauain', fait me sire Yuains, li fils au roi Vrien, 'ce est
Gawain says my lord Yvain the son of-the king Urien this is
grant folie daler premierement a cele chite, car iluec demore
great folly to-go first to that city for there dwells
tos li orgius et li effors de la cheualerie de ceste terre;
all the pride and the force of the chivalry of this land
por coi il nos couient penser premierement aler destruire les
for which it us behooves to-think first to-go to-destroy the
castiaus et les uiles dentor cele cite, Si que nos neussons
castles and the towns around that city So that we not-might-have
garde denuiron nos quant nos eussons assis ciaus dedens'.
fear around us when we should-have besieged those within

‘Ha!’ fait me sire Gauains, ‘onques ne uos en esmaies.
Ah says my lord Gawain ever not you thereof be-dismayed
certes, il nauera ia en cest pais si hardi ki fors de
certainly it not-will-have-there ever in this country so bold who out of
castiel osent issir tant kil nos sacent en ceste terre’.
castle may-dare go-out so-long that-they us may-know in this land
‘Or alons dont’, fait li rois, ‘asseoir Gaunes, Puis que vos
Now let-us-go then says the king to-besiege Gaunes Since that you
le uoles’. Lors sen ala li rois aseoir Gaunes, entre
it wish Then himself-thence went the king to-besiege Gaunes between
lui et sa compaignie. et quant il uint pres, il encontra
him and his company and when he came near he met
vne uielle dame durement, ki cheuauchoit un palefroit blanc
an old lady very who rode a palfrey white
et estoit molt richement apareillie. Et la v ele uit le
and was very richly arrayed And there where she saw the
roi, elle le connut molt bien Se li dist tot maintenant:
king she him knew very well So to-him said all at-once
‘Rois Artus, uois la la cite de Gaunes que tu ies uenus
King Arthur see there the city of Gaunes which thou art come
asseoir, ce sai ie bien. Mais or sacies certainement que ce est
to-besiege this know I well But now know certainly that this is
molt grans folie et ke tu crois fol conseil et maluais, car
very great folly and that thou believest foolish counsel and bad for
ia de cest cose que tu as enprise nauras ne preu ne
ever from this thing which thou hast undertaken not-thou-wilt-have neither profit nor
honour; car tu ne la prendras ia, ains ten partiras sans
honor for thou not it wilt-take ever rather thee-thence wilt-part without
cou que tu i aies rien fait. ce sera lonors que tu i
this that thou there may-have anything done this will-be the-honor which thou there
aras. Et vos, me sire Gauain, ki ceste cose aues loee au
wilt-have And you my lord Gawain who this thing have counseled to-the

roi et par qui conseil ceste Guerre est recommenchie, sacies
king and by whose counsel this War is begun-again know
vraiement que vos porcachies si durement uostre damage ke
truly that you pursue so hard your harm that
vos iamais ne reueres le roiaume de Logres, sains ne haities.
you ever not will-see-again the kingdom of Logres sound nor healthy
Si poes dire uraiement que ore est li termes uenus ki ia
So can-you say truly that now is the term come which long
dis vos fu promis quant vos vos partistes de cies le
ago to-you was promised when you yourself departed from the-house-of the
rice Roi Pesceour, v vos eustes asses honte et laidure, et
rich King Fisher where you had much shame and insult and
molt vos deust bien ramenbrer de cou que vos i oistes'.
much you ought well to-remember of this that you there heard
Quant la dame ot parle en tel maniere, Si sen
When the lady had spoken in such manner So herself-thence
retorne molt grant aleure, que onques ne uolt oir parole
returns-she very great pace so-that ever not would-she hear word
ke me sire Gauains ne li rois li desissent. Si sen
which my lord Gawain nor the king to-her might-say So herself-thence
ala tot droit a la cite de Gaunes et se feri dedens et
went-she all straight to the city of Gaunes and herself struck within and
uint droit au maistre palais, v ele troua Lanselot et les
came straight to-the master palace where she found Lancelot and the
.ij. rois; et auoient auoec aus molt grant compaignie de gent
two kings and had-they with them very great company of men
et de cheualiers et de prodomes. Et ele fu descendue en la
and of knights and of worthy-men And she was dismounted in the
cort aual, Et, quant ele fu montee el palais, ele uint as
court below And when she was mounted into-the palace she came to-the
.ij. rois et a Lanselot Si lor dist que li rois Artus estoit
two kings and to Lancelot So to-them said-she that the king Arthur was

a demie liue pres de Gaunes et que ia pooient ueoir lor
at half league near to Gaunes and that already could-they see their
harnois et plus de .x. m. homes de fors des lor; et il
harness and more than ten thousand men from outside of-the theirs and they
dient que de ce ne lor caut il, car il sont si bien garni
say that of this not to-them matters it for they are so well furnished
encontre eus kil nont doute ne paour. Et il sauoient
against them that-they not-have doubt nor fear And they knew
ia bien quil ne feroient lor siege ailleurs, et por cou si
already well that-they not would-make their siege elsewhere and for this so
estoient si... de toutes coses kil ne lor faloit rien. Lors
were-they so of all things that-it not to-them lacked anything Then
demandent cil de laiens a Lanselot: 'Sire, ke ferons nos? li
ask those of in-there of Lancelot Lord what shall-do we the
rois Artus fait logier sa gent de fors cele cite. Nos nos
king Arthur has lodge his men from outside that city We ourselves
deussons armer et corre lor sus, anchois kil fuscent tot
ought to-arm and run them upon before that-they were all
logiet.' 'Ne vos caille', fait Lanselos, 'mais laissies lor faire
lodged Not you let-it-trouble says Lancelot but let them do
orendroit quankil poront, et demain a eure de prime nos
now whatever-they will-be-able and tomorrow at hour of prime we
en istrons, tot arme et fer uestu. Si lor corrons maintenant
thence shall-go-out all armed and iron clad So them shall-run-we at-once
sus, et lors qui Dex en donra lonnor si la prenge, car,
up and then to-whom God thereof will-give the-honor so it may-take for
se Dex me consaut, ie ne quier ia ke no anemi demeurent
if God me help I not seek ever that our enemies may-remain
longement dales nos, por que nos le puissons amender a repos.'
long beside us for that we it may amend at rest

The Battle Before Gaunes

XI

Both sides form twenty battalions, Lancelot and Hector leading the first from the city, Gawain and Yvain the first of the host. Gawain and Lancelot unhorse each other, and Yvain strikes Hector down. When Bors and Lionel join, Bors's feats dismay Arthur's men, but the king holds his side and wounds Lionel in the head, and the city's knights withdraw. Four battles in a week cost the besiegers more, chiefly at the hands of the three cousins.

A ceste cose sacorde bien li rois Boors et tot li autre ausi.
To this thing agrees well the king Bors and all the others also
et Lanselos fait tantost crier par mi la uile que tot li
and Lancelot has at-once cry through amid the town that all the
cheualier soient le matin monte deuant prime et apareilliet
knights be the morning mounted before prime and arrayed
daler a force sor cex de lost. Si en sont li plusor liet et
to-go by force upon those of the-host So thereof are the most glad and
ioiant, car plus amoient la guerre ke la pais. Si furent cele
joyful for more loved-they the war than the peace So were-they that
nuit a aise cil de fors et cil dedens, car asses se
night at ease those from outside and those within for a-good-deal themselves
iuerent et enuoisierent. Ne onques not dune part ne
played and made-merry Nor ever not-had-there on-one side nor
dautre si hardi arbalestrier ki osast forfaire a home de
on-the-other so bold crossbowman who dared harm to man of
tote la nuit, nient plus ke sil eussent tot la pais iuree.
all the night no more than if-they had all the peace sworn
Ensi se reposerent cele nuit et cil de fors et cil
Thus themselves rested-they that night both those from outside and those
dedens, Mais a lendemain, si tost comme li iors aparut,
within But on the-next-day so soon as the day appeared

se leuerent et prisent lor armes au plus tost kil
themselves raised-they and took their arms at-the most soon that-they
porent; car molt desiroient cil dedens kil ueissent leure
could for much desired those within that-they might-see the-hour
kil peussent assambler a ciaus de fors. et quant il
that-they might join-battle with those from outside and when they
furent apareilliet, il uinrent deuant le maistre palais et
were arrayed they came before the master palace and
saresterent enmi la rue, tot monte, por atendre tant kil
themselves-stopped amid the street all mounted for to-await until that-they
eussent congiet de fors issir. Celui ior se leua Lanselos
should-have leave to out go-out That day himself raised Lancelot
molt matin et ausi fisent li doi roi. Et quant il furent
very early and also did the two kings And when they were
arme et il orent esmet combien de gent il pooient estre,
armed and they had reckoned how-many of men they could be
Si trouerent kil auoit bien laiens plus de .xx. hommes a
So found-they that-it had well in-there more than twenty men at
armes, ki tot estoient deffensable, et estoient bien garni de
arms who all were capable-of-defense and were well furnished with
cheualiers et de serians; et misent en cascune bataille, por
knights and with sergeants and put-they in each battalion for
le garder, vn cheualier preudomme tel com il quidoient kil
it to-guard a knight worthy-man such as they thought that-it
lor couenist. Et en la derraine furent li doi frere roi. Et
to-them might-befit And in the last were the two brothers kings And
en la premiere furent entre Lanselot et Hestor, tel doi baron
in the first were between Lancelot and Hector such two barons
ki bien faiso[ie]nt a redouter. Et tot autresi comme cil
who well were to be-feared And all likewise as those
dedens orent fait .xx. batailles, autresi fisent cil de fors,
within had made twenty battalions likewise did those from outside

car il auoient laiens lor espies ki lor uinrent maintenant
for they had in-there their spies who to-them came at-once
nonchier tot ensi comme cil dedens sestoient apreste, et
to-announce all thus as those within themselves-were made-ready and
bien lor disent que Lanselos et Hestor seroient en la
well to-them said-they that Lancelot and Hector would-be in the
premiere bataille et li doi roi frere seroient en la derraine.
first battalion and the two kings brothers would-be in the last
Lors commande li rois Artus que en la premiere bataille et
Then commands the king Arthur that in the first battalion and
en la derraine eust tant de preudomes que cil dedens
in the last there-should-be so-many of worthy-men that those within
en fussent tot esbahi. Et il le fisent, si comme li rois
thereby might-be all amazed And they it did so as the king
lot commande, et apres ordenerent lor batailles au mieus
it-had commanded and after ordered-they their battalions at-the best
kil porent. Au conduire la premiere bataille, par le
that-they could To-the leading the first battalion by the
commun esgart de tos, fu mesire Gauains et me sire Yuains,
common judgment of all was my-lord Gawain and my lord Yvain
li fils au roi Vrijen, bons cheualiers et seurs. et ce fisent
the son of-the king Urien good knights and sure and this did
il por Lanselot et por Hestor ki estoient encontre eus.
they for Lancelot and for Hector who were against them
Quant il fu cose que ces .ij. batailles sentraprochierent,
When it was thing that these two battalions each-other-approached
Mesire Gauains et Lanselos assamblerent, et me sire Yuains
My-lord Gawain and Lancelot joined and my lord Yvain
et Hestor. si sentreporterent a la terre, entre mon signor
and Hector so each-other-carried to the ground between my lord
Gauain et Lanselot, les cheuaus sor les cors, et orent
Gawain and Lancelot the horses upon the bodies and had

ambedoi les glaues brisies. et mesire Yuains abati Hestor
both the lances broken and my-lord Yvain struck-down Hector
si felenessement ke por .i. po kil not le brac brisiet au
so cruelly that for a little that-he not-had the arm broken in-the
cheoir, Ia fust ce cose que Hestors fust uns des bons
falling Already was this thing that Hector was one of-the good
iosteours del monde, Mais molt estoit me sire Yuains bons
jousters of-the world But much was my lord Yvain good
cheualiers et segurs. Atant desbussent les batailles dambes
knight and sure Thereupon come-out the battalions from-both
.ij. pars, cascuns por rescoure son signor. Si commence iluec
two sides each for to-rescue his lord So begins there
endroit, v li doi furent abatu, vne mellee si grans et
in-place where the two were struck-down a melee so great and
si meruilleuse que asses i peussies ueoir cheualiers
so marvelous that a-good-deal there might-you-have seen knights
chaoir et uerser. Mais Lanselos se fu releues et montes
fall and overturn But Lancelot himself was raised and mounted
sor son destrier et ot mise la main a lespee Si commencha
upon his charger and had put the hand to the-sword So began-he
grans cols a donner tot entor lui. Et me sire Yuains ot
great blows to give all around him And my lord Yvain had
tant fait, entre lui et sa compaignie, kil orent mon
so-much done between him and his company that-they had my
signor Gauain remonte, v cil de la cite volsissent v
lord Gawain remounted whether those of the city would or
non. Si assamblerent ensi dambes .ij. pars totes les batailles
not So joined thus from-both two sides all the battalions
ancois ke eure de tierce fust passee. Et Lanselos ot troue
before that hour of tierce were passed And Lancelot had found
Hestor, son frere, en la bataille gisant molt mesmene et
Hector his brother in the battle lying very ill-handled and

defoule des cheuaus. Si le releua et le fist monter.
trampled by-the horses So him raised-he and him made mount
Lors commencha en la praerie de Gaunes la mellee asses
Then began in the meadow of Gaunes the melee a-good-deal
crueus et asses felenesse, dont il morurent le ior maint
cruel and a-good-deal fierce whereof it died the day many-a
bon cheualier et maint preudomme. Mais quant ce uint que
good knight and many-a worthy-man But when this came that
li rois Boors et li rois Lions furent uenut a la bataille,
the king Bors and the king Lionel were come to the battle
Lors ueissies les homes le roi Artu trop durement
Then might-you-have-seen the men of-the king Arthur too hard
esmaier por les merueilles kil ueoient ke Boors faisoit;
be-dismayed for the marvels which-they saw that Bors did
car, sans faille, il nencontroit gaires souent home kil
for without fail he not-met much often man whom-he
ne portast a terre v mort v mehaignie v blechiet en
not might-carry to ground either dead or maimed or hurt in
aucune maniere. Si eussent cil de fors perdu a cele fois,
some manner So would-have those from outside lost at that time
se ne fust li rois Artus, ki trop bien le fist. Et tant
if not were the king Arthur who too well it did And so-much
mist grant deffense en garder sonnor et ses homes ke
put-he great defense in guarding his-honor and his men that
nus de son eage ne li peust metre si grant. Si fist
any of his age not to-him could put so great So did-he
tant par son cors a cele assamblee kil ocist asses de
so-much by his body at that encounter that-he killed many of
cex de Gaunes, et le roi Lion meesmes naura il el cief
those of Gaunes and the king Lionel himself wounded he in-the head
dune plaie kil li fist. Si en orent cil de Gaunes
with-a wound which-he to-him made So thereof had those of Gaunes

si grant paour, quant il le uirent naure el chief, que
so great fear when they him saw wounded in-the head that
la bataille en remest ains eure de uespres et sen
the battle thereby remained before hour of vespers and themselves-thence
entrerent en la cite. et ce pleust molt a ciaus del ost,
entered-they into the city and this pleased much to those of-the host
car il auoient eut molt grant paour que li noaus nen
for they had had very great fear that the worse thereof
fust lor, a cou que dedens auoit molt bone cheualerie.
might-be theirs for this that within had-there very good chivalry
Ensi assamblerent cil del ost a ciaus dedens .iiij. fois
Thus joined-battle those of-the host with those within four times
en vne sesmaine. Si ot a ces assamblees maint cheualier
in a week So had-there at these encounters many-a knight
mort et naure et dune part et dautre. Mais totes uoies
dead and wounded both on-one side and on-the-other But all the-same
i orent cil de fors plus perdu ke cil dedens norent,
there had those from outside more lost than those within had
car Lanselos et Boors et Hestor, ki a tos besoins estoient
for Lancelot and Bors and Hector who at all needs were
prest et ki molt estoient preudomme de lor cors, en
ready and who much were worthy-man of their bodies thereof
orent molt damagies et en orent par lor cors ocis plusors.
had much harmed and thereof had by their bodies killed several
et ce estoit la cose par coi cil de fors estoient plus
and this was the thing by which those from outside were more
esmaiet, car il ueoient a totes les assamblees ces .iij. molt
dismayed for they saw at all the encounters these three much
nuire et damagier les lor, Si kil ne ueoient es batailles,
harm and damage the theirs So that-they not saw in-the battles
ce lor sambloit, se ces .iij. non. Et ce estoit cou ki
this to-them seemed except these three not And this was that which

plus maintenait ciaus dedens et ki plus confondoit ciaus
most maintained those within and which most confounded those
de fors. Car cil dedens estoient trop aseur por les .iij.
from outside For those within were too sure for the three
cousins et cil de fors en estoient trop espoente. Et
cousins and those from outside thereby were too frightened And
nanporquant cil de fors auoient merueilles bonne ceualerie;
nevertheless those from outside had marvels good chivalry
Mais se ne fussent solement li rois Artus et me sire
But if not were only the king Arthur and my lord
Gauains et me sire Yuains, ki les sostenoient, tost fust
Gawain and my lord Yvain who them sustained soon would-be
lor deffense outree. Et atant laisse ore li contes a parler
their defense overcome And thereupon leaves now the tale to speak
diaus tous ichi endroit et retorne a Mordret.
of-them all here in-place and returns to Mordred

Mordred's Forged Letter

XII

In Logres Mordred wins the barons with feasts and gifts, and falls in love with the queen. He has a letter forged under Arthur's seal: Lancelot has wounded the king to death, Gawain is dead, and the barons are to crown Mordred and give him the queen to wife. A bishop reads it in London, and the city mourns Arthur for eight days. Then the barons resolve to make Mordred king and give him Guinevere.

Or dist li contes ke quant li rois Artus ot deliuree la
Now says the tale that when the king Arthur had delivered the
roine Genieure a Mordret a garder et il se fu partis
queen Guinevere to Mordred to keep and he himself was departed
del roiaume de Logres, por aler a ost sor Lanselot,
from-the kingdom of Logres for to-go in host upon Lancelot

Mordres, ki fu remes saisis de tote la terre le roi,
Mordred who was remained invested with all the land of-the king
manda auoec lui tos les haus hommes del pais si
summoned with him all the high men of-the country so
commencha a tenir les grans cors et a faire les grans festes
began-he to hold the great courts and to make the great feasts
et a doner les grans dons souuent. Si fist tant en po de
and to give the great gifts often So did-he so-much in little of
tans, par cou kil donoit si largement, kil conquist si
time through this that-he gave so largely that-he won so
tos les cuers des homes del roiaume kil ne peust rien
all the hearts of-the men of-the kingdom that-he not could anything
commander el pais ki ne fust fait erraument, autresi
command in-the country which not were done forthwith just-as
bien comme se li rois Artus meesmes le commandast.
well as if the king Arthur himself it commanded
Tant repaira Mordres auoec la roine Genieure de nuis et
So-much frequented Mordred with the queen Guinevere by nights and
de iors kil lama de si grant amor kil ne ueoit pas
by days that-he her-loved with so great love that-he not saw at-all
ke a morir ne len couenist, Sil nen eust sa uolente.
but to die not him-thereof behooved If-he not-thereof had his will
Et nanporquant il ne li osoit dire en nule maniere, et
And nevertheless he not to-her dared say in any manner and
si lamoit il si tres durement comme hom morteus pooit
so her-loved he so very hard as man mortal could
amer feme sans mort. Lors se porpensa dune tres grant
love woman without death Then himself bethought-he of-a very great
traison, dont il fu puis tot dis parle et sera tant com
treason whereof he was afterward all days spoken-of and will-be so-long as
li siecles durra, Car il fist faire unes letres saielees en .i.
the world will-last For he had make a letter sealed with a

faus saiel, contrefait au saiel le roi Artu, et furent les
false seal counterfeited on-the seal of-the king Arthur and were the
letres aportees a Londres et furent liutes deuant tos les
letters brought to London and were read before all the
haus homes ki la estoient, et si les liut uns euesques
high men who there were and so them read a bishop
d'Illande. et auoit en ces letres escrit en tel maniere:
of-Ireland and had-there in these letters written in such manner

'A uos, signor baron del roiame de Logres et del roiaume
To you lords barons of-the realm of Logres and of-the kingdom
d'Escoce et d'Illande et des autres roialmes ki a moi
of-Scotland and of-Ireland and of-the other realms which to me
estoient sougit et obeissant, manc ie salus. Coment ke ie soie
were subject and obedient send I greetings Though that I may-be
naures par la main Lanselot et tot mi home ocis et decope
wounded by the hand of-Lancelot and all my men killed and cut-down
et il me prengne de uos pitie plus ke de nul autre gent, por
and it me may-take of you pity more than of any other people for
la grant loiaute que ie ai en uos trouee, Ie uos prie, por
the great loyalty which I have in you found I you pray for
vostre preu et por le mien et por la pais de uos roiaumes
your benefit and for the mine and for the peace of your kingdoms
et por la seurance de tote la terre que vos i aies, Que
and for the security of all the land which you there may-have That
uos de Mordret, que ie tenoie a mon neueu — Mais, sans
you of Mordred whom I held for my nephew But without
faille, il nel estoit pas — faites roi et le couronnes del
fail be not-it was at-all make king and him crown of-the
roiaume de Logres, car moi ne uerres uos iamais; car, sans
kingdom of Logres for me not will-see you ever for without
faille, Lanselos ma naure a mort et Gauains, mes nies,
fail Lancelot me-has wounded to death and Gawain my nephew

est ocis et tot mi homme sont ocis et decope. Et encore
is killed and all my men are killed and cut-down And still
vos requier ie sor le sairement que vos maues fait ke uos
you ask I upon the oath which you me-have made that you
Genieure, ma feme, qui ie auoie tant chiere, Li donnes a
Guinevere my wife whom I had so-much dear To-him give as
per et a moillier. et se vos cou ne faisies, trop grans maus
peer and as wife and if you this not did too great evils
vos en poroit auenir. Car apres ma mort, se Lanselos
to-you thereof could happen For after my death if Lancelot
puet sauoir kele ne soit mariee, il ira sor uos a ost
can know that-she not may-be married he will-go upon you in host
tot maintenant et uos destruira tos et le prendra a feme
all at-once and you will-destroy all and her will-take as wife
maugre uos tous, et ce sera la cose dont mame sera plus
despite you all and this will-be the thing whereof my-soul will-be most
triste et plus dolante, de cou kil laura en sa baillie.'
sad and most sorrowful of this that-he her-will-have in his keeping
Toutes ces paroles estoient contenues es fausses letres
All these words were contained in-the false letters
et furent teles com eles estoient leues deuant la roine. Et
and were such as they were read before the queen And
quant Mordres, qui tote ceste desloiaute auoit portraitie et
when Mordred who all this disloyalty had devised and
faite si sotilment que nus nen sauoit riens, fors il et
done so subtly that any not-thereof knew anything except he and
li ualles ki les letres auoient aportees — Quant il oi ces
the squire who the letters had brought When he heard these
letres, il fist si grant samblant destre courouchies de ceste
letters he made so great show to-be angered at this
nouiele kil se laissa cheoir entre les barons ausi comme
news that-he himself let fall among the barons just as

tous pasmes et commencha a faire le grignor duel del
all swooned and began to make the greatest grief of-the
monde. Mais de la roine, ki bien quidoit ke les nouieles
world But of the queen who well thought that the news
fussent uoire, uos puet on bien dire que ele commencha
were true you can one well say that she began
a faire duel meruilleus et si tres grant kil nest nus, sil
to make grief marvelous and so very great that-it not-is any if-he
le ueist a celui point, ki tote pitie nen deust auoir.
her saw at that point who all pity not-thereof ought to-have
Li dieus commencha par mi le palais, car tot crient et
The grief began through amid the palace for all cry and
braient de totes pars et font si grant duel et si grans
bray from all sides and make so great grief and so great
plains que on ni oist mie Deu tonnant. Quant
laments that one not-there would-have-heard at-all God thundering When
ceste nouiele fu espandue parmi la cite de Londres. et on
this news was spread through the city of London and one
dist communement que li rois Artus [fu] ocis et tot cil
said commonly that the king Arthur was killed and all those
ki auoec lui estoient alet, Lors ueissies uile dolente
who with him were gone Then might-you-have-seen town sorrowful
et courouchie et mener grant dolor as poures et as
and angered and lead great sorrow to-the poor and to-the
rices, car ce estoit li princes del monde ki plus tenrement
rich for this was the prince of-the world who most tenderly
auoit este ames de ses homes, li rois Artus — et a
had been loved by his men the king Arthur and with
droit, car il lor auoit tous iors este dous et debonnaires
right for he to-them had all days been sweet and gracious
en totes coses. Que uos iroie ie contant? li dius de ces
in all things What you would-go I telling the grief of these

nouieles dura .viij. iors tos plains Si meruilleusement kil
news lasted eight days all full So marvelously that-it
not onques celui en la uile ki reposast, se petit non.
not-had ever that-one in the town who rested except little not
Et quant li dieus, ki tos iors ne puet pas durer, fu
And when the grief which all days not can at-all last was
trespasses et auques acoisies, Mordres uint as barons del
passed and somewhat calmed Mordred came to-the barons of-the
paijs, a ciaus ki estoient plus poissant, Si lor demanda
country to those who were most powerful So to-them asked-he
kil feroient de cou que li rois lor auoit mandet. et
what-they would-do about this which the king to-them had sent and
il disent kil sen conseilleroient. Si assamblerent
they said that-they themselves-thereof would-take-counsel So assembled-they
maintenant trestot en la cort. Et quant il orent parle
at-once all in the court And when they had spoken
ensamble, si trouerent en lor conseil kil feroient roi de
together so found-they in their counsel that-they would-make king of
Mordret et li donroient a feme la roine Genieure et le
Mordred and to-him would-give as wife the queen Guinevere and him
saisiroient de tote la terre et deuenroient si home lige. sil
would-invest with all the land and would-become his men liege so-they
le deuoient faire por .ij. coses: Premierement, por cou ke li
it ought to-do for two things First for this that the
rois Artus les en auoît proies, et apres, por cou kil
king Arthur them thereof had prayed and after for this that-they
ne veoient entraus — ce lor estoit auis — nul home
not saw among-them this to-them was opinion any man
ki si bien fust dignes de si grant honor auoir com il estoit.
who so well were worthy of so great honor to-have as he was

Mordred Seeks the Queen

XIII

The barons agree to do what the letter asks, and Mordred has the queen brought to the hall. Their spokesman tells her that the kingdom cannot stay without a lord, and that whoever rules it must have her to wife. She answers that she will take no husband, and would rather flee the land than take a lesser man than the one she had. When they press her, she asks whom they mean, and they name Mordred.

Quant il orent pris lor conseil en tel maniere, il uinrent
When they had taken their counsel in such manner they came
a [Mordret] Se li disent kil estoient si consilliet
to Mordred So to-him said-they that-they were so counseled
kil feroient outreement ce dont li rois les en auoit
that-they would-do utterly this whereof the king them thereof had
requis. Et Mordres les en merchie molt durement et si
asked And Mordred them thereof thanks very greatly and so
lor dist: 'puis kil uos plaist ensi que ceste cose auiegne
to-them said since that-it you pleases thus that this thing may-happen
en tel maniere comme li rois uos en requist, Il ni a,
in such manner as the king you thereof asked It not-there is
se uos uoles, fors ke de mander la roine, Si le me donra
if you wish except that of to-summon the queen So her to-me will-give
a feme cis archeuesques ki chi est'. Et il dient kil le
as wife this archbishop who here is And they say that-they her
feront uenir auant. Si le vont querre en vne cambre, v
will-have come forward So her go-they to-seek in a chamber where
ele estoit tant dolante et tant courouchie que nule plus,
she was so sorrowful and so angered that none more
Se li dient: 'dame, li haut baron de uostre regne uos
So to-her say-they lady the high barons of your kingdom you

atendent en mi cel palais. Si uos prient ke uos uenes
await in amid that palace So you pray-they that you may-come
iusques a aus, Si ores que vos volront dire; et se vos
as-far to them So will-you-hear what you they-will-wish say and if you
ne uoles venir a aus, il uenront a uos, sil vos plaist'. Et
not wish to-come to them they will-come to you if-it you pleases And
la roine a respondu que ele ira, puis kil le mandent.
the queen has answered that she will-go since that-they her summon
Lors se lieue et uient en la sale. et quant li baron
Then herself raises-she and comes into the hall and when the barons
le uoient uenir, il saillent encontre li et le rechoiuent
her see come they leap to-meet her and her receive
entreus molt bielement. Et li uns diaus ki mieus estoit
among-them very fairly And the one of-them who best was
enparles dist a la roine: 'Dame', fait il, 'nos vos auons
spoken said to the queen Lady says he we you have
mandee por une cose, Dex doinst kil en uiegne biens
summoned for a thing God may-grant that-it thereof may-come good
a uos et a nous; car, si uoirement mait Dex, nos le
to you and to us for so truly me-help God we it
uolriemes molt volentiers, et si uos dirai que ce est.
would-wish very willingly and so you shall-I-tell what this is
'Uoirs est, ce sauons nos bien, que li rois Artus, uostre sires
True is-it this know we well that the king Arthur your lord
et li nostres, ki tant estoit preudom Si nos tint molt en pais,
and the ours who so-much was worthy-man So us held very in peace
or est trespasses de cest siecle: ce poise nos molt durement.
now is passed from this world this grieves us very hard
Et por ce que cis regnes, dont la signorie est espandue par
And for this that this kingdom whose the lordship is spread through
totes terres est remes sans gouerneour et sans maistre, nos
all lands is remained without governor and without master to-us

seroit il bien mestiers que nos en i mesissiens un tel
would-be it well need that we thereof there should-put a such
home ki fust dignes de tenir si rice enpire comme ceste est
man who were worthy to hold so rich empire as this is
et a qui vos fussies liuree comme dame et amie; car, sans
and to whom you were delivered as lady and beloved for without
faille, cil a qui Dex donra lonor de ceste regne, ne puet estre
fail he to whom God will-give the-honor of this kingdom not can be
kil ne vos ait a feme. De ceste cose nos sommes nos
that-he not you may-have as wife Of this thing we are we
porueu en tel maniere, et por le besoing de cest regne et
provided in such manner and for the need of this kingdom and
por cou meesmes que nos en ariens mestier, que nos uos
for this itself that we thereof would-have need that we you
auons quis preudomme et bon cheualier et ki bien sara le
have sought worthy-man and good knight and who well will-know the
regne gouuerner, et auons esgarde entre nos quil vos ara
kingdom to-govern and have considered among us that-he you will-have
a feme; et nos deuenrons tot si home et li ferons homage
as wife and we shall-become all his men and to-him shall-do homage
et le saisirons de totes les coses de cest regne outreement'.
and him shall-invest with all the things of this kingdom utterly

Quant la roine entent ceste parole, Si est tant esbahie
When the queen hears this word So is-she so amazed
kele ne set preu respondre. et toutes uoies dist ele
that-she not knows well to-answer and all the-same says she
plainement a celui ki de cela parloit kele na talent de
plainly to him who of that spoke that-she not-has desire of
marit prendre. 'Dame', fait il, 'ensi ne puet il estre; vos ne
husband to-take Lady says he thus not can it be you not
vos en poes deffendre; car en nule maniere ne lairiens
yourself thereof can defend for in any manner not would-leave

nos cest regne sans signor; car il ne poroit estre kil ne
we this kingdom without lord for it not could be that-it not
nos en mescheist, se guerre sordoit daucune part. Et por
us thereof might-befall-ill if war arose from-any side And for
cou couient il ausi comme a force ke uos de ceste cose
this behooves it just as by force that you of this thing
facies a nostre volente'. Et ele dist kele lairoit ancois le
may-do at our will And she said that-she would-leave rather the
regne et sen fuiroit fors del paijs, comme caitiue et
kingdom and herself-thence would-flee out of-the country as wretched and
esgaree, kele prenge iamais signor. 'et saues uos', fait ele,
lost than-she may-take ever lord and know you says she
'por coi ie le uos di? por ce ke ie ne poroie iamais auoir si
for why I it you say for this that I not could ever have so
preudomme comme ie ai eut. et por cou uos deffenc ie ke
worthy-man as I have had and for this you forbid I that
vos ne maparles iamais de ceste cose, car ie nen feroie
you not me-may-speak ever of this thing for I not-thereof would-do
noient, en nule maniere ki peust estre, et si ne uos saroie
anything in any manner which might be and so not you would-know
gret en nule maniere de tel parole ne de si faite cose'.
gratitude in any manner for such word nor for so made thing

Lors li ceurent sus tot li autre de parole et li dient:
Then her run upon all the others with word and to-her say
'Dame, vostre escondis ne uos vaut rien. il couient que
Lady your refusal not you avails anything it behooves that
uos faites ce que on uos dist; car il ne puet remanoir en
you may-do this which one you says for it not can remain in
nule maniere'. Et quant ele entent ceste parole, Si en est
any manner And when she hears this word So thereby is-she
plus esmaie et plus esbahie que deuant. Si demande a tos
more dismayed and more amazed than before So asks-she of all

ciaus ki ensi laraisonnent et tenoient corte: 'Ore, signor,
those who thus her-address and held short Now lords
puis ke uos mangoussies si durement que ie face uos
since that you me-press so hard that I may-do your
uolentes, or me dites ki cil est que uos me voles doner a
wills now me tell who he is whom you me wish to-give as
signor? car teus puet il estre que ie ne mi acorderoie
lord for such can it be that I not myself-thereto would-agree
en nule maniere'. Et il li dient: 'Dame, ce est Mordres.
in any manner And they to-her say Lady this is Mordred
nos ne sauons entre nos nul cheualier ki si bien soit
we not know among us any knight who so well may-be
dignes de tenir .i. empire v un roiaume com il est; car
worthy to hold an empire or a kingdom as he is for
il est preudom et bons cheualiers et hardis durement'.
he is worthy-man and good knight and bold hard

The Queen's Respite

XIV

Hiding her grief, the queen asks a night's respite, and Mordred grants eight days if she will do their will at the end. Alone, she sends for her cousin Labor, the man she trusts most after Lancelot's kin. She tells him she would rather be burned than marry Mordred, who is, she says, Arthur's son, and plans to stock the tower of London. Labor advises sending to Lancelot, or to Arthur if he lives.

Quant la roine entent ceste parole, Si est tant dolante
When the queen hears this word So is-she so sorrowful
kil li est bien auis que li cuers li doie partir, Mais
that-it to-her is well opinion that the heart to-her must break But
samblant nen ose faire, por ce ke cil ki deuant li
semblance not-thereof dares-she make for this that those who before her

estoient ne sen apercheussent. Si sen bee a
were not themselves-thereof might-perceive So herself-thence aims-she to
deliurer en autre maniere kil ne quident. Et quant ele
free in other manner than-they — think And when she
a grant piece pense a cou kil li ont dit, si lor
has great while thought on this which-they to-her have said so to-them
respont: 'Certes, signor, de Mordret ne di ie pas kil ne
answers-she Certainly lords of Mordred not say I at-all that-he not
soit asses preudom et bons cheualiers, Ne ie ne uos
may-be a-good-deal worthy-man and good knight Nor I not you
uee pas ceste cose a faire ne notroi encore; Mais tant, sil
forbid at-all this thing to do nor not-grant yet But so-much if-it
uos plaist, me donnes de respit que ie men soie consillie,
you pleases me give of respite that I me-thereof may-be counseled
et demain a eure de prime vos responderai, v de uos v
and tomorrow at hour of prime you shall-answer-I either of you or
dautre'. Et Mordres saut auant et dist: 'Dame, uos aures
of-other And Mordred leaps forward and said Lady you will-have
encore asses grignor respit que vos ne demandes. il uos
still a-good-deal greater respite than you — ask they you
donront respit dusques a .viij. iors, Mais que uos lor
will-give respite until to eight days Provided that you to-them
creantes que uos a celui ior feres outreement ce kil
promise that you on that day will-do utterly this which-they
uos requerront de ceste cose'. Et ele lotroie uolentiers, Si
you will-ask of this thing And she it-grants willingly So
comme cele ki ne bee fors tant quele se soit diaus
as she who not aims except so-much that-she herself may-be of-them
deliuree. Si fine atant li parlemens de ceste cose. Si
freed So ends thereupon the parley of this thing So
sen ua la roine ariere en ses cambres et sensierre en
herself-thence goes the queen back into her chambers and herself-shuts-in in

la compaignie dune puciele tot solement. Et quant ele est a
the company of-a maiden all only And when she is in
priue conseil, Si commence a faire .i. duel si grant comme
privy counsel So begins-she to make a grief so great as
sele ueist deuant li mort tot le monde, Si se claime
if-she saw before her dead all the world So herself calls-she
lasse, dolante, et debat son uiaire et detort ses mains.
wretched sorrowful and beats her face and wrings her hands
Et quant ele ot ceste dolor demenee molt grant piece,
And when she had this sorrow led very great while
Si dist a la damoisele ki iluec estoit: 'Ales moi querre
So says-she to the damsel who there was Go me seek
Labor et li dites kil uiegne a moi parler'. Et cele
Labor and to-him say that-he may-come to me to-speak And she
dist: 'uolentiers'. Cil Labor estoit cheualiers de meruilleuse
said willingly That Labor was knight of marvelous
proece et cousins germains la roine et estoit li hom
prowess and cousin german of-the queen and was the man
el monde v ele plus se fiast al grant besoigne,
in-the world in-whom she most herself might-trust at-the great need
se ce ne fust en Lanselot del Lac v en ses cousins.
if this not were in Lancelot of-the Lake or in his cousins

Quant cil Labor fu uenus deuant la roine, ele commanda
When that Labor was come before the queen she commanded
a la damoisele kele se parte de laiens et cele si fait.
to the damsel that-she herself may-depart from in-there and she so does
Et la roine meesme ferme luis sor aus deus. Et quant
And the queen herself shuts the-door upon them two And when
ele se uoit toute seule auoec celui en qui ele se fioit
she herself sees all alone with him in whom she herself trusted
tant, ele commencha a faire trop grant duel et dist tot en
so-much she began to make too great grief and said all in

plorant au cheualier: 'biau cousin, por Deu, consillies moi.
weeping to-the knight fair cousin for God counsel me
Conseille ceste caitiue roine et dolereuse, ki est la plus
Counsel this wretched queen and sorrowful who is the most
desconfortee gentius feme ki onques fust en cest siecle.'
comfortless noble woman who ever was in this world
Et quant cil le uit si durement plorer, Si commence trop
And when he her saw so hard weep So begins-he too
grant duel a faire et puis li dist: 'Dame, por coi vos
great grief to make and then to-her said Lady for why yourself
tormentes uos? si dites moi que vos aues, et, se ie uos puis
torment you so tell me what you have and if I you can
oster de cest duel par cose que iou en puisse faire, ie
remove from this grief by thing that I thereto may do I
vos en osterai, ce uos acreanc ie, comme loiaus cheualiers.'
you thence shall-remove this you promise I as loyal knight
Lors li dist la roine tot en plorant: 'Biaus, dous cousins,
Then to-him said the queen all in weeping Fair sweet cousin
ie ai tot le duel ke feme puist auoir, de cou ke cil de
I have all the grief that woman may have from this that those of
cest regne me voelent marier a cel traitor desloial, ki fu,
this kingdom me wish to-marry to that traitor disloyal who was
par uerite le uos di, fils le roi Artu, mon signor. Et, sil
for truth it you say-I son of-the king Arthur my lord And if-he
nel fust ore pas, Si est il si desloiaus traitres que ie en
not-it were now at-all So is he so disloyal traitor that I in
nule maniere ne le prendroie. ie uolroie mieus ke on me
any manner not him would-take I would-wish better that one me
fesist ardoir. Mais ie uos dirai que ie en ai en pense
might-have burn But I you shall-tell what I thereof have in thought
a faire; Si men consillies selonc ce que vos saues.
to do So me-thereof counsel according-to this that you know

‘Ie uoel faire garnir la tour de ceste uile de serians
I wish to-have furnish the tower of this town with sergeants
et darbalestriers et de uiandes, et uoel que uos meesmes
and with-crossbowmen and with victuals and wish that you yourself
queres les sierians et que uos les faites iurer sor sains,
may-seek the sergeants and that you them may-have swear upon relics
cascun par soi, quil ne descouerront a nului por coi
each by himself that-they not will-disclose to anyone for why
il si metront. Et se on me demande dedens le
they themselves-there will-put And if one me asks within the
tiermine por coi ie fac la tor Garnir, Ie respondrai que ce
term for why I have the tower Furnished I shall-answer that this
est contre la feste.’ ‘Dame’, fait Labor, ‘il nest riens ke ie
is toward the feast Lady says Labor it not-is anything that I
ne fesisse por vos. Ie vos querrai cheualiers et serians por
not would-do for you I you shall-seek knights and sergeants for
Garnir la tor molt bien et uos i feres endementiers
to-Furnish the tower very well and you there will-have meanwhile
viandes metre et ce que mestiers ert autresi. Et quant
victuals put and this which need will-be likewise And when
vos ares bien apareillie ceste cose, se uos moi crees, nos
you will-have well prepared this thing if you me believe we
enuoierons un mesage a Lanselot et li manderes kil
shall-send a messenger to Lancelot and to-him will-send-word that-he
uos seceure. Et ie uos di vraiement que, quant il sara
you may-succor And I you tell truly that when he will-know
uostre besoigne, il ne le lairat en nule maniere kil ne
your need he not it will-leave in any manner that-he not
viegne veoir Mordret a tot tel gent par qui effort il uos
may-come to-see Mordred with all such men by whose force he you
pora legierement deliurer de cest courouc v vos estes,
will-be-able lightly free from this trouble where you are

maugre tos ciaus de cest pais. Ne ia Mordres, ce sai ie
despite all those of this country Nor ever Mordred this know I
bien, nara tant de hardement kil atende Lanselot
well not-will-have so-much of boldness that-he may-await Lancelot
en bataille canpel; et sil auenoit cose que me sire li rois
in battle pitched and if-it happened thing that my lord the king
Artus fust uis — que ie ne croi pas kil fust mors — et
Arthur were alive which I not believe at-all that-he were dead and
li messages le trouast en Gaule par auenture, il noroit
the messenger him found in Gaul by adventure he not-would-hear
ia si tost ceste nouiele kil reuenroit en cest paijs; et
ever so soon this news that-he would-return into this country and
ensi pories estre deliuree de Morderet a tos iors mais.'
thus could-you be freed from Mordred for all days more

The Tower of London

XV

Labor gathers two hundred knights and sergeants sworn to secrecy, and the queen stocks the tower of London. On the appointed day she shuts herself in and raises the bridge, and tells Mordred from the battlements that his wish to take her by force will lead him to a villainous death. Mordred has the barons swear to help him even against Arthur, and takes their castles. His first assault on the tower leaves two hundred dead in the ditches.

Quant la roine ot ceste conseil, ele dist que ce li plaist
When the queen heard this counsel she said that this to-her pleases
molt, car en tel maniere quide ele bien estre deliuree de
much for in such manner thinks she well to-be freed from
ceste paine v cil del pais lont mise. Si depart atant
this pain where those of-the country her-have put So departs thereupon

li consaus. Si se porcacha Labors de cheualiers et de
the council So himself provided Labor with knights and with
serians la v il se fioit mieus diaus Et tant que,
sergeants there where he himself trusted best of-them And so-much that
ancois que li .viij. ior fussent acomplit, en ot il ensamble
before that the eight days were accomplished thereof had he together
iusques a .cc. que cheualiers ke serians, ki tot li
up to two-hundred as-much knights as sergeants who all to-him
orent iuret sor sains kil en la tor de Londres se
had sworn upon relics that-they into the tower of London themselves
metroient et deffendroient la roine encontre Mordret, tant
would-put and would-defend the queen against Mordred so-long
com il si poroient tenir. Iceste cose fu faite si
as they themselves-there could hold This thing was done so
celeement que onques nus nen sot noient, fors ke cil
secretly that ever any not-thereof knew anything except that those
ki sen deuoient entremetre; et dedens le tierme
who themselves-thereof were-to undertake and within the term
or fait la roine le tor garnir de totes les coses ki a
now has the queen the tower furnish with all the things which to
cors domme pooient ualoir que on pooit trouer el pais.
body of-man could avail which one could find in-the country
Quant ce uint au ior ke les fiances durent estre faites et
When this came to-the day that the pledges were-to be made and
li haut baron del roialme que Mordret i auoit mandes
the high barons of-the realm whom Mordred there had summoned
furent assamblet por ceste cose en la sale, La roine ot ia
were assembled for this thing in the hall The queen had already
cex fet entrer en la grant tor de Londres ki compaignie
those made enter into the great tower of London who company
li deuoient faire, et furent si bien garni darmes que
to-her were-to make and were so well furnished with-arms that

mius ne pooient estre. et quant il furent tot laiens, la
better not could-they be and when they were all in-there the
roine se mist auoec aus et fist tot maintenant le pont
queen herself put with them and had all at-once the bridge
leuer et vint en haut as creniaus de la tour et dist a
raise and came on high to-the battlements of the tower and said to
Mordret, ki estoit aual et ki bien sestoit ia apercheus
Mordred who was below and who well himself-was already perceived
que la roine li auoit fali de couenant, Se li dist
that the queen to-him had failed of covenant So to-him said
la roine: 'Mordret, maluasement aues moustre que onques
the queen Mordred badly have-you shown that ever
li rois Artus vos apertenist, ki me uolies auoir a feme
the king Arthur to-you belonged who me wished to-have as wife
maugre mien. Ciertes mar le pensastes, car ie uoel bien
despite my-will Certainly in-an-ill-hour it thought-you for I wish well
que uos sacies que ceste cose uos menra a mort vilainne.'
that you may-know that this thing you will-lead to death villainous
Atant deuale la roine les creniaus et uient en vne
Thereupon comes-down the queen from-the battlements and comes into a
cambre ki en la tour estoit. Si demande a ciaus ki auoec
chamber which in the tower was So asks-she of those who with
li estoient kele pora faire. 'Dame', font il, 'ne uos
her were what-she will-be-able do Lady say they not you
esmaies onques, Mais sacies tot vraiement ke nos deffendrons
be-dismayed ever But know all truly that we shall-defend
molt bien ceste tour encontre Mordret, sil est teus kil le
very well this tower against Mordred if-he is such that-he it
uoelle asalir, car nos ne doutons son pooir, se petit non,
may-wish to-assail for we not fear his power except little not
ne il nauera ia le pooir kil i mete le piet Ne nus
nor he not-will-have ever the power that-he there may-put the foot Nor any

de sa compaignie, tant comme nos aiens chaiens uiande.'
of his company so-long as we may-have in-here victuals
Si est la roine molt aaise de ceste parole. Et Mordres, ki
So is the queen very at-ease from this word And Mordred who
estoit fors, entre lui et sa compaignie, quant il aperchoit
was outside between him and his company when he perceives
quil est ensi decheus et kil a fali a la roine, Il
that-he is thus deceived and that-he has failed of the queen He
demande as barons kil pora faire de ceste cose, 'car
asks of-the barons what-he will-be-able do about this thing for
ceste tours', fait il, 'est si fors et si deffensable et garnie
this tower says he is so strong and so defensible and furnished
meruilleusement de uiandes Et cil ki dedens se sont
marvelously with victuals And those who within themselves are
mis sont si preudomme et hardi. quel conseil me loes vos?'
put are so worthy-man and bold what counsel me advise you
'Sire', font il, 'il ni a fors ke la tors soit asise de totes
Lord say they it not-there is except that the tower be besieged from all
pars et assalie souent et menut. Et sacies bien uraiement
sides and assailed often and repeatedly And know well truly
kil nest mie de si grant force kele puist longement durer
that-it not-is at-all of so great strength that-it may long last
encontre vos, a cou kil naueront de nule part secors,
against you for this that-they not-will-have from any side succor
se par deseure ne uolent.' 'Par foi', fet Mordres, 'ie ne sui
if by above not they-fly By faith says Mordred I not am
pas consillies daseoir li, se ie nestoie plus asseur de vos
at-all counseled to-besiege it if I not-were more sure of you
que ie ne sui encore.' Et il dient ke il li feront
than I — am yet And they say that they to-him will-make
toute la seurtee kil lor sara requerre. 'dont uos
all the surety which-he to-them will-know-how to-ask then you

requier ie', fait il, 'ke uos me faites seure et deuenes tot
ask I says he that you me may-make sure and may-become all
mi home lige et me iures sor sains que uos encontre
my men liege and to-me may-swear upon relics that you against
tos homes morteus maideres dusca la mort, nes encontre
all men mortal me-will-help until-to the death even against
le roi Artu, se auenture le ramenoit iamais ceste part.'
the king Arthur if adventure him brought-back ever this way
'Ceste requeste uos ferons nos volentiers', font il. Lors
This request you shall-do we willingly say they Then
sageneillent maintenant deuant lui et deuienent tot si
themselves-kneel-they at-once before him and become all his
home lige et li iurent sor sains kil li aideront
men liege and to-him swear upon relics that-they him will-help
iusques a la mort encontre tos homes, ensi com doit faire
until to the death against all men thus as one-ought to-do
son lige signor. Quant il ont fait cest sairement, si lor
to-his liege lord When they have made this oath so to-them
dist Mordres: 'biau signor, les uostres mercis! vos en aues
said Mordred fair lords the your thanks you thereof have
fait por moi tant que bon gre vos en sai, ki maues
done for me so-much that good gratitude to-you thereof know-I who me-have
esleu a uostre signor desor vos tos et maues fait homages
chosen as your lord above you all and me-have made homages
et feeutes. Certes, or sui si aseur de vos kil na si
and fealties Certainly now am-I so sure of you that-it not-has so
haut home en cest monde ne si poissant, sil commenchoit
high man in this world nor so powerful if-he began
demain guerre encontre moi, que ie nel ossaisse bien
tomorrow war against me that I not-him would-dare well
atendre en camp, por tant que ie eusse uostre pooir en
to-await in field for so-much that I might-have your power in

maide. Or ne me faut fors ke uos me saisissies de vos
my-aid Now not me lacks-it except that you me may-invest with your
castiaus et de uos fortereces.' Et cascuns li tent son
castles and with your fortresses And each to-him holds-out his
gage tot maintenant en liu de saisine. Et il les rechoit
gage all at-once in place of investiture And he them receives
de cascun. Et lors commande maintenant que la tors soit
from each And then commands-he at-once that the tower be
asisse de totes pars et fait armer partie de ses hommes
besieged from all sides and has arm part of his men
et fait drechier engiens et eschieles, por monter en haut
and has raise engines and ladders for to-climb on high
as creniaus. Mais cil ki en la tor estoient sallirent
to-the battlements But those who in the tower were leapt
as armes et ceurent as creniaus, por deffendre lor
to-the arms and ran to-the battlements for to-defend their
tor. Si ueissies maintenant lassaut commencier, grant
tower So might-you-have-seen at-once the-assault begin great
et meruilleus; car cil de fors uoloient monter a force
and marvelous for those from outside wished to-climb by force
as murs et cil dedens ne le uoloient pas soufrir, car
to-the walls and those within not it wished at-all to-suffer for
molt estoient bone gent, Si les abatoient et ocioient tot
very were-they good men So them struck-down-they and killed all
contreual les fosses. Et tant se deffendoient bien ke,
down-into the ditches And so-much themselves defended-they well that
ancois ke li assaus remansist, en peust on ueoir gesir mors
before that the assault ceased thereby might one see lie dead
par dedens les fosses plus de .cc. ke uns ke autres.
through within the ditches more than two-hundred as-much one as other

The Siege of the Tower

XVI

The tower is assailed often but well defended. The queen sends a squire she trusts to Gaul to learn whether Arthur is alive, and to beg the king's help, or if he is dead to beg Lancelot to come with all the force of Gaunes and Benwick. The squire slips out by night through Mordred's men, crosses the sea, and learns with joy that Arthur is alive and besieging Gaunes.

Quant cil de fors uirent cex dedens ki les damagoient
When those from outside saw those within who them harmed
si durement, si se traient ariere et commandent ke
so hard so themselves draw back and command that
li assaus demorast atant. Et il si fist tot maintenant kil
the assault should-stay thereupon And it so did all at-once that-it
fu commandet, car asses estoient esmaiet cil ki assalit
was commanded for a-good-deal were dismayed those who assailed
auoient, por ce ke cil de haut se deffendoient si
had for this that those from above themselves defended so
bien. Ensi fu la roine enclose en la mer... dedens Londres
well Thus was the queen shut-in in the sea within London
et assalie molt souent. Mais de tant li auint il bien
and assailed very often But of so-much to-her befell it well
que ele auoit tel gent auoec li ki bien le deffendoient
that she had such men with her who well her defended
en tos poins. vn ior auint que ele prist .i. mesage sien
in all points one day happened-it that she took a messenger her-own
v ele se fioit molt se li dist: 'Tu ten iras
in-whom she herself trusted much so to-him said Thou thee-thence wilt-go
en Gaule, por sauoir la uerite de mon signor le roi Artu,
into Gaul for to-know the truth of my lord the king Arthur

v de sa mort v de sa uie. Se il est uis, tu li diras
either of his death or of his life If he is alive thou to-him wilt-tell
mon estre et li proieras por Diu kil ne laist en nule
my state and him wilt-pray for God that-he not may-leave in any
maniere kil ne me uigne secourre au plus tost kil
manner that-he — me may-come to-succor at-the most soon that-he
pora et kil en auera le pooir, car autrement seroie
will-be-able and that-he thereof will-have the power for otherwise would-be
ie honnie; car ie sai bien ke ceste tors ne se pora
I shamed for I know well that this tower not itself will-be-able
mie molt longement tenir encontre Mordret ne encontre
at-all very long hold against Mordred nor against
ciaus ki li sont en aie. et sil est ensi auenut que me
those who to-him are in aid and if-it is thus happened that my
sire li rois soit mors, Si tost com tu en saras uraies
lord the king may-be dead So soon as thou thereof wilt-know true
nouieles, Tu ten iras droit a Gaunes et troueras iluec
news Thou thee-thence wilt-go straight to Gaunes and wilt-find there
Lanselot, v a Benuic. Et quant tu laras troue, Se
Lancelot or at Benwick And when thou him-wilt-have found So
li di que ie li manc salus et kil ne laist en
to-him say that I to-him send greetings and that-he not may-leave in
nule maniere kil ne me uigne secourre a tot le pooir
any manner that-he not me may-come to-succor with all the power
kil pora traire de Gaunes et de Benuic. Et bien
which-he will-be-able draw from Gaunes and from Benwick And well
li pues dire ke, sil de secors me faut, il ne poet
to-him canst-thou say that if-he of succor me fails it not can
estre que ie ne soie honie et deshoneree, car longement ne
be that I not may-be shamed and dishonored for long not
poroie ie mie durer encontre leffort Mordret, a cou kil
could I at-all last against the-force of-Mordred for this that-he

a en son conseil et en saide tot leffort de ceste terre.'
has in his counsel and in his-aid all the-force of this land
'Dame', fait li ualles, 'tot cou ferai ie bien, Se Dex donne
Lady says the squire all this shall-do I well If God grant
que ie en la terre de Gaunes puisse uenir, sains et haities;
that I into the land of Gaunes may come sound and healthy
Mais ie mesmaie molt que ie ne puisse issir de ceste tour
But I myself-dismay much that I not may go-out from this tower
a ma uolente, car ele est si auironnee de gent de totes
at my will for it is so surrounded with men from all
pars que ie ne sai metre conseil en moi.' 'Il couient', fait
sides that I not know put counsel in me It behooves says
ele, 'que uos faites tant que uos en soies fors et que
she that you may-do so-much that you thence may-be out and that
cis mesages soit fais ensi comme ie le vos ai deuise, car
this message be done thus as I it you have devised for
autrement ne seroie ie ia deliuree de cest traitor, se Dex
otherwise not would-be I ever freed from this traitor if God
ni met conseil.' Et li ualles dist kil en fera tot
not-there puts counsel And the squire said that-he thereto will-do all
son pooir et kil mouuera le matin au point dou ior.
his power and that-he will-set-out the morning at-the point of-the day
Si tost com il fu anuitie, prist li ualles congiet de la
So soon as it was night-fallen took the squire leave of the
roine et uint a la porte et fist tant kil sen issi,
queen and came to the gate and did so-much that-he himself-thence went-out
et sen ala tres par mi les homes Mordret. Se li
and himself-thence went right through amid the men of-Mordred So to-him
auint si bien kil ni fu arrestes ne conneus, ne de
happened-it so well that-he not-there was stopped nor known neither by
cestui ne de cest autre, car cascuns ki le ueoit quidoit bien
this-one nor by this other for each who him saw thought well

kil fust des lor. Et tot maintenant kil se fu eslongies,
that-he were of-the theirs And all at-once that-he himself was distanced
il se mist en sa uoie et fist tant kil ot ronchi bon et
he himself put on his way and did so-much that-he had nag good and
fort et tost alant. Si aquelli au matin son chemin molt
strong and fast going So took-up-he in-the morning his road very
grant aleure et erra tant par ses iornees kil uint a la
great pace and journeyed so-much by his days'-journeys that-he came to the
mer si loua vne nef maintenant et passa outre, car molt ot
sea so hired a ship at-once and crossed over for much had-he
bon uent et souef. Et quant il fu ariues de lautre part, il
good wind and gentle And when he was arrived on the-other side he
demanda nouieles del roi kil queroit et on li dist kil
asked news of-the king whom-he sought and one to-him said that-he
nestoit pas mors, ains auoit assegie la cite de Gaunes, entre lui
not-was at-all dead rather had besieged the city of Gaunes between him
et sa gent. Et quant li ualles loi, si en fu a merueilles
and his men And when the squire it-heard so thereof was-he at marvels
lies et ioians Si cheuaucha cele part. Mais atant laist ore li
glad and joyful So rode-he that way But thereupon leaves now the
contes a parler de lui ichi endroit et retorne au roi Artu.
tale to speak of him here in-place and returns to-the king Arthur

Gawain's Challenge

XVII

After two months before Gaunes Arthur tells Gawain the siege can bring them no honor. That evening Gawain sends a squire to challenge Lancelot to single combat for the murder of his brothers: if Lancelot wins, the host goes home; if Gawain wins, the two kings hold their lands of Arthur. The squire weeps that Gawain is no longer young, but Gawain insists the right is his, and that Our Lord helps the right.

Or dist li contes que, quant li rois Artus ot sis deuant
Now says the tale that when the king Arthur had sat before
la cite de Gaunes entor .ij. mois et conut que el siege
the city of Gaunes about two months and knew that in-the siege
naueroit il ia honor, Car si meruilleusement et tot adies
not-would-have he ever honor For so marvelously and all always
se deffendoient cil dedens que cil de fors [perdoient]
themselves defended those within that those from outside lost
ausi comme le tot, Il dist .i. ior priueement a mon signor
just as the all He said one day privately to my lord
Gauain: 'biaus nies, vos maues tel cose fait enprendre
Gawain fair nephew you me-have such thing made undertake
dont nos narons ia honour, Ce est la guerre que nos
whereof we not-shall-have ever honor This is the war which we
auons commenchie encontre le parente au roi Ban; car il
have begun against the kindred of-the king Ban for they
sont tout si preudomme et si bon cheualier as armes que
are all so worthy-man and so good knights at arms that
en tot le monde na autreteus. or gardons ke nos
in all the world not-has-it such-others now let-us-consider what we
porons faire, car ie uos di bien que nos i porons plus
shall-be-able do for I you tell well that we there shall-be-able more

tost perdre ke Gaaignier, a cou kil sont en lor terres
soon lose than Gain for this that-they are in their lands
et entre lor amis et ont auoec aus cheualerie a grant
and among their friends and have with them chivalry in great
plente. Et sachies bien, biaus nies', fait li rois, 'que, sil
plenty And know well fair nephew says the king that if-they
nos haissent ausi morteument comme nos haons aus, Nos
us hated as mortally as we hate them We
eussons piecha le tot pierdu, car il sont de grant pooir et
would-have long-ago the all lost for they are of great power and
en mi lor pais. Or gardes ke nos ferons de ceste cose'.
in amid their country Now consider what we shall-do about this thing
'Sire', fait mesire Gauains, 'ie men consillerai a moi
Lord says my-lord Gawain I me-thereof shall-take-counsel with me
meesmes et uos en sarai respondre anuit v le matin'.
myself and you thereof shall-know-how to-answer tonight or the morning
Celui soir fu asses mesire Gauains plus pensis kil
That evening was a-good-deal my-lord Gawain more pensive than-he
ne siut. Et quant il ot tant pense com lui plot, il apela
— was-wont And when he had so-much thought as him pleased he called
.i. sien vallet Se li dist: 'vatent', fait il, 'laiens en la cite
a his-own squire So to-him said go-thee says he in-there into the city
de Gaunes et di a Lanselos del Lac ke, sil a tant de
of Gaunes and say to Lancelot of-the Lake that if-he has so-much of
hardement kil encontre moi se deffende ke il mes freres
boldness that-he against me himself may-defend that he my brothers
nocesist en traison, ie sui pres del prouer encontre son cors
not-killed in treason I am ready to-the proving against his body
kil maluaisement et en desloiaute les ocist. Et sil me puet
that-he wickedly and in disloyalty them killed And if-he me can
conquerre en camp de cest apiel que ie li fac, Mes oncles,
vanquish in field from this appeal which I to-him make My uncle

li rois Artus, sen ira a tot son ost el roiaume de
the king Arthur himself-thence will-go with all his host into-the kingdom of
Logres Ne iamais rien ne demandera a cex de Gaunes de cose
Logres Nor ever anything not will-ask of those of Gaunes of thing
ki ait este entre nos. Et se ie le puis ocire en camp, ie
which may-have been between us And if I him can kill in field I
ne demanderoie plus. la guerre remanra maintenant, se li doi
not would-ask more the war will-remain at-once if the two
roi voelent lor terres tenir de mon oncle. Et sil ne uieulent
kings wish their lands to-hold from my uncle And if-they not wish
ce faire, nos ne partirons dechi iamais, deuant ce kil
this to-do we not shall-part from-here ever before this that-they
en seront honni et mort et tot cil de lor compaignie'.
thereof will-be shamed and dead and all those of their company

Quant li ualles entent ceste parole, si commence a plorer
When the squire hears this word so begins-he to weep
trop durement et dist a mon signor Gauain: 'Ha! sire, ke
too hard and said to my lord Gawain Ah lord what
est ce ke uos dites? que voles uos faire? aues vos si grant
is this that you say what wish you to-do have you so great
talent de uos honir et de vos mener a mort? trop est me
desire of you to-shame and of you to-lead to death too-much is my
sire Lanselos bons cheualiers et adures et de ione ae en
lord Lancelot good knight and hardened and of young age in
son meillor point; et vos aues molt tos iors et grant tans
his best point and you have much all days and great time
a fait darmes, si nestes pas iones; et se vos esties ocis
has done of-arms so not-are-you at-all young and if you were killed
en tel maniere, nos en seriens abaissiet trop durement, a
in such manner we thereby would-be brought-low too hard for
cou que uos estes tenus au millor cheualier de toute ceste
this that you are held for-the best knight of all this

ost Et estes li plus haus hom et li plus gentius de tos.
host And are the most high man and the most noble of all
Et cestui mesage ne ferai ie ia, se Deu plest, por cou ke
And this message not shall-do I ever if God please for this that
ie i uoi vostre mort si apertement; car trop seroie
I therein see your death so openly for too-much would-I-be
desloiaus et maluais, se par mon porcac et par ma parole
disloyal and wicked if by my pursuit and by my word
estoit si prodom comme uos estes menes a mort'. 'Tot ce
were so worthy-man as you are led to death All this
ke tu dis', fait me sire Gauains, 'ne uaut riens. il couient
which thou sayest says my lord Gawain not avails anything it behooves
que tu faces cest mesage, car autrement ne seroit iamais
that thou may-do this message for otherwise not would-be ever
ceste guerre finee, et il est bien drois kele soit finee par
this war ended and it is well right that-it may-be ended by
moi et par celui ki en est encoupes; car il meesmes,
me and by him who thereof is guilty for he himself
ses cors, en fu la premiere ocoisons et li premiers
his body thereof was the first occasion and the first
commencemens, et ie apres, quant on lauoit del tot laissiet,
beginning and I after when one it-had of-the all left
le fis recommenchier a mon signor mon oncle. Por cou
it made begin-again to my lord my uncle For this
si est bien drois que ie en aie la premiere ioie v le
so is-it well right that I thereof may-have the first joy or the
premier duel. Si te di bien ke, se ie ni ueisse mon
first grief So thee tell-I well that if I not-there saw my
droit tot apiertement, ie nassamblaisse oan a lui por la
right all openly I not-would-join-battle this-year with him for the
millor cite del monde, a cou ke ie sai bien et connois
best city of-the world for this that I know well and know

de uoir kil est par son cors li miudres cheualiers que
for truth that-he is by his body the best knight whom
ie onques acointasse. Mes che seuent bien tot ke tors
I ever became-acquainted-with But this know well all that wrong
et desloiautes feroit au besong le millor cheualier del
and disloyalty would-make at-the need the best knight of-the
monde le piour Et loiautes faroit dun maluais cheualier
world the worst And loyalty would-make of-a bad knight
[bon], quant li besoins seroit bon et seur. Et ce est la
good when the need would-be good and sure And this is the
cose por coi ie douteroie mains mon signor Lanselot, quant
thing for which I would-fear less my lord Lancelot when
nos serons ensamble, car ie sai bien ke li tors en est
we shall-be together for I know well that the wrong thereof is
siens et li drois en est miens; por coi tu ne dois auoir
his and the right thereof is mine for which thou not oughtest to-have
nule paour de moi, ne tu ne autres; car en tous lius aide
any fear for me nor thou nor others for in all places helps
Nostre Sires as siens, et au droit: iteus est ma fianche'.
Our Lord to-the his and to-the right such is my confidence

Lancelot Receives the Challenge

XVIII

The squire delivers the challenge at the palace windows. Lancelot, grieved, says he would never have sought to fight Gawain, but an accusation of treason must be answered, and he will meet him armed whenever he wishes. Bors calls it a foolish challenge, since the brothers fell in open battle, and Lionel says Gawain no longer cares whether he lives. Lancelot says he would not kill Gawain for half the world.

Tant dist me sire Gauains au uallet kil li creante
So-much said my lord Gawain to-the squire that-he to-him promises
a quel ke paine kil fera cest mesage et kil ira en
at what that pain that-he will-do this message and that-he will-go into
la cite de Gaunes et dira outreement a Lanselot quanquil
the city of Gaunes and will-say utterly to Lancelot whatever-he
li a encargie. 'Or garde', fait me sire Gauains, 'ke tu
to-him has charged Now see-to-it says my lord Gawain that thou
i ailles ains demain prime.' Et cil dist ke si fera il
there may-go before tomorrow prime And he said that so will-do he
tot outreement. Cele nuit sen soufrirent atant ke
all utterly That night themselves-thence forbore-they so-far that
plus nen parlerent. Il auoient entraus prises triues .viij.
more not-thereof spoke-they They had among-them taken truces eight
iors deuant Si keles deuoient falir au tierc iour apres. A
days before So that-they were-to fail on-the third day after On
lendemain, si tost com il fu aiorne, Se leua li ualles et
the-next-day so soon as it was dawned So rose the squire and
uint a la cite de Gaunes et entra dedens et atendi tant
came to the city of Gaunes and entered within and waited until
que Lanselos fu leues et kil ot oi messe et li doi
that Lancelot was risen and that-he had heard mass and the two

roi ausi. Et quant il furent uenu en mi le palais et
kings also And when they were come in amid the palace and
assis as fenestres de laiens, Li ualles vint deuant Lanselot
seated at-the windows of in-there The squire came before Lancelot
et li dist: 'Sire, a vos menuoie me sire Gauains, li nies
and to-him said Lord to you me-sends my lord Gawain the nephew
le roi Artu, a qui ie sui, et si vos mande par moi ke,
of-the king Arthur to whom I am and so you sends-word by me that
se nos gens et les uoes assamblent gaires souent, si com
if our men and the yours join-battle much often so as
il ont encommenchie, Il ne pora estre kil nen i
they have begun It not will-be-able be that-it not-thereof there
ait trop dolereus damage et dune part et dautre. Mais
may-have too sorrowful harm both on-one side and on-the-other But
faites le bien, ce uos mande me sires: se vos vos en
do it well this you sends my lord if you yourself thereof
oses entremetre, il est pres de prouer, voiant tos ciaus de
dare undertake he is ready to prove seeing all those of
cest pais et uoiant cex de sa contree, que uos desloiaument
this country and seeing those of his land that you disloyally
et en traison ocesistes ses freres. Et sil en cest apiel
and in treason killed his brothers And if-he in this appeal
uos puet faire recreant, vos nen poes escaper sans mort,
you can make recreant you not-thence can escape without death
car, sans faille, il ne prendroit de vostre chief trestot le
for without fail he not would-take for your head all the
monde en raenchon; Et se uos vos en poes deffendre et
world in ransom And if you yourself thereof can defend and
conquerre lui, Li rois, ses oncles, sen rira el
vanquish him The king his uncle himself-thence will-go-back into-the
roialme de Logres et vos tenra pais a tos les iors de sa
realm of Logres and you will-hold peace for all the days of his

uie, Si ke iamais de cose ki auenue soit ne parlera. Et
life So that ever of thing which happened may-be not will-he-speak And
se uos ce refuses que vos encontre lui noses ceste bataille
if you this refuse that you against him not-dare this battle
enprendre, tos li siecles vos deuera honnir; car lors pora
undertake all the world you will-owe to-shame for then will-be-able
on connoistre apertement et ueoir ke uos de ceste cose
one know openly and see that you of this thing
estes coupables dont il uos apiele. or gardes ke uos en
are guilty whereof he you accuses now consider what you thereof
feres, car ceste cose uos mande me sire Gauains par moi.'
will-do for this thing you sends my lord Gawain by me

Quant li mesages ot finee sa raison, Lanselos respont
When the messenger had finished his speech Lancelot answers
molt courouchies de ceste nouiele, car, sans faille, il ne se
very angered at this news for without fail he not himself
quesist ia combatre a mon signor Gauain: 'Ciertes,
would-have-sought ever to-fight with my lord Gawain Certainly
biaus amis, molt mest cis mesages fors et anieus, Car ie
fair friend very to-me-is this message hard and grievous For I
sui cil ki ia ior de ma uie, por nule cose del siecle, me
am he who ever day of my life for any thing of-the world myself
quesisse combatre en camp male encontre mon signor
would-have-sought to-fight in field mortal against my lord
Gauain, por cou kil est si preudom et por la bone
Gawain for this that-he is so worthy-man and for the good
compaignie kil ma tos iors tenue, puis ke ie fui primes
company which-he me-has all days kept since that I was first
cheualiers. Mais li apiaus, ki est si grans comme de
knight But the appeal which is so great as of
traison, me seroit si honteus, se ie ne men deffendoie,
treason to-me would-be so shameful if I not myself-thereof defended

que ie iamais naueroie honor — car cils est plus uieus
that I ever not-would-have honor for he-who is more vile
et honnis ke nus autres ki ne se deffent, quant il est
and shamed than any other who not himself defends when he is
de traison apieles — Et por cou si dites uostre segnor de
of treason accused And for this so tell your lord on
par moi ke, sil vieut doner seurtance de ceste couenance
behalf of-me that if-he wishes to-give surety of this covenant
tenir, il me trouera tot arme en camp a quele eure kil
to-keep he me will-find all armed in field at whatever hour that-he
onques volra. Or vos en poes raler. Si dites ke ie li
ever will-wish Now you thence can go-back So say that I to-him
manc ensi, Non mie por ce que ie ne lamaisse tant que ie
send thus Not at-all for this that I not him-loved so-much that I
ne quesisse ia a lui assambler a bataille campel.' et
not would-have-sought ever with him to-join in battle pitched and
cil dist que cest mesage fera il bien Si se part atant
he said that this message will-do he well So himself departs thereupon
de Lanselot. Et li rois Boors dist: 'Ciertes, de si fol apiel
from Lancelot And the king Bors said Certainly of so foolish appeal
ne sentremist onques mais nus si sages hom com me sire
not himself-undertook ever more any so wise man as my lord
Gauains est. Car ce seuent bien tot que onquest en traison
Gawain is For this know well all that ever in treason
nocesistes ses freres, mais en apiert et en tel liu v il
not-killed-you his brothers but in open and in such place where it
auoit plus des lor ke des nostres et en droite bataille.'
had more of-the theirs than of-the ours and in right battle
'Ie vos dirai', fait li rois Lions, 'por coi il le fait en
I you shall-tell says the king Lionel for why he it does in
tel maniere. Il a si grant duel de son frere ki sont ocis
such manner He has so great grief for his brother who are killed

kil ne puet uengier a sa uolente kil uolroit mieus
whom-he not can avenge at his will that-he would-wish better
morir ke uiure, Si sen uengeroit a mon signor plus
to-die than to-live So himself-thereof would-avenge on my lord more
volentiers que a nul autre, sil pooit; et por cou la il
willingly than on any other if-he could and for this him-has he
si folement apielet; car autant li est, ce me samble, sil
so foolishly appealed for as-much to-him is this me seems if-he
en muert comme sil en uit.' 'Ie quic bien', fait Lanselos,
thereof dies as if-he thereof lives I think well says Lancelot
'ke nos en uenrons prochainement a la bataille. Si ne
that we thereof shall-come soon to the battle So not
sai coment il men auenra, Mais tant sai ie bien,
know-I how it me-thereof will-befall But so-much know I well
ke, se ie estoie ia si au desus que ie li eusse le cief
that if I were ever so on-the top that I to-him had the head
desarme et li peusse la teste coper, Ie nel ociroie, ki
disarmed and to-him could the head cut I not-him would-kill who
me deuroit doner le moitie del siecle entre mes mains; car
me should give the half of-the world into my hands for
trop me samble preudom et si est li hom el monde ki
too-much me seems-be worthy-man and so is-be the man in-the world who
rien ne me soit que ie ai mieus amet et aim encore,
anything not to-me may-be whom I have best loved and love still
fors le roi solement.' 'Par foi, sire', fait li rois Boors,
except the king only By faith lord says the king Bors
'molt estes ore meruilleus, ki si lames de grant amour et
very are-you now marvelous who so him-love with great love and
il uos het si mortelment.' 'Ceste merueille', fait Lanselos,
he you hates so mortally This marvel says Lancelot
'poes ueoir. Il ne me sara ia tant hair ke ie nel
can-you see He not me will-know-how ever so-much hate that I not-him

aime. Si nel uos desise ia si apertement, mais ie
may-love So not-it you would-have-said ever so openly but I
sui orendroit el point v de uiure v de morir, puis
am now in-the point either of living or of dying since
ke a la bataille en sui uenus, Si ne sai mie le quel.'
that to the battle thereof am-I come So not know-I at-all the which

The King's Dismay

XIX

Gawain asks the king a gift and reveals it: a pledge that if Lancelot wins, Arthur will raise the siege and make peace for life. Arthur, dismayed, says Lancelot is the most proven knight in the world and in his prime, while Gawain's best days are behind him, but Gawain would rather die than not risk killing him. He sends to Lancelot to come out with three companions, all unarmed, to swear the terms.

Teus paroles dist Lanselos de mon signor Gauain, dont tot
Such words said Lancelot of my lord Gawain whereof all
cil ki loirent sen esmeruillierent trop durement, et
those who it-heard themselves-thereof marveled too hard and
len prisierent asses plus kil ne faisoient deuant.
him-thereof prized a-good-deal more than-they — did before
Et li ualles ki de par mon signor Gauain estoit laiens
And the squire who from part-of my lord Gawain was in-there
uenus, Si tost com il ot oie le response Lanselot, il
come So soon as he had heard the answer of-Lancelot he
se parti de la cite et erra tant kil uint a mon
himself departed from the city and journeyed so-much that-he came to my
signor Gauain Se li conta erraument tot cou kil auoit
lord Gawain So to-him told-he forthwith all this which-he had
troue et li dist outreement: 'Sire, a la bataille ne poes
found and to-him said utterly Lord of the battle not can

vos falir, Se uos troues respondeour a mon signor Lanselot
you fail If you find answerer in my lord Lancelot
ke li rois sen rira en son pais, sil uos puet
that the king himself-thence will-go-back into his country if-be you can
outrer en camp.' 'Par foi', fait mesire Gauains, 'se ie ne fac
overcome in field By faith says my-lord Gawain if I not make
que li rois meesmes le creante, Ie ne quier iamais porter
that the king himself it may-promise I not seek ever to-bear
armes. Mais or te tais et ne parole plus de ceste cose,
arms But now thee be-silent and not speak more of this thing
car ie en quic molt bien esploitier.' et lor uint au roi
for I thereof think very well to-succeed and then came-he to-the king
et sageneille deuant lui et li dist: 'Sire, ie uos proi et
and himself-kneels before him and to-him said Lord I you pray and
requier ke uos motroies .i. don.' et li rois li otroie molt
ask that you me-may-grant a gift and the king to-him grants-it very
doucement, Si comme cil ki plus lamoit ke home uiuant ne
sweetly So as he who more him-loved than man living nor
ne sauoit kil uoloit requerre; et le prent par le main et
not knew what-be wished to-ask and him takes by the hand and
le relieue. Et me sire Gauains len merchie molt et se
him raises And my lord Gawain him-thereof thanks much and so
li dist: 'Sire, saues uos ke uos maues donne? vos maues
to-him said Lord know you what you me-have given you me-have
otroie ke uos pleuires moi enuers mon signor Lanselot ke,
granted that you may-pledge me toward my lord Lancelot that
sil me puet outrer en camp, vos laires le siege et uos en
if-be me can overcome in field you will-leave the siege and you thence
ires el roialme de Logres, en tel maniere ke iamais tant
will-go into-the realm of Logres in such manner that ever so-long
comme vos uiures ne commenceres guerre encontre aus; et
as you will-live not will-you-begin war against them and

se ie le uainc, li doi roi deuenront vostre home et tenront
if I him vanquish the two kings will-become your men and will-hold
lor terres de vos, et atant auront pais a tos iors mais.'
their lands from you and thereupon will-have peace for all days more
Quant li rois entent ceste parole, Si deuint tos esbahis
When the king hears this word So became-he all amazed
et dist a mon signor Gauain: 'aues uos dont enpris bataille
and said to my lord Gawain have you then undertaken battle
encontre Lanselot? par qui conseil fesistes uos ceste cose?'
against Lancelot by whose counsel did you this thing
'Sire', fet mesire Gauains, 'il est ensi. la cose ne puet mais
Lord says my-lord Gawain it is thus the thing not can more
remanoir, deuant ce ke li uns [de nos] deus en gise
remain before this that the one of us two thereof may-lie
mors v recreans, car il est acreante dune part et dautre.
dead or recreant for it is promised on-one side and on-the-other
Si couient ke uos meemes en vostre personne acreantes
So behooves-it that you yourself in your person may-promise
a ciaus de laiens ke, se ie sui uencus v mors de ceste
to those of in-there that if I am vanquished or dead in this
bataille, vos aures bonne pais a aus tos les iors de uostre
battle you will-have good peace with them all the days of your
uie, en tel maniere que ia ne lor forferes riens, sil
life in such manner that ever not to-them will-you-misdo anything if-they
ne le meffont auant.' 'Ciertes, biaus nies,' fait li rois, 'puis
not it misdo first Certainly fair nephew says the king since
kil est ensi, ie serai tant dolans de ceste emprise ke
that-it is thus I shall-be so sorrowful from this enterprise which
uos aues faite que ie ne fui piecha si courouchies de cose
you have made that I not was long-ago so angered by thing
ki mauenist comme ie sui de ceste cose. Ne ie ne sai
which me-befell as I am by this thing Nor I not know

cheualier el siecle uers qui ie namaisse mieus ke uos
knight in-the world against whom I not-would-love better that you
eussies bataille enprise ke enuers cestui, car cestui conissons
had battle undertaken than against this-one for this-one know
nos al plus esproue cheualier et au millor ke on
we for-the most proved knight and for-the best whom one
sace orendroit en tot le monde et si est en son millor
may-know now in all the world and so is-he in his best
point Et uos aues grant piece de uostre tans use. Por coi
point And you have great while of your time used For which
ie volroie auoir mis le plus grant partie de mon tenement,
I would-wish to-have put the most great part of my holding
si neussies pas ceste enprise faite. Car ie mesmai tant
so-that not-had-you at-all this enterprise made For I myself-dismay so-much
de uos ke ie ne sai ke ie puisse faire ne dire. Et, por
for you that I not know what I may do nor say And for
Diu, sil puet remanoir, Si le laissies atant ester.' 'Sire,' fait
God if-it can remain So it let thereupon be Lord says
me sire Gauains,' la parole est tant alee ke ce ne puet mais
my lord Gawain the word is so-far gone that this not can more
remanoir, et, sil pooit encore bien remanoir, si nel lairoie
remain and if-it could still well remain so not-it would-leave
ie en nule maniere, car ie le he si morteument que ie
I in any manner for I him hate so mortally that I
uolroie mieus morir que ie ne me mesisse en auenture
would-wish better to-die than I — myself should-put in adventure
de lui ocire. car, se Dex estoit si debonaires enuers moi
of him to-kill for if God were so gracious toward me
kil soufrist que ie le peusse mener a mort et uenger
that-he would-suffer that I him might lead to death and avenge
mes freres, Iamais naueroie dolour ki auenist, et, sil
my brothers Ever not-would-I-have sorrow which might-happen and if-he

mocist, totes uoies sera fines li dieus ke ie maing nuit
me-kills all the-same will-be ended the grief which I lead night
et ior. Car bien sacies ke por estre a aise de cuer en
and day For well know that for to-be at ease of heart in
aucune maniere, v mors v uis, ai ie ceste bataille enprise.'
some manner either dead or alive have I this battle undertaken
'Biaus nies,' fait li rois, 'or soit Dex en vostre aide. Car,
Fair nephew says the king now be God in your aid For
certes, uos ne fesistes onques enprise dont vos fussies autant
certainly you not made ever enterprise whereof you were as-much
courouchies comme ie sui de ceste, et a droit, car trop
angered as I am by this and with right for too-much
est Lanselos bons cheualiers et adures, et uos laues esproue
is Lancelot good knight and hardened and you it-have proved
aucune fois, si comme ie lai oi dire a vos meesmes.'
some time so as I it-have heard say to you yourself
A ceste parole dist mesire Gauains al uallet ki le
At this word said my-lord Gawain to-the squire who the
message auoit fait: 'va moi; di a Lanselot kil uiegne, soi
message had done go me tell to Lancelot that-he may-come himself
quart, parler a moi et a mon segnor le roi, et uiegne
fourth to-speak with me and with my lord the king and may-come
tos desarmes, car ausi ira me sire sans armes et tot cil
all unarmed for also will-go my lord without arms and all those
ki auoec lui seront.' Li ualles se part de son signor
who with him will-be The squire himself departs from his lord
et uient a la cite Et trueue le roi Boort et son frere
and comes to the city And finds the king Bors and his brother
et Lanselot, ki ierent apoiet a une fenestre et parloient
and Lancelot who were leaning at a window and spoke
entreus de ce ke me sire [Gauains] auoit mande. Et
among-themselves of this that my lord Gawain had sent-word And

Lanselos disoit toutes uoies ke de la bataille li pesoit il
Lancelot said all the-same that of the battle to-him weighed it
molt et kil nauoit .ij. cheualiers en lost encontre qui il
much and that-it not-had two knights in the-host against whom he
ne se combatist plus uolentiers ke encontre mon signor
not himself would-fight more willingly than against my lord
Gauain, por la grant amour kil auoit a lui. Et li
Gawain for the great love which-he had for him And the
messages uint la droit v il les vit Si sageneille deuant
messenger came there straight where he them saw So himself-kneels before
Lanselot et li dist: 'Sire, a uos menuoie me sire Gauains
Lancelot and to-him said Lord to you me-sends my lord Gawain
et li rois Artus, ki uos mandent ke uos aillies la de
and the king Arthur who you send-word that you may-go there from
fors parler a aus, uos quart de compaignons tos desarmes,
outside to-speak with them you fourth of companions all unarmed
car il uenront tot en autel maniere por parler a vos.
for they will-come all in such manner for to-speak with you
car il uolt bien ke ceste cose soit acreantee dune part et
for he wishes well that this thing be promised on-one side and
dautre si fermement ke nus ne se puisse retraire des
on-the-other so firmly that any not himself may withdraw from-the
couenences.' Et Lanselos dist kil ira uolentiers et menra
covenants And Lancelot said that-he will-go willingly and will-lead
auoec lui le roi Boort et le roi Lyon et Hestor, son frere.
with him the king Bors and the king Lionel and Hector his brother
Et cil sen part uistement et reuient as loges et
And he himself-thence departs quickly and returns to-the lodges and
dist cou kil a troue au roi et a mon signor Gauain.
said this which-he has found to-the king and to my lord Gawain

The Terms of the Duel

xx

Arthur rides out unarmed with Carados, Yvain, and Gawain, and Lancelot dismounts to meet him, though his kin call the king their mortal enemy. Arthur, for Gawain's sake, does not return his greeting. Gawain sets the terms of the combat. Lancelot offers peace instead: to become Gawain's liege man with all his kindred but the two kings, or to go barefoot into exile for ten years, and he swears he never knowingly killed Gaheriet.

Lors monte tot maintenant li rois et semont a aler auoec
Then mounts all at-once the king and summons to go with
lui le roi Charado et mon signor Yuain, le fil au roi Vrien,
him the king Carados and my lord Yvain the son of-the king Urien
et li quars fu me sire Gauains. Si alerent fors des loges
and the fourth was my lord Gawain So went-they out of-the lodges
uers la porte de la cite tot desarme, monte sor lor destriers,
toward the gate of the city all unarmed mounted upon their chargers
et furent tot .iiij. uestu de cendal por le caut, ki molt
and were all four clad in sendal for the heat which very
grans estoit; et quant il uinrent pres de la cite, Il uirent
great was and when they came near to the city They saw
fors des portes issir le roi Boort et son frere et Lanselot
out of-the gates come the king Bors and his brother and Lancelot
et Hestor. Et tot maintenant kil sentraprochierent de
and Hector And all at-once that-they each-other-approached of
tant pres commil porent parler ensamble, Lanselos dist a
so near as-they could speak together Lancelot said to
Boort: 'Descendons encontre mon signor le roi, ki chi uient,
Bors Let-us-dismount to-meet my lord the king who here comes
car il est li plus preudom ki ore soit el monde.' Et
for he is the most worthy-man who now may-be in-the world And

il dient ke encontre le roi, ki est lor anemis morteus, ne
they say that to-meet the king who is their enemy mortal not
descendront il ia, se Deu plest. Et Lanselos dist, coment
will-dismount they ever if God please And Lancelot said however
kil soit ses anemis morteus, Il descendra por lamor de
that-he may-be his enemy mortal He will-dismount for the-love of
lui, car ce est li hom el monde ki grignor honor li
him for this is the man in-the world who greater honor to-him
a faite par maintes fois. Si descendi tot erralment. Et
has done by many times So dismounted-he all forthwith And
quant li autre le uirent a pie, Si descendirent por honor
when the others him saw on foot So dismounted-they for honor
de lui, et li rois dist a cex ki auoec li sunt: 'Par Deu,
of him and the king said to those who with him are By God
uoirement a il molt en ces .iiij. homes por coi li siecles
truly has he much in these four men for which the world
les doit loer; Car il i a cortoisie et debonnairete plus
them ought to-praise For it there has courtesy and graciousness more
ke en autre gent et de cheualerie sont il si bien garni
than in other people and with chivalry are they so well furnished
kil na en tot le monde lor pareil. Et pleust ore a
that-it not-has in all the world their equal And might-it-please now to
Diu kil eust entre nos et aus ausi grant amor comme ie
God that-it were between us and them as great love as I
i uic onques grignor, Ia Dex ne mait, se ie nen estoie
there saw ever greater Ever God not me-help if I not-thereof were
plus lies ke ki me donroit la meillor cite del monde.'
more glad than who me should-give the best city of-the world

Ensi dist li rois Artus, et lors descent de son ceual et
Thus said the king Arthur and then dismounts from his horse and
ausi font li autre compaignon. Et Lanselos, si tost com il
also do the other companions And Lancelot so soon as he

fu pres de lui uenus, le salue molt honteus et tos plains de
was near to him come him greets very ashamed and all full of
uergoingne, Mais li rois ne li rent mie son salu, por ce
shame But the king not to-him renders at-all his greeting for this
ke trop en fust me sire Gauains dolans. Et Lanselos
that too-much thereby would-be my lord Gawain sorrowful And Lancelot
li dist: 'Sire, uos maues mande ke ie uenisse parler a
to-him said Lord you me-have sent-word that I should-come to-speak with
vos et ie i sui uenus, por oir ke uos volres dire.' Et
you and I there am come for to-hear what you will-wish to-say And
me sire Gauains saut auant et respont por le roi: 'Me sire li
my lord Gawain leaps forward and answers for the king My lord the
rois est chi uenus, por faire uos ce ke uos aues requis. vos
king is here come for to-do you this which you have asked you
saues bien ke, entre moi et vos, auons emprise une bataille
know well that between me and you have-we undertaken a battle
de si grant cose comme de traison, et por lamor de mes
of so great thing as of treason and for the-love of my
freres, que vos ocesistes desloiaument — ce sauonmes nos
brothers whom you killed disloyally this know we
bien tot — Si en sui apieleres et vos deffenderes. Mais
well all So thereof am-I appellant and you defender But
por cou ke uos ne volries mie ke apres ceste bataille en
for this that you not would-wish at-all that after this battle thereby
fust autre guerre recommenchie, uoles uos, ce me samble, ke
were other war begun-again wish you this me seems that
me sire li rois, ki chi est, vos creant, comme rois, ke, se
my lord the king who here is you may-promise as king that if
uos uenquies ceste bataille et uos uenes au desus de moi,
you vanquish this battle and you come on-the top of me
il ne si home ne uos nuiroit iamais, tant com il i
he nor his men not you would-harm ever so-long as they there

uiuent, ains lairont del tot la guerre et sen iront
live rather will-leave of-the all the war and themselves-thence will-go
ariere en lor paijs, et, se ie uos conquier, li doi roi, uostre
back into their country and if I you vanquish the two kings your
cousin, tenront lor terres de monsignor le roi, mon oncle.'
cousins will-hold their lands from my-lord the king my uncle
'Mesire Gauain', fait Lanselos, 'sil uos plaisoit, ie lairoie
My-lord Gawain says Lancelot if-it you pleased I would-leave
ceste bataille, tot soit il ore ainsi que ie ne le poroie laissier
this battle though be it now thus that I not it could leave
ke la honte nen fust moie et que on nel me tenist
that the shame not-thereof were mine and that one not-it me might-hold
a couardise; Mais vos aues tant fait por moi, et uos et
for cowardice But you have so-much done for me both you and
me sire li rois, ke a paines me pora venir uolentes de
my lord the king that with pains me will-be-able come will to
porter armes contre vos, et meesment en bataille mortel. Si
bear arms against you and especially in battle mortal So
sacies tot uraiement que ie nel di mie par couardise ne
know all truly that I not-it say at-all through cowardice nor
por ce ke ie ne uos douc, se par debonnairete non; car, se
for this that I not you fear except by graciousness not for if
Deu plest, puis ke ie serai montes en mon destrier armes,
God please since that I shall-be mounted on my charger armed
asses porai deffendre mon cors encontre vos. Si nel di
a-good-deal shall-I-be-able defend my body against you So not-it say
ie mie por cou ke ie ne sace bien ke uos estes li miudres
I at-all for this that I not may-know well that you are the best
cheualiers del monde ne por vantance, Mais por ce le di,
knight of-the world nor for boasting But for this it say-I
ke ie uolroie bien, sil vos plaisoit, kil eust pais entre moi
that I would-wish well if-it you pleased that-it were peace between me

et vos, et por la pais aquerre et porcachier feroie ie en
and you and for the peace to-acquire and to-pursue would-do I in
liu damende quanke vos me sares commander, comme
place of-amends whatever you me will-know-how to-command as
de deuenir uostre hom liges, entre moi et Hestor, mon
of becoming your man liege between me and Hector my
frere; et uos ferons homage et tos li nostres parentes,
brother and you shall-we-do homage and all the our kindred
fors solement li doi roi ki chi sunt, ke ie ne souferroie en
except only the two kings who here are for I not would-suffer in
nule maniere kil se mesissent en autrui seruage. Tot
any manner that-they themselves might-put into another's service All
cou ferai ie por lamor de vos, Mesire Gauain. Et encore
this shall-do I for the-love of you My-lord Gawain And still
plus, se uos uoles, car ie uos iurrai sor sains orendroit
more if you wish for I you shall-swear upon relics now
ke ie me departirai de la cite de Gaunes demain ains
that I myself shall-depart from the city of Gaunes tomorrow before
eure de prime et men irai, nus pies et en langes, sans
hour of prime and me-thence shall-go bare feet and in woolens without
compaignie, et serai en escil en tel maniere dusques a. x.
company and shall-be in exile in such manner until to ten
ans; et se ie dedens celui termine muir, Ie vos pardoins ma
years and if I within that term die I you pardon my
mort et vos en ferai quitier a tot mon parente, Mais
death and you thereof shall-make quit with all my kindred But
se ie au cief des .x. ans reuieng et vos uiues a celui tans
if I at-the end of-the ten years return and you live at that time
et me sire li rois ki chi est, Ie uoel auoir la compaignie
and my lord the king who here is I wish to-have the company
de uos deus ausi bien comme ie oi onques. Et encore uos
of you two as well as I had ever And still you

ferai ie vn autre sairement, ke uos ne quidies mie kil
shall-make I an other oath that you not may-think at-all that-it
ait entre vos et moi Maindre felonie: Ie vos iurrai sor
may-be between you and me Lesser felony I you shall-swear upon
sains ke onques, a mon ensient, nocis Gaheriet, vostre
relics that ever to my knowledge not-killed-I Gaheriet your
frere, et ke plus me pesa de sa mort, quant ie le soi, que
brother and that more me grieved for his death when I it knew than
onques fesist domme ki riens ne me fust enlignie.
ever might-have-done of-man who anything not to-me were of-lineage
et tout cou vos creanterai ie, me sire Gauain, Non mie por
and all this you shall-promise I my lord Gawain Not at-all for
doutance ke ie aie de uos, se par raison non, Mais
fear which I may-have of you except by reason not But
por cou kil mest auis ke ce sera molt grans damages,
for this that-it to-me-is opinion that this will-be very great harm
se li uns de nos deus ocist lautre par tel mesceance.'
if the one of us two kills the-other by such mischance

Peace Refused

XXI

Arthur, weeping, begs Gawain to accept, but Gawain would rather take a lance through the breast. The gages are given and the combat set for the morrow, and Arthur promises to raise the siege if Lancelot wins. Hector tells Gawain he has refused the finest amends ever offered. Yvain says the right is Lancelot's, and the city says Gawain has been too proud. That night Lancelot keeps vigil in the minster and confesses his sins.

Quant li rois Artus ot la raison ke Lanselos offre, por
When the king Arthur had the speech which Lancelot offers for
pais auoir, Si deuient tos esbahis, car il ne quidoit mie en
peace to-have So becomes-he all amazed for he not thought at-all in
nule maniere ke Lanselos le fesist. Si dist a mon signor
any manner that Lancelot it would-do So said-he to my lord
Gauain, tot larmoiant des iex: 'biaus nies, faites por Diu
Gawain all weeping from-the eyes fair nephew do for God
ce ke Lanselos uos requiert, car, certes, il uos offre totes
this which Lancelot you asks for certainly he you offers all
les raisons ke cheualiers puet offrir a autre por occision
the amends which knight can offer to other for killing
de linage. Et, certes, onques mais Si preudom com il est ne
of lineage And certainly ever more So worthy-man as he is not
dist a autre cou kil uos dist'. 'Sire', fait me sire Gauains,
said to other this which-he to-you said Lord says my lord Gawain
'proiere ne offre ni a mestier. Ie uolroie mieus estre
prayer nor offer not-there has use I would-wish better to-be
ferus dun glaue parmi le pis et auoir trait le cuer dou
struck with-a lance through the breast and to-have drawn the heart from-the
uentre ke ie nen fesise tot cou ke ie en ai en pense,
belly than I thereof might-do all this which I thereof have in thought

v soit mamors v soit ma uie'. Lors tent son gage
whether be-it my-death or be-it my life Then holds-out-be his gage
et dist au roi: 'Sire, uees moi chi prest de prouer ke me
and said to-the king Lord see me here ready to prove that my
sire Lanselos ocist desloiaument et en traison mes freres,
lord Lancelot killed disloyally and in treason my brothers
et soit la bataille aterminee a tel ior comme vos onques
and may-be the battle appointed for such day as you ever
uolres'. Et Lanselos uait auant et dist, tot en plorant, au
will-wish And Lancelot goes forward and said all in weeping to-the
roi: 'sire, puis ke ie uoi ke la bataille ne puet remanoir. —
king lord since that I see that the battle not can remain
Se ie ne me deffenc de cou dont ie sui apieles, on ne
If I not myself defend from this whereof I am accused one not
me doit mais tenir por cheualier — vees chi mon gage por
me ought more to-hold for knight see here my gage for
moi deffendre; et ce poise moi ke faire le me couient; et
me to-defend and this grieves me that to-do it me behooves and
soit la bataille demain, sil plaist a monsignor Gauain'. Et
may-be the battle tomorrow if-it pleases to my-lord Gawain And
il lotroie maintenant. Et li rois rechoit les gages dambes
he it-grants at-once And the king receives the gages from-both
.ij. pars. Et lors dist Lanselos au roi: 'Sire, ie uos requier
two sides And then said Lancelot to-the king Lord I you ask
ke uos me creantes, comme rois, ke, se Dex me done la
that you me may-promise as king that if God me gives the
uictore de ceste bataille, ke uos osteres cest siege et uos
victory of this battle that you will-remove this siege and you
en rires el roialme de Logres a tos vos homes
thence will-go-back into-the realm of Logres with all your men
en tel maniere ke iamais tant comme vos uiueres ne nos
in such manner that ever so-long as you will-live not us

forferes riens, ne uos ne hom de la vostre part, se nos
will-you-harm anything neither you nor man of the your part if we
ne uos forfaisons auant'. Et li rois li creante loiaument.
not you harm first And the king to-him promises loyally
A ceste parole se departent li un des autres, Mais
At this word themselves part the ones from-the others But
au departir dist Hestor a mon signor Gauain: 'me sire
at-the parting said Hector to my lord Gawain my lord
Gauain, uos aues refusee le plus biel offre et la plus
Gawain you have refused the most fair offer and the most
biele amende conques mais si haus hom com me sires est
fair amends that-ever more so high man as my lord is
fesist iamais a cheualier, et, certes, a bon droit uos
might-make ever to knight and certainly with good right to-you
en deuroit il mescheir; et ie quic uoir ke si fera il'. Et
thereby ought it to-befall-ill and I think truly that so will-do it And
Lanselos dist a Hestor kil sen taise atant, et
Lancelot said to Hector that-he himself-thereof may-be-silent thereupon and
il si fait. Et il se departent uistement, li un des
he so does And they themselves part quickly the ones from-the
autres, si uienent a lor cheuaus si montent et sen
others so come-they to their horses so mount and themselves-thence
reuont, li un es pauillons et li autre en la cite; Mais
go-back the ones to-the pavilions and the others into the city But
onques ne ueistes tel dolour ne tel cri comme [me] sire
ever not saw-you such sorrow nor such cry as my lord
Yuains commencha a faire, quant il furent eslongie lor
Yvain began to make when they were distanced from-their
anemis, por la bataille ki estoit acreantee, por ce kele ne
enemies for the battle which was promised for this that-it not
puet mais remanoir. Et li rois Yons et li rois Charados
can more remain And the king Yon and the king Carados

en sunt trop durement courouchiet, quant il le seuent.
thereby are too hard angered when they it know
Si vienent a mon Signor Gauain et le blasment trop
So come-they to my Lord Gawain and him blame too
durement et li dient: 'Ha! sire, ke est ce ke uos aues
hard and to-him say Ah lord what is this that you have
fait? Haes vos si durement la uostre uie, ki aues enprise
done Hate you so hard the your life who have undertaken
bataille, cors a cors, encontre le millor cheualier del monde,
battle body to body against the best knight of-the world
uers qui nus hom ne pot onques durer ki ne fust honnis
against whom any man not could ever last who not were shamed
au derrain? Sire, por coi aues vos faite ceste diaublie? et
at-the last Lord for why have you done this devilry and
encore lapieles a tort, et il se deffendra de son droit,
yet him-accuse-you at wrong and he himself will-defend in his right
onques mais tel merueille ne fist hom'. 'Or ne vos esmaies',
ever more such marvel not did man Now not you be-dismayed
fait il, 'biau signor, car ie sai certainement ke li drois en
says he fair lords for I know certainly that the right thereof
est miens et li tors siens, por coi ie me combatrai aseur
is mine and the wrong his for which I myself shall-fight sure
encontre lui, sil estoit miudres cheualiers au double kil
against him if-he were better knight at-the double than-he
nest'. 'Certes, biau signor', fait li rois, 'ie volsisse mieus
is Certainly fair lords says the king I would-have-wished better
auoir perdu le moitie dun roiaume que la cose fust atant
to-have lost the half of-a kingdom than the thing were so-far
menee comme ele est. Mais, puis kele ne puet remanoir,
led as it is But since that-it not can remain
nos regarderons ke ce sera et atendrons la merchi Nostre
we shall-see what this will-be and shall-await the mercy of-Our

Signor. et encore a il fet grignor merueille, Car Lanselos
Lord and yet has he done greater marvel For Lancelot
li offri, por pais auoir, a deuenir ses hom et tos ses
to-him offered for peace to-have to become his man and all his
parentes ausi, fors les deus rois, et, se ceste cose ne li
kindred also except the two kings and if this thing not to-him
plaisoit, il sen iroit en escil iusques a .x. ans, et au
pleased he himself-thence would-go into exile until to ten years and at-the
reuenir il ne demanderoit el siecle fors nostre compaignie'.
returning he not would-ask in-the world except our company
'Certes, sire', font li roi, 'chi ot offre asses'. 'Voire',
Certainly lord say the kings here had-there offer a-good-deal Indeed
fait me sire Yuains, 'si grant ke ie ni uoi riens se
says my lord Yvain so great that I not-there see anything except
desraison non par deuers nous. or doinst Dex kil ne
unreason not by toward us now may-grant God that-it not
nos en meskieche; car, certes, ie noi onques mais si
us thereof may-befall-ill for certainly I not-had ever more so
grant paour de mescheance comme ie ai orendroit, por ce
great fear of mischance as I have now for this
ke ie uoi par dela le droit et par deuers nous le tort'.
that I see by beyond the right and by toward us the wrong
Molt fist me sire Yuains grant duel et ausi fisent tot
Much made my lord Yvain great grief and also did all
li autre en lost le roi Artu de ce ke me sire Gauains
the others in the-host of-the king Arthur for this that my lord Gawain
a ensi pris bataille encontre Lanselot. Si en pleurent tot
has thus taken battle against Lancelot So thereof weep all
li plus hardi Et tant en ont grant duel ke nus nel
the most bold And so-much thereof have-they great grief that any not-it
poroit dire le grant courouc kil en ont. Mais a ciaus
could say the great anger which-they thereof have But to those

de la cite ne poise mie granment. Car, quant il oirent
of the city not grieves-it at-all much For when they heard
deuiser la grant raison ke Lanselos offroit a mon signor
tell the great amends which Lancelot offered to my lord
Gauain, 'Dex doinst', font il, 'kil en ait le pis, car,
Gawain God may-grant say they that-he thereof may-have the worse for
certes, trop a este orgilleus et outrequidies a ceste
certainly too-much has-he been proud and presumptuous in this
besoigne'. Si ueilla cele nuit Lanselos au maistre moustier
business So kept-vigil that night Lancelot in-the master minster
de la cite, entre lui et grant compaignie de gent. Et se
of the city between him and great company of people And himself
fist la nuit confies a un archeuesque de tos les pechies dont
had that night confessed to an archbishop of all the sins whereof
il se sentoit coupaule enuers Nostre Signor; car molt se
he himself felt guilty toward Our Lord for much himself
doutoit kil ne li mescheist enuers mon signor Gauain.
feared-he that-it — to-him might-befall-ill against my lord Gawain
Et quant ce uint encontre laiornement, il sen ala
And when this came toward the-dawning he himself-thence went
couchier et se dormi iusques a eure de prime, et ausi
to-bed and himself slept until to hour of prime and also
fisent tot li autre ki auoec lui auoient la nuit veillie, car
did all the others who with him had the night watched for
trop par fuscent pesant tot le ior, sil neussent dormi.
too very would-they-have-been heavy all the day if-they not-had slept

The Duel Begins

XXII

Lancelot is armed by the barons and rides out with ten thousand behind him. Arthur leads Gawain into the field weeping, and Bors leads Lancelot. They charge, shatter their lances, and fall stunned. Lancelot rises first, and Gawain strikes him with Excalibur. They fight until their hauberks and shields are hacked to pieces and each bears seven wounds, and at last Gawain, then Lancelot, draws aside to rest.

Quant ce uint a eure de prime, Lanselos, ki molt auoit
When this came to hour of prime Lancelot who much had
au cuer grant ire de cou kil li couenoit faire, se
in-the heart great wrath from this that-it to-him behooved to-do himself
leua et uiesti. Et quant il uint el palais, il troua tos les
raised and dressed And when he came into-the palace he found all the
haus homes ki latendoient. Et il demande maintenant ses
high men who him-awaited And he asks at-once his
armes. Et on li aporte bonnes et rices, teles ke en tot le
arms And one to-him brings good and rich such that in all the
paijs nauoit millors, fors et legieres et tenans a double
country not-had-there better strong and light and holding with double
maille, Si larmerent au mieus quil porent. Si peussies
mail So him-armed-they at-the best that-they could So might-you-have
ueoir a lui armer grant plente de haus barons dont cascuns
seen at him arming great plenty of high barons whereof each
metoit son pooir et sentente a lui armer et en regard
put his power and his-attention to him arm and in regard
kil ne fausist riens en ses armeures. Et quant il lont
that-it not should-fail anything in his armor And when they him-have
apareilliet au mieus kil pueent, Il descent del palais
arrayed at-the best that-they can He descends from-the palace

et uient en la cort aual et monte sor .i. ceual tot couiert
and comes into the court below and mounts upon a horse all covered
de fier iusques en longle del piet. Et quant il est montes,
with iron until to the-nail of-the foot And when he is mounted
si montent tot li autre apres lui, por lui faire compaignie.
so mount all the others after him for him to-make company
Si ist fors de la cite en tel maniere ke en son issir
So goes-he out of the city in such manner that in his going-out
en peussies veoir teus .x. mile dont il nen i auoit
thereby might-you-have seen such ten thousand whereof it not-thereof there had
nul ki por lamor de lui ne mesist son cors en auenture
any who for the-love of him not would-put his body in adventure
tres ca la mort, se a faire le couenist. Si ont tant ale
right until the death if to do it behooved So have-they so-far gone
kil sont uenu de fors les murs en .i. pre v la
that-they are come from outside the walls into a meadow where the
bataille deuoit estre. Si nen i ot un tot seul ki fust
battle was-to be So not-thereof there had one all alone who were
armes fors solement Lanselos ne ains nen i ot nul ki
armed except only Lancelot nor ever not-thereof there had any who
entrast en camp, ains saresterent entor par deuers la cite.
entered into field rather themselves-stopped around by toward the city
Et quant cil del ost le sorent, si sen issirent
And when those of-the host it knew so themselves-thence went-out-they
fors des pauillons et amenerent a mon signor Gauain son
out of-the pavilions and brought to my lord Gawain his
destrier, car li haut homme del ost lauoient arme, grant
charger for the high men of-the host him-had armed great
piece auoit. Si reuinrent el camp en autre tel maniere
while it-had So came-back-they into-the field in other such manner
comme cil de la cite auoient fait et estoient autresi tot
as those of the city had done and were likewise all

desarme. Et li rois prent mon signor Gauain par la destre
unarmed And the king takes my lord Gawain by the right
main et le met el camp, et peussies ueoir le roi
hand and him puts into-the field and might-you-have seen the king
Artu plorer si durement comme sil ueist deuant lui mort
Arthur weep so hard as if-he saw before him dead
tot le monde. Et li rois Boors prent Lanselot par la main
all the world And the king Bors takes Lancelot by the hand
si le met el camp et li dist: 'Sire, entres ens de
so him puts into-the field and to-him said Lord enter in from
par Deu. ke Nostre Sire vos enuoit de ceste bataille et
part-of God that Our Lord to-you may-send from this battle both
honor et uictore!' Et Lanselos se saine al entrer el
honor and victory And Lancelot himself crosses at-the entering into-the
camp et se commande molt durement a Nostre Signor.
field and himself commends very hard to Our Lord

Li iors fu biaus et clers et li solaus fu ia leues si
The day was fair and clear and the sun was already risen so
commencha a luire sor les armes, et li cheualier, ki estoient
began-it to shine upon the arms and the knights who were
preu et seur, laissent courre les destriers, li uns encontre
valiant and sure let run the chargers the one against
lautre, et abaissent les glaues et sentrefierent en lor reuenir
the-other and lower the lances and each-other-strike in their returning
si durement ke les glaues uolent en pieces. Il sentrehurtent
so hard that the lances fly in pieces They each-other-dash
des cors et des ecus si meruilleusement kil
with-the bodies and with-the shields so marvelously that-they
sentrefroissent les pis et les uissages et sentrabatent a
each-other-crush the breasts and the faces and each-other-strike-down to
la terre si estonne kil ne seuent diaus prendre conroi,
the ground so stunned that-they not know of-them-selves to-take care

ains gisent grant piece en tel maniere comme sil fussent
rather lie great while in such manner as if-they were
mort. Et li cheual, quant il se sentirent descargie de
dead And the horses when they themselves felt unburdened of
lor signors, tornent en fuies, li uns uers la cite et li autres
their lords turn in flight the one toward the city and the other
d[r]oit uers les tentes ne ne trouerent ki les adesast, car
straight toward the tents nor not found-they who them might-touch for
asses auoient aillors a entendre, et li un et li autre. a
a-good-deal had-they elsewhere to attend both the ones and the others at
cel point ke li doi cheualier furent cheoit peussies ueoir
that point that the two knights were fallen might-you-have seen
maint preudomme esmaiet et mainte larme issir di[a]us et
many-a worthy-man dismayed and many-a tear go-out of-them and
maint cri dolereus gieter et maint souspir issir de cuer
many-a cry sorrowful cast and many-a sigh go-out from heart
parfont. Mais a cief de piece releua tos premiers Lanselos
deep But at end of while rose all first Lancelot
et mist la main a lespee, Mais molt ot este estonnes del
and put the hand to the-sword But much had-he been stunned by-the
cheoir kil ot fait, et mesire Gauains ne fu de gaires plus
fall which-he had made and my-lord Gawain not was by much more
lens, ains ceurt a son escut ki li estoit uoles del col
slow rather runs-he to his shield which to-him was flown from-the neck
et mist sa main a Escalibor, la bonne espee le roi Artu,
and put his hand to Excalibur the good sword of-the king Arthur
Si ceurt a Lanselot et li donne parmi lelme grandisme
So runs-he at Lancelot and to-him gives through the-helm very-great
colp, Si ke il li enpire et maumet molt durement.
blow So that he to-him impairs and damages very hard
Et cil ki maint grant cop auoit donet et recheut nel
And he who many-a great blow had given and received not-him

espargne de riens, ains li repaie amont el hiaume si
spares in anything rather to-him repays above on-the helmet so
grant cop ke me sire Gauains en est tous cargies del
great blow that my lord Gawain thereby is all burdened from-the
soustenir, et a poi kil ne reuersa tos. Et lors commencha
sustaining and by little that-he — overturned all And then began
entreus deus la mellee si grans et si meruilleuse ke
among-them two the melee so great and so marvelous that
de deus cheualiers ne fu onques mais si crueus ueue, Si
from two knights not was ever more so cruel seen So
nest nus ki ueist les cols doner et recheuoir qui a
not-is-there any who saw the blows give and receive who for
preudommes ne les deust molt durement tenir, par raison.
worthy-men not them ought very hard to-hold by reason
En tel maniere dura la mellee grant piece. et tant
In such manner lasted the melee great while and so-much
se sont entremenet as espees tranchans et as
themselves are dealt-with with-the swords sharp and with-the
grans cols kil sentredonnent souent et menut ke li
great blows which-they each-other-give often and repeatedly that the
hauberc sunt desromput et sor les bras et sor les hanches
hauberks are broken both upon the arms and upon the hips
et li escut tel atornet ke uos peussies en plusors lius vos
and the shields such arrayed that you could in several places your
puins bouter et sunt escantele par desus; et li elme kil
fists thrust and are hacked from above and the helms which-they
tenoient a bons ne lor ualoient, se petit non, car il
held for good not to-them availed except little not for they
sont si empiriet as cols des espees et as forces des
are so impaired by-the blows of-the swords and by-the strengths of-the
bras ki desus ont feru et mailliet kil lor en gist pres
arms which above have struck and hammered that-it to-them thereof lies near

de la moitie sor les espaules. Et, sil fussent de si grant
to the half upon the shoulders And if-they were of so great
force commil furent au commencement, Si se peussent
strength as-they were at-the beginning So themselves could-they
orendroit entreocire legierement, a cou ke lor armeures
now each-other-kill lightly for this that their armors
sont depechies et malmises en plusors lius. Mais il sont
are broken-up and damaged in several places But they are
a cestui point si lasse et si trauilliet ke par maintes fois
at this point so weary and so toiled that by many times
lor auient ke les espees lor tornent es mains, quant
to-them happens-it that the swords to-them turn in-the hands when
il se quident entreferir, et nen i a celui diaus
they themselves think to-strike-each-other and not there has that-one of-them
deus ki nait sor lui teus .vij. plaies, dont uns autres hom
two who not-has upon him such seven wounds whereof an other man
quidast morir de la menour; et nanporquant, parmi tot
would-think to-die from the least and nevertheless through all
le trauail del sanc kil ont perdu et del caut ki les
the toil of-the blood which-they have lost and of-the heat which them
greuoit, maintiennent il le premier assaut iusques a eure
grieved maintain they the first assault until to hour
de prime; Mais lors, sans faille, lor couint il reposer,
of prime But then without fail to-them behooved it to-rest
Si comme cil ki en auant ne porent mais soufrir. Si se
So as those who in front not could more suffer So himself
traist tos premiers me sire Gauains a une part et sapoie
drew all first my lord Gawain to one side and himself-leans
sor son escut, por reprendre .i. poi salaine, et autre tel fait
upon his shield for to-take-again a little his-breath and other such does

Lanselos, car molt en auoit grant mestier ausi, car molt
Lancelot for much thereof had-he great need also for much
estoit trauillies des grans cols kil auoit donnes et recheus.
was-he toiled by-the great blows which-he had given and received

Gawain's Strength at Midday

XXIII

Bors fears for Lancelot, who has never needed rest in a fight. At midday Gawain returns as fresh as if he had struck no blow, and Lancelot thinks him a devil. The tale explains: Gawain was born in Orkney and baptized at midday by a holy hermit, and a knight of his father's asked the hermit to pray that the child be given some grace. The hermit answers that grace comes from Christ, but promises to pray.

Quant li rois Boors uoit ke Lanselos se retrait del
When the king Bors sees that Lancelot himself withdraws from-the
premier assaut, il dist a Hestor: 'or a primes ai ie garde
first assault he said to Hector now at first have I fear
et doutance de mon signor Lanselot, car onques mais en liu
and dread for my lord Lancelot for ever more in place
v ie fuisse ne ui kil le couenist reposer por mener .i.
where I might-be not saw-I that-it him behooved to-rest for to-bring a
cheualier iusques a outrance Et il sest ore chi reposes
knight until to uttermost And he himself-has now here rested
en miliu de sa bataille. certes, ce est une cose ki mesmaie
in middle of his battle certainly this is a thing which me-dismays
durement.' 'De ce ne vos caille, sire,' fait Hestor; 'sachies
hard Of this not you let-it-trouble lord says Hector know
vraiement ke, se por lamor de mon signor Gauain ne fust,
truly that if for the-love of my lord Gawain not it-were
Il nen eust rien fait; car il nen auoit mie grant
He not-thereof would-have anything done for he not-thereof had at-all great

mestier, ce sai ie bien, a cou ke ie le connois au plus
need this know I well for this that I him know for-the most
poissant cheualier ki soit el monde.' 'Ce ne sai ie,' fait
powerful knight who may-be in-the world This not know I says
li rois Boors, 'ke Dex nos en uolra faire, Mais ie endroit
the king Bors what God us thereof will-wish to-do But I as-for
moi volroie auoir done quankes ie ai el monde par si ke
me would-wish to-have given whatever I have in-the world by so that
ie fusse orendroit en son liu encontre mon signor Gauain.'
I were now in his place against my lord Gawain

Ensi se furent retrait de la bataille li doi cheualier
Thus themselves were withdrawn from the battle the two knights
et fu li uns en sus de lautre. Mais quant il fu cose auenue
and was the one in away from the-other But when it was thing happened
ke me sire Gauains uit kil estoit eure de miedi, Il rapiela
that my lord Gawain saw that-it was hour of midday He called-back
Lanselot a la bataille et li saut ausi uistes et ausi fres
Lancelot to the battle and to-him leaps as quick and as fresh
comme sil neust hui cop feru. Si recommence la mellee, et
as if-he not-had today blow struck So begins-again the melee and
me sire Gauains assaut Lanselot si uighereusement kil en
my lord Gawain assails Lancelot so vigorously that-he thereby
est tous esbahis, dont il dist a soi meesmes: 'Par Deu, ie
is all amazed whereof he said to himself even By God I
ne querroie mie ke cis hom ne soit diaubles v enfantosmes,
not would-believe at-all that this man not may-be devil or phantom
car ie disoie ore et si le dic encore kil estoit, quant ie
for I said just-now and so it say-I still that-he was when I
laissai lassaut, outres darmes et recreans, et or le truis ausi
left the-assault overcome of-arms and recreant and now him find-I as
fres et ausi uiste comme sil neust hui cop feru en bataille;
fresh and as quick as if-he not-had today blow struck in battle

et ceste cose tieng ie a merueille de diauble.' Ice dist
and this thing hold I for marvel of devil This said
Lanselos de mon signor Gauain, ki estoit amendes de force
Lancelot of my lord Gawain who was improved in strength
et de hardement entour eure de miedi. Et il disoit uoir, ne
and in boldness around hour of midday And he said truth nor
il ne lauoit mie encommenchiet iluec, Mais en tos les lius
he not it-had at-all begun there But in all the places
v il sestoit combatus lauoit on ueu ke la force li
where he himself-was fought it-had one seen that the strength to-him
croissoit tos iors a eure de miedi. et por ce ke aucunes gens
grew all days at hour of midday and for this that some people
le tenroient a fable, se on ne disoit auant dont ce auenoit,
it would-hold for fable if one not told first whence this happened
le uos conterai ie si apertement comme lestore le deuise.
it you shall-tell I so openly as the-history it devises

Uoirs fu ke, quant me sire Gauains fu nes, il nasqui
True was-it that when my lord Gawain was born he was-born
el roialme d'Alquintaine en vne cite ke on apieloit
in-the realm of-Alquintaine in a city which one called
Godelone. Et quant il fu cose auenue kil fu nes, Li rois
Godelone And when it was thing happened that-he was born The king
Loth, ses peres, ki molt en fu lies de cou ke oir malle
Lot his father who much thereof was glad from this that heir male
li auoit Dex donne, le fist porter en une forest ki
to-him had God given him had carry into a forest which
pres diluec estoit a un hermite ki en la forest manoit, et
near from-there was to a hermit who in the forest dwelt and
estoit cil hermites si preudom et de si sainte uie ke Nostre
was that hermit so worthy-man and of so holy life that Our
Sires faisoit tote ior miracles por lui, de tors redrechier
Lord did all day miracles for him of crooked-ones straightening

et dauules faire ueoir, et maintes autres merueilles asses
and of-blind making see and many other marvels a-good-deal
faisoit il tote ior asses auenir por lui. Li rois i
made he all day a-good-deal happen for him The king there
enuoia lenfant, por cou kil ne uoloit mie kil recheust
sent the-child for this that-he not wished at-all that-he should-receive
baptesme dautre main ke de celi au preudomme. Et
baptism from-other hand than from that of-the worthy-man And
quant li preudom uit lenfant et il sot ki il estoit, il le
when the worthy-man saw the-child and he knew who he was he him
baptisa molt volentiers, et lapiela Gauain, Car ensi estoit
baptized very willingly and him-called Gawain For thus was
il apieles et de par lui fu il ensi nomes. et fu li
he called and from part-of him was he thus named and was the
enfes baptisies tot droit a eure de miedi. et quant il fu
child baptized all right at hour of midday and when he was
baptisies, uns des cheualiers de ciaus ki lauoient aporte dist
baptized one of-the knights of those who him-had brought said
au prodomme: 'Sire, por Diu, faites tant ke li roiaumes
to-the worthy-man Lord for God do so-much that the kingdom
d'Alquitaine, ki est en autre maniere nommes Orcanie, se
of-Alquitaine which is in other manner named Orkney itself
puisse loer de uos et ke cis enfes, quant il uenra en
may praise from you and that this child when he will-come into
eage darmes porter, soit par uostre proiere plus gracieus
age of-arms to-bear may-be by your prayer more graced
daucune cose'. 'Ciertes, signor cheualier', fist li preudom,
of-some thing Certainly lords knights says the worthy-man
'la grasce ne uient pas de moi, Ains uient de Ihesu
the grace not comes at-all from me Rather comes-it from Jesus
Christ, sans qui nus ne puet auoir grasce ki uaille. Et
Christ without whom any not can have grace which may-avail And

nanporquant, se ma proiere i pooit ualoir ke par li
nevertheless if my prayer thereto could avail that through it
peust auoir li enfes grasce ki uausist et estre prodom
might have the child grace which might-avail and to-be worthy-man
et gracieus plus ke nus autres cheualiers, ie en proierai
and gracious more than any other knight I thereof shall-pray
nostre signor molt uolentiers. et remanes huimes chaiens
our lord very willingly and remain henceforth in-here
et ie le uos saurai le matin a dire, se ie onques puis,
and I it you shall-know-how the morning to tell if I ever can
ques hom il sera et com bons cheualiers il ert'.
what man he will-be and how good knight he will-be

The Midday Advantage

XXIV

The hermit foretells that every day at midday, the hour of his baptism, the child's strength will be renewed, and so it was all his life. Now Gawain presses Lancelot so hard that his blood springs in a hundred places, and Bors cries out that Lancelot must be enchanted. After midday Lancelot recovers and drives Gawain back. They fight until nones, the field strewn with mail, Gawain expecting only death.

Cele nuit demorerent laiens li mesage au roi Loth et au
That night stayed in-there the messengers of-the king Lot and in-the
matin, quant li preudom ot sa messe cantee, Il uint a aus
morning when the worthy-man had his mass sung He came to them
si lor dist: 'Segnor, de cest enfant ki chi est vos puis ie
so to-them said Lords of this child who here is you can I
bien dire seurement kil sera cheualiers ki asses souferra
well say surely that-he will-be knight who a-good-deal will-suffer
paine et trauaille, tant com il portera armes, et sera aloses
pain and toil so-long as he will-bear arms and will-be renowned

de proece sor le plus des compaignons entre qui il sera; ne
for prowess above the most of-the companions among whom he will-be nor
ia tant com il uiue ne pora estre mors par armes ne
ever so-long as he may-live not will-be-able be dead by arms nor
recreans entor eure de miedi, car de tant est il amendes par
recreant about hour of midday for by so-much is he improved by
ma proiere ke tos iors a eure de miedi, a icele meesme eure
my prayer that all days at hour of midday at that same hour
kil rechut baptesme, li amendera sa force et sa uertus, en
that-he received baptism him will-improve his strength and his virtue in
quelconques liu kil soit; Ne ia tant nauera deuant
whatever place that-he may-be Nor ever so-much not-will-he-have before
eut ne paine ne trauaille kil ne soit a celui point tos
had neither pain nor toil that-he not may-be at that point all
sains et tos legiers. Et auoec ce sera il, tant com il uiuera,
sound and all light And with this will-be he so-long as he will-live
li plus cortois, li plus dous, li plus debonnaires et li plus
the most courteous the most sweet the most gracious and the most
mesurables ki soit'. Et tot ensi com li preudom le dist,
measured who may-be And all thus as the worthy-man it said
auint il; car tos iors amendoit la force et la uertus mon
happened it for all days improved the strength and the virtue of-my
signor Gauain entor eure de miedi, v ke il fust, dont
lord Gawain about hour of midday wherever that he might-be whereby
il ocist, puis kil li fu donnes, maint preudomme et
he killed after that-it to-him was given many-a worthy-man and
uenqui mainte bataille tant com il porta armes; car, quant
vanquished many-a battle so-long as he bore arms for when
il auenoit kil se combatoit encontre aucun cheualier de
it happened that-he himself fought against some knight of
grant pooir, il li coroit sus et le hastoit au plus kil
great power he him ran upon and him pressed at-the most that-he

onques pooit iusques a eure de miedi, Si ke a cele eure estoit
ever could until to hour of midday So that at that hour was
cil si las et si trauillies kil ne pooit en auant. Et quant
he so weary and so toiled that-he not could on further And when
il se quidoit reposer, Lors recouroit me sire Gauains si
he himself thought to-rest Then ran-again my lord Gawain so
comme cil ki a cele eure deuenoit fors et legiers et uistes,
as he who at that hour became strong and light and quick
Si le remenoit tantost legierement iusca outrance. et ce est
So him brought-back at-once lightly until-to uttermost and this is
la cose por coi plusor cheualier doutoient plus a entrer en
the thing for which several knights feared more to enter into
camp encontre lui, se ce ne fust apres eure de miedi. et,
field against him if this not were after hour of midday and
sans faille, apres cele eure et deuant estoit il li vns des
without fail after that hour and before was he the one of-the
miudres cheualiers et des plus segurs ke on peust trouer.
best knights and of-the most sure whom one might find
Cele uiertu et cele grasce ke il auoit ot il par la
That virtue and that grace which he had had he by the
proiere del preudomme et bien i parut a celui ior
prayer of-the worthy-man and well thereby appeared-it on that day
kil se combati a Lanselot. Car ce ueoit Lanselos et
that-he himself fought with Lancelot For this saw Lancelot and
connissoit tot apertement ke deuant miedi estoit me sire
knew all openly that before midday was my lord
Gauains merueilles lasses, et molt lauoit Lanselos trauillie,
Gawain marvels weary and much him-had Lancelot toiled
Si ke a force le couenoit reposer, Mais, quant sa force
So that by force him behooved to-rest But when his strength
li fu reuenue, ensi com il li estoit acoustume, Lors
to-him was returned thus as it to-him was accustomed Then

courut sus a Lanselot si uistement ke nus ne le uit
ran-he upon to Lancelot so quickly that any not him saw
ki ne desist kil ne samblast pas kil i eust hui
who not would-say that-he not seemed at-all that-he there had today
mais cop feru, tant estoit uistes et legiers. Si commencha
more blow struck so-much was-he quick and light So began-he
lors a haster Lanselot Si durement kil li fist en po
then to press Lancelot So hard that-he to-him made in little
de tans le sanc salir en plus de cent lius. Et il le
of time the blood leap in more than a-hundred places And he him
hastoit si durement, por cou kil le quidoit mener entour
pressed so hard for this that-he him thought to-bring about
cele eure iusques a outrance; et bien pensoit ke, sil faloit
that hour until to uttermost and well thought-he that if-he failed
a outrer lui entor miedi, il nen uenroit iamais a chief;
to overcome him about midday he not-thereof would-come ever to end
et por ce fiert il et maille de lespee trenchant de sor
and for this strikes he and hammers with the-sword sharp from upon
Lanselot, ansi com il fesist un englume, se li desront
Lancelot just as he would-do an anvil so to-him breaks
son hauberc et en fait les pieces uoler et les mailles cha
his hauberk and thereof makes the pieces fly and the mails here
et la et li depeche son elme et enpire et li abat
and there and to-him breaks-up his helm and impairs and to-him strikes-off
grans cantiaus de son escut et par desous et par deseure
great cantles of his shield and by below and by above
et li fait molt plaies petites et grans la v lespee
and to-him makes many wounds small and great there where the-sword
puet auenir a la char nue. Et Lanselos, ki tos est esbahis
can come to the flesh bare And Lancelot who all is amazed
de cou kil uoit, Si kil ne set ke dire, Se cueure
by this which-he sees So that-he not knows what to-say Himself covers

totes uoies de son escut et suefre mon signor Gauain
all the-same with his shield and suffers my lord Gawain
kil giete sor lui menu et souent. Et nanporquant il ne
that-he may-cast upon him repeatedly and often And nevertheless he not
suefre pas en tel maniere kil ne li renge souuentes
suffers at-all in such manner that-he not to-him may-render oft
fois grans cols. Et quant li rois Boors uoit que Lanselos
times great blows And when the king Bors sees that Lancelot
est si au desous kil ne fait gaires fors soufrir, Il dist
is so on-the bottom that-he not does much except suffer He said
si haut ke plusor de ses homes le porent bien entendre:
so loud that several of his men it could well hear
'Ha! Dex, ke est ce ke ie uoi? Dex, quest proece deuenue?
Ah God what is this that I see God what-is prowess become
Ha! sire, estes uos encantes ki si estes mis au desous
Ah lord are you enchanted who so are put on-the bottom
par le cors dun seul cheualier? Ia uos ai iou ueu tos
by the body of-a single knight Already you have I seen all
iors plus faire darmes par uostre cors ke doi des millors
days more do of-arms by your body than two of-the best
cheualiers del monde ne peussent faire, et ore estes tos
knights of-the world — could do and now are-you all
atains par la proece del cors a un seul cheualiers.'
reached by the prowess of-the body of a single knight

Ensi dura la bataille iusques apres miedi ke Lanselos
Thus lasted the battle until after midday that Lancelot
not gaires fait fors soufrir leffort mon signor Gauain et
not-had much done except suffer the-force of-my lord Gawain and
coufirir soi. Mais en cou se fu il auques reposes et
cover himself But in this himself was he somewhat rested and
ot repris force et alaine Si receurt tantost sus a mon
had taken-again strength and breath So runs-again-he at-once upon to my

signor Gauain molt uistement se li donne parmi son
lord Gawain very quickly so to-him gives through his
elme Si grant cop kil le fait tot canceler, si ke por
helm So great blow that-he him makes all totter so that for
.i. po kil ne feri a terre del un des genous. Si fu
a little that-he not struck to ground with-the one of-the knees So was-he
si cargies de celui cop ke a force li couint retraire soi.
so burdened by that blow that by force him behooved withdraw himself
Et lors recommence Lanselos a ferir sor lui molt souent
And then begins-again Lancelot to strike upon him very often
et a doner si grans cols de lespee trenchant et clere et
and to give so great blows with the-sword sharp and bright and
a prendre terre sor lui. Et me sire Gauains, ki orendroit
to take ground upon him And my lord Gawain who now
a le grignor paour ke onques nus hom eust et qui
has the greatest fear that ever any man might-have and who
se uoit en auenture de toute honte recheuoir, sil ne
himself sees in adventure of all shame to-receive if-he not
se puet deffendre, sefforce por paour de mort et met
himself can defend himself-strives for fear of death and puts
ensamble toute la proece kil puet auoir. Si se deffent
together all the prowess which-he can have So himself defends-he
si angousseusement ke de la grant destrece kil a li
so anguishedly that from the great distress which-he has to-him
saut li sans parmi le nes et parmi la bouce, sans les
leaps the blood through the nose and through the mouth without the
autres plaies kil auoit, Si sainoient plus ke mestiers ne
other wounds which-he had So bled-they more than need —
li fust. Ensi dure la bataille diaus deus desi a eure de
to-him were Thus lasts the battle of-them two until to hour of
nonne. Et lors sont ambedoi si mal atorne kil ni a
nones And then are both so ill arrayed that-it not-there has

celui a qui il ne pere bien de son mestier; et la place
that-one to whom it not may-appear well of his need and the place
v il se combatoient estoit toute ionchie des mailles
where they themselves fought was all strewn with-the mails
de lor haubers et des pieces de lor escus. Et me sire
of their hauberks and with-the pieces of their shields And my lord
Gauains estoit teus atornes des plaies kil auoit recheues
Gawain was such arrayed by-the wounds which-he had received
kil natendoit mais fors la mort. Ne Lanselos ne rest pas
that-he not-awaited more except the death Nor Lancelot not is-again at-all
sains par tot kil nait el cors mainte plaie, dont
sound through all that-he not-may-have in-the body many-a wound whereof
il estoit si greues ke a paines pooit il estre en estant, car
he was so harmed that with pains could he be in standing for
il auoit en lestor molt este greues Si eust grignor mestier
he had in the-fight much been harmed So had-he greater need
de repos que de combatre; car molt lot me sire Gauains
of rest than of fighting for much him-had my lord Gawain
greue le ior et tenu si cort kil li fist le sanc del cors
harmed the day and held so short that-he to-him made the blood of-the body
salir en plus de .xxx. lius. et se ce fussent autre cheualier,
leap in more than thirty places and if these were other knights
il i fussent piecha mort au trauail quil ont soufiert
they there would-be long-ago dead from-the toil which-they have suffered
et au sanc kil ont perdu; Mais il ont les cuers es
and from-the blood which-they have lost But they have the hearts in-the
uentres si grans ke poi lor samble quankil ont fait, sil
bellies so great that little to-them seems whatever-they have done if-they
ne se mainent iusques a la mort v iusques a outrance,
not themselves lead until to the death or until to uttermost
tant ke on en uoie le millor et le plus ceualerous.
until that one thereof may-see the best and the most chivalrous

Lancelot Spares Gawain

XXV

By evening Gawain, seventy years old, can barely stand. Lancelot, who has held out past vespers, asks him to leave off, but Gawain swears one of them must die. Lancelot asks the king to intervene, and Arthur, weeping, gives him leave to go, calling him the best and most courteous knight he ever saw. Hector urges Lancelot to cut off Gawain's head, but Lancelot refuses. His physicians find him gravely wounded but in no danger of death.

En tel maniere dure li estours de chi au uespre. Et lors
In such manner lasts the fight from here to-the evening And then
est me sire Gauains tant trauillies et tant las ke a paines
is my lord Gawain so toiled and so weary that with pains
puet il tenir sespee et son escu Ne soustenir soi en estant.
can he hold his-sword and his shield Nor sustain himself in standing
Et ce nestoit mie de merueille, car adont auoit bien me
And this not-was at-all of marvel for then had well my
sire Gauains .lx. et .x. ans Et Lanselos estoit en son millor
lord Gawain sixty and ten years And Lancelot was in his best
point, Si comme en leage de .l. ans, Si nestoit mie si
point So as in the-age of fifty years So not-was-he at-all so
las ke encore ne peust, se mestier en eust. Si giete sor
weary that still not could-he if need thereof had So casts-he upon
mon signor Gauain molt grans cols et le maine une eure
my lord Gawain very great blows and him leads one hour
auant et autre ariere et puis cha et puis la, ensi com il
forward and other back and then here and then there thus as he
le haste une eure plus ke lautre. Et mesire Gauains suefre
him presses one hour more than the-other And my-lord Gawain suffers
toutes uoies et endure et se cueure de tant descut
all the-same and endures and himself covers with so-much of-shield

kil a a mieus kil puet. Et quant Lanselos uoit kil
as-he has at-the best that-he can And when Lancelot sees that-he
la tel menet ke tot cil de la place uoient apertement
him-has such led that all those of the place see openly
kil na mais en lui deffense ki gaires li puist ualoir,
that-he not-has more in him defense which much to-him might avail
Il se traist un peu ensus de mon signor Gauain Se li
He himself draws a little away from my lord Gawain So to-him
dist: 'Ha! mesire Gauain, or mest il auis ke de cel apiel
says Ah my-lord Gawain now to-me-is it opinion that of that appeal
ke uos aues sor moi fait Seroit bien raisons que ie en
which you have upon me made It-would-be well reason that I thereof
fusse quites des ores mais, car bien men sui deffendus
were quit from now more for well me-thereof am-I defended
enuers uos de chi apres uespres, Et dedens uespres doit
toward you from here after vespers And within vespers ought
on ki apiele autre de traison auoir sa bataille uencue v
one who appeals other of treason to-have his battle won or
autrement Li apieleres a perdue sa queriele. Ceste cose vos
otherwise The appellant has lost his quarrel This thing you
di ie, me sire Gauain, por ce ke vos aies mercit de vos,
say I my lord Gawain for this that you may-have mercy on you
car certes, se nos maintenons plus ceste bataille, il ne puet
for certainly if we maintain more this battle it not can
estre ke li uns de nos .ij. ne muire asses vilment, et
be that the one of us two not may-die a-good-deal vilely and
si sera damages grans et hontes et reproce a tout nostre
so will-be harm great and shame and reproach to all our
linage. Et, por Diu et por ce ke ie face tot outreement
lineage And for God and for this that I may-do all utterly

quanke vos me volres outreement requerre, ie uos pri kil
whatever you me will-wish utterly to-ask I you pray that-it
vos plaise ke nous le laissons atant demorer'.
you may-please that we it may-leave so-far to-rest

A ceste parole respont me sire Gauains et dist ke ia
At this word answers my lord Gawain and said that ever
Dex ne li ait, sil lotroie de son gre, 'ains soies', fait
God not him may-help if-he it-grants of his will rather be-you says
il, 'aseur kil ne puet estre ke li uns de nos deus ne
he sure that-it not can be that the one of us two not
muire en cest camp.' De ceste parole est Lanselos trop
may-die in this field Of this word is Lancelot too
dolans, car il ne uolsist en nule maniere ke me sire
sorrowful for he not would-have-wished in any manner that my lord
Gauains i morust iluec par lui; car il lauoit esproue de
Gawain there died there by him for he him-had proved of
cou kil ne peust pas quidier au matin kil eust en
this that-he not could at-all think in-the morning that-he had in
lui tant de proece commil i auoit trouue, Et ce fu li
him so-much of prowess as-he therein had found And this was the
hom el monde, Lanselos, ki de grignor cuer ama bons
man in-the world Lancelot who with greater heart loved good
cheualiers. Lors sen uait cele part v il uoit le roi
knights Then herself-thence goes-he that way where he sees the king
Artu et li dist: 'Ha! sire, por Diu, ancois ke nos en
Arthur and to-him said Ah lord for God before that we thereof
fachons plus, ie uos uolroie requerre ke uos proissies mon
may-do more I you would-wish to-ask that you might-pray my
signor Gauain kil atant laissast ceste bataille; car, certes,
lord Gawain that-he so-far might-leave this battle for certainly
se nos en faisons plus, il ne puet estre ke li uns de
if we thereof do more it not can be that the one of

nous ni rechoiue tel damage ki iamais ni sera
us not-there may-receive such harm which ever not-thereby will-be
recouures por cose ki auiegne; et li ques ki i muire
recovered for thing which may-happen and the which who there may-die
de nos deus, Li linages en sera vergondes et honnis'.
of us two The lineage thereby will-be disgraced and shamed
Et quant li rois, ki bien ueoit ke me sire Gauains estoit
And when the king who well saw that my lord Gawain was
au desous, entent la debonnairete Lanselot, il respont tot
on-the bottom hears the graciousness of-Lancelot he answers all
en plorant: 'Lanselot, il nel laissera mie, sil ne li plaist,
in weeping Lancelot he not-it will-leave at-all if-it not to-him pleases
Mais uos le poes bien laissier, Se uos uoles, car ia est
But you it can well leave If you wish for already is
eure de bataille passee Si en aues bien fait ce ke vos
hour of battle passed So thereof have-you well done this which you
en deustes faire et il maluaisement'. 'Sire', fait Lanselos,
thereof ought to-do and he badly Lord says Lancelot
'se ie ne quidoie ke uos le me tornissies a maluestie et
if I not thought that you it me would-turn to wickedness and
a recreandise, ie men iroie et laisseroie mon signor
to recreancy I me-thence would-go and would-leave my lord
Gauain en camp'. 'Certes', fait li rois, 'ce est une cose ke
Gawain in field Certainly says the king this is a thing which
ie molt volroie uolentiers ke vos en aillisies, ne uos ne
I much would-wish willingly that you thence might-go nor you not
fesistes onques cose por moi dont ie uos seusse millor
did ever thing for me whereof I you might-know better
gret — et si en aues vos faites plusors, dont ie vos
gratitude and so thereof have you done several whereof I to-you
ai molt bon gret seut et sai encore, Mais de quankes
have very good gratitude known and know still But of whatever

il en ia eut nen i a il nule dont ie uos seusse
it thereof already had not-thereof there has it any whereof I you might-know
millor gret comme ie saroie de ceste'. 'dont men
better gratitude as I would-know of this then me-thence
irai ie', fait Lanselos, 'a uostre congie'. 'a Diu soies vos
shall-go I says Lancelot with your leave to God be you
commandes', fait li rois, 'ki uos gart en tous lius comme
commended says the king who you may-guard in all places as
le millor cheualier ke ie onques ueisse et le plus cortois'.
the best knight whom I ever saw and the most courteous
Atant sen uait Lanselos uers ciaus de Gaunes. et
Thereupon himself-thence goes Lancelot toward those of Gaunes and
quant Hestor le uit uenir, si dist: 'Ha! sire, ke est ce
when Hector him saw come so said-he Ah lord what is this
ke uos faites, ki estes au deseure de uostre plus mortel
that you do who are on-the top of your most mortal
anemi, Si ke vos le poes uaincre et ocire et uengier
enemy So that you him can vanquish and kill and avenge
ent[re] uos et tot uostre parente, et Puis len laissies
between you and all your kindred and Then him-thence let
escaper uif apres ce meesment kil uos a apiele de
escape alive after this especially that-he you has accused of
traison. retornes, biaus sire, et li copes la teste. Lors
treason return fair lord and to-him cut the head Then
si sera uostre guerre a fin alee'. 'Ha! biaus freres', fait
so will-be your war to end gone Ah fair brother says
Lanselos, 'ke est ce ke uos dites? Ia Dex ne mait, se
Lancelot what is this that you say Ever God not me-help if
ie ne uoloie mieus estre ferus dun glaue parmi le cors
I not wished better to-be struck with-a lance through the body
que ie eusse si preudomme ocis comme il est'. 'Ia uos
than I had so worthy-man killed as he is Already you

eust il mort', fait Hestor, 'sil peust; et, uos, por coi ne
would-have he dead says Hector if-he could and you for why not
faites autre tel de lui?' 'Ie nel feroie mie', fait il, 'car mes
do-you other such of him I not-it would-do at-all says he for my
cuers a qui ie sui ne si poroit acorder en nule
heart to whom I am not himself-thereto could agree in any
maniere'. 'Certes', fait li rois Boors, 'ce poise moi et si
manner Certainly says the king Bors this grieves me and so
quic ke ce est une cose dont vos vos repentires encore'.
think-I that this is a thing whereof you yourself will-repent yet
Lors monte Lanselos sor son ceual, ki li fu aprestes,
Then mounts Lancelot upon his horse which to-him was made-ready
Puis sen torne en la cite, entre lui et sa compaignie.
Then himself-thence turns into the city between him and his company
Et quant il fu uenus a la grant tour et il fu descendus
And when he was come to the great tower and he was dismounted
et desarmes, Li mirre ki uinrent deuant lui uirent kil
and disarmed The physicians who came before him saw that-he
estoit naures molt durement et kil auoit maintes plaies
was wounded very hard and that-he had many wounds
petites et grans et auoec ce ot tant perdu del sanc
small and great and with this had-he so-much lost of-the blood
cuns autres hom en fust mors. Et quant Hestor uit les
that-an other man thereof would-be dead And when Hector saw the
plaies, il en est molt esbahis et esmaies et demande as
wounds he thereby is much amazed and dismayed and asks of-the
mires sil en pora garir. 'oil', font il, 'il na garde
physicians if-he thereof will-be-able recover yes say they he not-has fear
de mort. Et nanporquant il a tant perdu del sanc et
of death And nevertheless he has so-much lost of-the blood and
ses plaies sont si parfondes ke nos en somes tot esmaiet,
his wounds are so deep that we thereby are all dismayed

Mais totes uoies sauons nous bien kil en garra'. Lors
But all the-same know we well that-he thereof will-recover Then
pensent des plaies et metent desus cou kil quident ki
think-they of-the wounds and put upon this which-they think which
plus i puisse ualoir. Et quant il lont apareilliet au
most there may avail And when they him-have dressed at-the
mieus kil pueent, il li demandent coment il se
best that-they can they to-him ask how he himself
sent. 'Bien, Deu mercit', fait Lanselos, 'selonc lauenture
feels Well God thanks says Lancelot according-to the-adventure
et selonc cou kil ma hui este autre fois'.
and according-to this which-it to-me-has today been other time

Gawain Carried Back

XXVI

Lancelot tells his kin he never feared a single knight until today, when Gawain's strength returned at midday. Bors calls them the two best knights in the world. The ages are told: Gawain seventy, Lancelot forty-nine, Arthur ninety-eight. Gawain's men carry him to the king's pavilion, where he swoons more than three times. The physician can heal all his wounds but one in the head, and Arthur tells him his own outrage has killed him.

Quant Lanselos ot grant piece repose et il se senti .i.
When Lancelot had great while rested and he himself felt a
poi de millor cuer, Lors dist as .ij. rois et a Estor: 'biaus
little of better heart Then said-he to-the two kings and to Hector fair
signor, puis icele eure ke ie portai premierement armes Noi
lords since that hour that I bore first arms Not-had
ie mais paour del cors dun seul cheualier fors solement hui.
I ever fear of-the body of-a single knight except only today

Mais hui, sans faille, ai iou eut doute de mort, la grignor
But today without fail have I had dread of death the greatest
ke ie onques mais eusse; car entour eure de miedi, quant
that I ever more might-have for around hour of midday when
ie oi mene mon signor Gauain a ce kil ne me sambloit
I had led my lord Gawain to this that-he not me seemed
pas kil ualsist mieus dun cheualier outre et kil
at-all that-he might-be-worth more than-a knight overcome and that-he
ne se pooit mais deffendre, se trop petit non, adont le
not himself could more defend except too little not then him
trouai ie si aspre et si uiste ke, sil se fust tenus en
found I so fierce and so quick that if-he himself had held in
cele grant proece longement, ie nen peusse mie escaper
that great prowess long I not-thence could at-all escape
sans mort. Si mesmeruillai trop coment ce pooit auenir,
without death So me-marveled-I too-much how this could happen
car deuant sai ie bien kil estoit recreans et en si po de
for before know I well that-he was recreant and in so little of
termine li fu si grans force recreue kil nauoit pas
term to-him was so great strength grown-again that-he not-had at-all
este au commencement si preus ne si uistes comme ie le
been at-the beginning so valiant nor so quick as I him
trouai adont'. 'Ciertes', fait li rois Boors, 'uos dites uoir; a
found then Certainly says the king Bors you say truth at
icele eure oi ie si grant paor de uos ke ie onques noi si
that hour had I so great fear for you that I ever not-had so
grant, et, sil se fust tenus a cou kil commencha a cele
great and if-he himself had held to this which-he began at that
fois, uos nen escapissies ia sans mort, a cou kil ne
time you not-thence would-have-escaped ever without death for this that-he not
uos eust pas este si debonnaires con vos li aues este.
you would-have at-all been so gracious as you to-him have been

Si ai tant ueu de vos .ij. ke ie connois ore bien et sai
So have-I so-much seen of you two that I know now well and know
de uoir ke vos estes li doi millor cheualier del monde.'
for truth that you are the two best knights of-the world
Ensi parolent cil de Gaunes de la bataille ki ot este et
Thus speak those of Gaunes of the battle which had been and
molt sesmerueillent de ce ke me sire Gauains ot tant dure
much themselves-marvel at this that my lord Gawain had so-long lasted
encontre Lanselot, car tot sauoient bien ke Lanselos estoit
against Lancelot for all knew well that Lancelot was
li miudres cheualiers del monde et plus iones hom de
the best knight of-the world and more young man than
mon signor Gauain entor .xxj. an, car a cele eure pooit
my lord Gawain by-about twenty-one years for at that hour could
bien mesire Gauains auoir .lx. et .x. ans Et Lanselos un
well my-lord Gawain have sixty and ten years And Lancelot one
mains de cinquante Et li rois Artus .iiij. uins et .xviij. Et
less than fifty And the king Arthur four score and eighteen And
quant cil del ost uirent ke Lanselos fu entres en la cite
when those of-the host saw that Lancelot was entered into the city
de Gaunes, entre lui et sa compaignie, Il uinrent a mon
of Gaunes between him and his company They came to my
signour Gauain, ki estoit aceutes a terre de sor son escu
lord Gawain who was leaning on ground from upon his shield
et estoit si sanglens et si naures et tant auoit pierdu
and was so bloody and so wounded and so-much had-he lost
del sanc kil ne se pooit mais en estant sostenir, et il
of-the blood that-he not himself could more in standing sustain and they
le prendent entre lor bras et le metent sor .i. ceual et
him take between their arms and him put upon a horse and
len mainnent iusques as pauillons le roi. Et iluec le
him-thence lead as-far to-the pavilions of-the king And there him

descendirent, puis le desarment erralment. Et le trueuent
dismounted-they then him disarm forthwith And him find
si malade et si nauret ke, ancois kil laient desarme,
so sick and so wounded that before that-they him-may-have disarmed
sest il pasmes entre lor mains plus de .iij. fois. Et il
himself-is he swooned between their hands more than three times And they
mandent le mire le roi. Et quant li mires fu uenus
send-for the physician of-the king And when the physician was come
et il lot regarde dune part et dautre et ses plaies
and he him-had looked-at on-one side and on-the-other and his wounds
tantees, il dist kil le renderoit tot sain et tot haitie
probed he said that-he him would-render all sound and all healthy
prochainement de totes les plaies kil auoit fors dune
soon of all the wounds which-he had except of-a
seule. Et celi auoit il el cief bien parfonde. Li rois,
single-one And that-one had he in-the head well deep The king
quant il uit mon signor Gauain si naure et si martiriiet,
when he saw my lord Gawain so wounded and so martyred
en pleure de pitie des iex de son cief et en fait duel
thereat weeps for pity from-the eyes of his head and thereof makes grief
et meruilleus et grant et li dist: 'Gauain, biaus nies,
both marvelous and great and to-him said Gawain fair nephew
uostre outrages et uostre felonie uos a mort; si est damages
your outrage and your felony you has killed so is harm
molt grans a tot vostre parente, car iamais en uostre linage
very great to all your kindred for ever in your lineage
nara si bon cheualier comme vos aues este.' Me sire
not-will-there-have so good knight as you have been My lord
Gauains fu teus atornes kil not pooir de respondre a
Gawain was such arrayed that-he not-had power to answer to
cose ke li rois li die, car tant auoit perdu del sanc
thing which the king to-him may-say for so-much had-he lost of-the blood

et tant auoit plaies petites et grans kil ne quide ia
and so-much had-he wounds small and great that-he not thinks ever
ueoir lendemain. tot en pleurent par laiens li haut home
to-see the-morrow all thereat weep through in-there the high men
ki ueoient mon signor Gauain si destroit ke nus plus.
who saw my lord Gawain so distressed that none more

The Romans Invade

XXVII

All night the host watches Gawain, expecting his death. At dawn Arthur raises the siege of Gaunes and carries him in a litter to Meaux, where he begins to mend. A squire brings word that the Romans have burned Burgundy and will offer battle within the week. Arthur keeps it quiet and tells Gawain, who says the Romans know little of war and advises meeting them, and swears his head wound will not keep him from arms.

Asses plorerent por mon signour Gauain cele nuit et li
A-good-deal wept-they for my lord Gawain that night both the
riche et li poure, car il lamoient tot de molt grant amour,
rich and the poor for they him-loved all with very great love
Si furent tote la nuit deuant lui, por ueoir kil feroit, car
So were-they all the night before him for to-see what-he would-do for
il ne gardoient leure kil se morust entre lor mains.
they not awaited the-hour that-he himself might-die between their hands
Si nouri onques en tote la nuit les ieus me sire Gauains
So not-opened ever in all the night the eyes my lord Gawain
ne ne dist mot ne nule rien ne fist nient plus ke sil fust
nor not said word nor any thing not did any more than if-he were
mors, fors tant ke a cief de fois se plaignoit molt
dead except so-much that at end of time himself complained-he very

durement. Et, ancois kil fust aiourne, commanda li rois
hard And before that-it were dawned commanded the king
ke on destendist tres et pauillons, car iluec ne demorroit
that one should-unpitch tents and pavilions for there not would-stay
il pas, ains en iroit en Gaule demorer et reposer ne ne
he at-all rather thence would-go into Gaul to-stay and to-rest nor not
sen remouuroit des chi adont kil saroit vraiement
himself-thence would-move-again from here until that-he would-know truly
se me sire Gauains poroit garir. Au matin, si tost com il
if my lord Gawain could recover In-the morning so soon as it
fu aiorne, Se departi li rois del siege de Gaunes, molt
was dawned So departed the king from-the siege of Gaunes much
courouchies, de grant maniere, et en fait porter en litiere
angered in great manner and thence has carry in litter
mon signor Gauain, Si malade ke li rois meesmes ni
my lord Gawain So sick that the king himself not-there
atendoit se la mort non. Li rois ala seiorner a une cite
awaited except the death not The king went to-sojourn at a city
que on apieloit adont Miaus et demora tant iluec ke me
which one called then Meaux and stayed so-long there that my
sire Gauains fu auques tornes a garison. Et quant li rois
lord Gawain was somewhat turned to recovery And when the king
ot grant piece seiorne en cele chite, Il dist, pour ce kil
had great while sojourned in that city He said for this that-he
auoit tant demore, kil sen iroit prochainement
had so-long stayed that-he himself-thence would-go soon
el roiame de Logres. Lors li uinrent vnes nouieles
into-the realm of Logres Then to-him came a news
ki molt li desplorent, Car uns ualles li dist a un
which much to-him displeased For a squire to-him said on a
matin ensi com il estoit leues: ‘Sire, nouieles vos aporc
morning thus as he was risen Lord news to-you bring-I

asses anieuses.' 'Queles sont eles?' dist li rois. 'di le
a-good-deal grievous What are they said the king tell it
moi.' 'Sire, en nostre terre sont entre cil de Romme a
me Lord into our land are entered those of Rome with
si grant plente de gent kil ont ia toute Bourgoigne
so great plenty of people that-they have already all Burgundy
arse et destruite et les homes naures et ocis et la
burned and destroyed and the men wounded and killed and the
terre toute reubee. Si sai uraiement kil uenront ceste
land all robbed So know-I truly that-they will-come this
sesmaine sor vos a ost, por combatre encontre uos et
week upon you in host for to-fight against you and
encontre vos gens a bataille campel. Mais onques ne ueistes
against your men in battle pitched But ever not saw-you
si grant pueple ne tant de gent com il ont auoec aus.'
so great people nor so-much of folk as they have with them
Quant li rois entendi la parole, il en deuint tos esbahis
When the king heard the word he thereby became all amazed
Si dist au uallet kil se ciesse de ceste parole, car,
So said-he to-the squire that-he himself should-cease from this word for
se si home lauoient oi en tel maniere com il le conte, Il
if his men it-had heard in such manner as he it tells It
en i aroit de teus par auenture ki en seroient plus
thereof there would-have of such by adventure who thereby would-be more
esmaiet kil ne deuroient. et li ualles dist kil nen
dismayed than-they — ought and the squire said that-he not-thereof
parlera iamais plus, puis ke li rois en set la uerite.
will-speak ever more since that the king thereof knows the truth
Atant uint li rois a mon signor Gauain, ki auques estoit
Thereupon came the king to my lord Gawain who somewhat was
garis fors de la plaie kil auoit el cief, dont il morut,
healed except of the wound which-he had in-the head whereof he died

sans faille. Il li demande coment il se sent. ‘Sire, bien
without fail He to-him asks how he himself feels Lord well
Deu mercit’, fait me sire Gauains, ‘Ie sui tos garis por porter
God thanks says my lord Gawain I am all healed for to-bear
armes, ce me samble.’ ‘Il uos est bien mestiers,’ fait li rois,
arms this me seems It to-you is well need says the king
‘car unes nouieles me sont hui uenues molt meruilleuses.’
for a news to-me are today come very marvelous
‘Queles sont eles, sire?’ fait mesire Gauains. ‘sil uos plaist,
What are they lord says my-lord Gawain if-it you pleases
dites le moi.’ ‘Par foi,’ fait li rois, ‘vns valles ma dit ke li
tell it me By faith says the king a squire me-has said that the
empereres de Romme est entres en ma terre et a ia tote
emperor of Rome is entered into my land and has already all
Borgoigne arse et destruite Et les homes ocis et naures
Burgundy burned and destroyed And the men killed and wounded
et les proies prises et doiuent cil Rommain uenir sor nous
and the preys taken and ought those Romans to-come upon us
en ceste sesmaine a ost, por combatre encontre nos gens
in this week in host for to-fight against our men
a bataille campel. Et ie quic ke Romain sont de si foible
in battle pitched And I think that Romans are of so feeble
pooir as armes kil naront ia uers nos duree.’ ‘Sire’,
power at arms that-they not-will-have ever against us endurance Lord
fait me sire Gauains, ‘ie vos di uraiement ke Romain seuent
says my lord Gawain I you tell truly that Romans know
po de guerre et de bataille, car il ne lont mie use. Si
little of war and of battle for they not it-have at-all practiced So
uos dirai ke nos ferons. Nos assamblerons nostre gent et
you shall-I-tell what we shall-do We shall-assemble our men and
cheuaucerons encontre aus et nos combaterons a aus; et
shall-ride against them and we shall-fight with them and

ie uos aseur kil seront desconfit et lonnors en sera
I you assure that-they will-be discomfited and the-honor thereof will-be
nostre'. Et li rois dist ke tot ensi le fera il. Si demande a
ours And the king said that all thus it will-do he So asks-he of
mon signor Gauain coment il se sent. 'Ie me senc', fait
my lord Gawain how he himself feels I myself feel says
il, 'si legier et si sain comme ie onques fui plus. Et se ne
he so light and so sound as I ever was more And if not
fust la plaie de mon chief, dont ie ne sui mie bien garis
were the wound of my head whereof I not am at-all well healed
a ma uolente, ie ne sentisse mal ne dolour. Et nanporquant
to my will I not would-feel evil nor sorrow And nevertheless
por ce ne lairai ie pas a porter armes au grant besoing.'
for this not shall-leave I at-all to bear arms at-the great need

The Battle with the Romans

XXVIII

The emperor claims Arthur's land and tribute, and Arthur's messengers defy him. In the battle Gawain strikes off the shoulder of the emperor's nephew, but Roman blows on his helmet reopen his head wound. The emperor runs Kay through, and Arthur kills him with a blow to the teeth. Arthur sends the body to Rome in place of tribute. Then the queen's squire arrives: Mordred is crowned, the barons have done him homage, and the queen is besieged in the tower of London.

A lendemain se departi li rois de cel castiel v il auoit
On the-next-day himself departed the king from that castle where he had
seiorne et ala tant, entre lui et sa gent, kil encontra
sojourned and went so-far between him and his men that-he met
entre Borgoigne et Campaigne lempereour de Rome, ki
between Burgundy and Champagne the-emperor of Rome who

molt auoit auoec lui grant gent, Mais nestoient mie si bon
very had with him great people But not-were-they at-all so good
cheualier ne si vse darmes comme estoient cil de la
knights nor so practiced in-arms as were those of the
Grant Bretaigne. Li rois Artus, ains kil assamblaissent,
Great Britain The king Arthur before that-they joined-battle
enuoia de ses cheualiers en lost des Romains, por enquerre
sent of his knights into the-host of-the Romans for to-inquire
a lempereour par quel raison il estoit entres en la terre
of the-emperor by what reason he was entered into the land
le roi Artu sans son congiet. Li empereres respondi a
of-the king Arthur without his leave The emperor answered to
cou si dist: 'Ie ne sui pas entres en sa terre mais en la
this so said-he I not am at-all entered into his land but into the
moie, car il na point de terre kil ne doie tenir de
mine for he not-has a-whit of land which-he not may-owe to-hold from
moi. Si i sui uenus por uengier un nostre prince, Froille
me So there am-I come for to-avenge a our prince Froille
d'Alemaigne, qui il ocist ia dis de sa main. et par la
of-Germany whom he killed long ago by his hand and for the
desraison kil en fist nara il iamais pais a nos,
unreason which-he thereby did not-will-have he ever peace with us
deuant ce kil nos ara fait homage et kil ara sa
before this that-he us will-have done homage and that-he will-have his
terre recheue de nos, en tel maniere kil nos en rende
land received from us in such manner that-he to-us thereof may-render
treu cascun an et cil ki apres lui uenront ausi.' A ce
tribute each year and those who after him will-come also To this
respondent li message le roi Artu et disent: 'Sire, puis
answer the messengers of-the king Arthur and say Lord since
ke on ne poroit autre cose trouer en vos, Nos vos deffions
that one not could other thing find in you We you defy

de par mon signor le roi Artu, et sacies tot vraiement
from part-of my lord the king Arthur and know all truly
ke uos estes uenus a la bataille dont vos et tot uostre
that you are come to the battle whereby you and all your
home seres ocis en camp ke ia puis nen escapera'.
men will-be killed in field so-that ever after not-thence will-escape-one
'Ie ne sai', fait li empereres', comment il en auenra ore,
I not know says the emperor how it thereof will-befall now
mais, por la bataille auoir, uenimes nos cha et par bataille
but for the battle to-have came we here and by battle
pierdrons nos ceste terre v nos le gaaignerons'. Atant
shall-lose we this land or we it shall-win Thereupon
se departent li messages de lempereour. Et quant il
themselves depart the messengers from the-emperor And when they
furent uenu au roi Artu, il li conterent tot cou kil
were come to-the king Arthur they to-him told all this which-they
auoient troue a lempereour. 'Or ni a dont', fet li
had found with the-emperor Now not-there has then says the
rois, 'fors ke del assambler, car ie uolroie mieus morir en
king except that of-the joining-battle for I would-wish better to-die in
ceste place ke ie ia ior de ma uie tenisse terre daus'.
this place than I ever day of my life should-hold land from-them

Au matin sarmerent cil del roialme de Logres si deuisa
In-the morning armed-themselves those of-the realm of Logres so devised
li rois .x. batailles totes plenieres. Et quant il les ot deuisees,
the king ten battalions all full And when he them had devised
Si alerent la premiere ferir as Romains si uighereusement
So went the first to-strike at-the Romans so vigorously
kil en furent tot esbahi. Si peussies ueoir a lassambler
that-they thereby were all amazed So might-you-have seen at the-joining
cheualiers cheoir Si espessement, dune part et dautre, ke
knights fall So thickly on-one side and on-the-other that

toute la terre en estoit couierte. Li Romain nestoient mie
all the ground thereby was covered The Romans not-were at-all
si duit ne si acostume de porter armes comme cil del
so trained nor so accustomed to bear arms as those of-the
roiaume de Logres estoient, par coi uos les ueissies
kingdom of Logres were for which you them would-have-seen
cheoir et trebuchier et detrenchier et ocire ausi espessement
fall and tumble and hack and kill as thickly
comme se ce fussent biestes mues. Et quant li rois Artus,
as if these were beasts dumb And when the king Arthur
ki conduisoit la derraine bataille, fu uenus en la presse,
who led the last battalion was come into the press
Lors ueissies le roi ferir et ocire Romains et abatre
Then might-you-have-seen the king strike and kill Romans and strike-down
cheualiers et cheuaus et a faire si grans merueilles de son
knights and horses and to do so great marvels with his
cors, car a celui tans nauoit il el monde home de si grant
body for at that time not-had it in-the world man of so great
eage com il estoit ki autant en peust faire. Il chierchoit les
age as he was who as-much thereof might do He searched the
rens amont et aual et faisoit widier la place, en quelconques
ranks up and down and made empty the place in whatever
liu kil uenist, par les grans cols kil donnoit del
place that-he came by the great blows which-he gave with-the
espee trenchant. Et me sire Gauains, ki estoit de lautre part
sword sharp And my lord Gawain who was on the-other side
de la bataille, entre lui et Keu le senescal et Girflet le fil
of the battle between him and Kay the seneschal and Girflet the son
Do, le commencha si bien a faire ke nus ne len deust
of-Do it began so well to do that any not him-thereof ought
blasmer. Et la v il aloit parmi la bataille, ki molt estoit
to-blame And there where he went through the battle which very was

grans, abatant cheualiers dune part et dautre ausi com
great striking-down knights on-one side and on-the-other just as
effondres, Il auint kil encontra lempereour et un sien
thunderbolt It happened that-he met the-emperor and a his-own
neueu. Et cil doi auoient molt celui ior damagies ciaus del
nephew And those two had much that day harmed those of-the
roialme de Logres, car il [es]toient andoi bon cheualier Si
realm of Logres for they were both good knights So
aloient ociant et abatant quankil encontroient deuant aus.
went-they killing and striking-down whatever-they met before them
Quant mesire Gauains uit la merueille kil faisoient, Il
When my-lord Gawain saw the marvel which-they did He
dist a soi meesmes: 'se cil doi puent uiure longement, il nos
said to himself even if those two can live long it us
en pora uenir grans damages, car il sont andoi trop bon
thereof will-be-able come great harm for they are both too good
cheualier.' Et lors laisse courre al neueu lempereour et le
knights And then lets-he run at-the nephew of-the-emperor and him
fiert del espee si grant colp kil li abat toute lespaule
strikes with-the sword so great blow that-he to-him strikes-off all the-shoulder
senestre. Et cil se laisse cheoir a terre, ki se sent naure
left And he himself lets fall to ground who himself feels wounded
a mort. A cest colp sassamblent li Romain et assalent mon
to death At this blow themselves-assemble the Romans and assail my
signour Gauain de totes pars Si le fierent des espees
lord Gawain from all sides So him strike-they with-the swords
et des glaues et li font plaies el cors molt grans
and with-the lances and to-him make wounds in-the body very great
et molt perilleuses, Mais nule rien ne li fist autretant de
and very perilous But any thing not to-him did as-much of

mal comme ce kil le fesoient desor le hiaume; et par
harm as this that-they him did upon the helmet and through
cou li fu tote sa plaie renouelee, dont il li couint morir.
this to-him was all his wound renewed whereof he him behooved to-die
Quant li enpereres uit son neueu si naure, il laisse corre
When the emperor saw his nephew so wounded he lets run
a Keu le senescal et le fiert si durement kil li mist
at Kay the seneschal and him strikes so hard that-he to-him put
le glaue par mi le cors si lempaint si durement kil
the lance through amid the body so him-thrusts so hard that-he
le porte del ceual a terre naure a mort, Si kil ne
him carries from-the horse to ground wounded to death So that-he not
uesqui puis ke trois iors. Il traist lespee et sadrece uers
lived after but three days He drew the-sword and himself-directs toward
Girflet et li donne par mi lelme si grant cop ke
Girflet and to-him gives through amid the-helm so great blow that
cil en est tous esbahis Si kil ne remaint en siele, ains
he thereby is all amazed So that-he not remains in saddle rather
uole ius del ceual. Ces .ij. cols uit li rois Artus et sot
flies down from-the horse These two blows saw the king Arthur and knew
tot uraiement que ce estoit li empereres ki les auoit fais.
all truly that this was the emperor who them had done
Lors laisse courre cele part et fiert lempereour de tote sa
Then lets-he run that way and strikes the-emperor with all his
force amont el hiaume de lespee trenchant si durement
force above on-the helmet with the-sword sharp so hard
ke nule riens nel garantist kil ne li face sentir
that any thing not-him protects that-he not to-him may-make feel
le trenchant de lespee iusques es dens. il estort son
the edge of the-sword until to-the teeth he wrenches his
colp et li empereres chiet mors a terre, dont ce fu molt
blow and the emperor falls dead to ground whereof this was very

grans damages, car trop estoit bons cheualiers et gentils
great harm for too was-he good knight and noble
hom. Quant li Romain uirent mort lempereour, Il se
man When the Romans saw dead the-emperor They themselves
desconfissent tot erralment Si tornent en fuies la v il
rout all forthwith So turn-they in flight there where they
puent. Et cil les encauchent ki les ocient et detrencent
can And those them chase who them kill and hack
si cruelment kil nen remest ke cent kil prisent
so cruelly that-it not-thence remained but a-hundred whom-they took
Et cil estoient haus home. Si furent amene deuant le
And those were high men So were-they brought before the
roi Artu et il lor dist: 'vos estes a la mort uenus, Se
king Arthur and he to-them said you are to the death come If
uos ne me fianchies ke uos feres ma uolente'. Et cil li
you not me pledge that you will-do my will And they to-him
fiancent. Et il fait maintenant prendre le cors lempereour et
pledge And he has at-once take the body of-the-emperor and
metre en vne biere, Puis dist as Romains: 'vos enporteres
put on a bier Then said-he to-the Romans you will-carry
uostre enpereour a Romme et dires a ciaus ke uos i
your emperor to Rome and will-say to those whom you there
troueres Que en liu del treu kil demandoient Lor
will-find That in place of-the tribute which-they asked To-them
enuoi ie le cors de lor signor Ne autre treu ne lor
send I the body of their lord Nor other tribute not to-them
rendera ia li rois Artus, tant com il uiue'. Et cil dient
will-render ever the king Arthur so-long as he may-live And they say
ke cest mesage feront il bien. Si se partent atant
that this message will-do they well So themselves part thereupon
del roi et il remaint en la place v la bataille auoit
from-the king and he remains in the place where the battle had

este et i fait tendre son pauillon. Mais atant se taist
been and there has pitch his pavilion But thereupon itself falls-silent
li contes dels et retorne au uallet la roine Genieure.
the tale of-them and returns to-the squire of-the queen Guinevere
Celui ior, ce dist li contes, que li Romain se
That day this says the tale that the Romans themselves
partirent del roi Artu, si com li contes a deuise, auint
departed from-the king Arthur so as the tale has devised happened-it
ke li ualles la roine Genieure ki les nouieles aportoit de
that the squire of-the queen Guinevere who the news brought of
Mordret uint deuant le roi, ki molt estoit a cele eure lies
Mordred came before the king who much was at that hour glad
et ioians de la biele cheance ke Dex li auoit le ior
and joyful from the fair chance which God to-him had the day
donnee, Se ne fust por mon signour Gauain, ki si estoit
given If not were for my lord Gawain who so was
naures kil ueoit bien kil nen pooit escaper sans
wounded that-he saw well that-he not-thence could escape without
mort. Ne me sire Gauains ne se plaignoit de nule cose
death Nor my lord Gawain not himself complained of any thing
kil eust autant com il faisoit de celi del cief kil auoit
which-he had as-much as he did of that of-the head which-he had
recheue a la bataille de Lanselot et de lui; Si len
received at the battle of Lancelot and of him So to-him-thereof
auoient li Romain celui ior tote la dolor renouelee par les
had the Romans that day all the sorrow renewed by the
grans cols kil li auoient done de sor lelme; Et me
great blows which-they to-him had given from upon the-helm And my
sire Gauains i auoit tant pierdu del sanc kil en
lord Gawain there had so-much lost of-the blood that-he thereby
estoit tos pales et si las kil sambloit mieus mors ke
was all pale and so weary that-he seemed better dead than

uis, la v il gisoit en son lit, Si se plaignoit molt
alive there where he lay in his bed So himself complained-he very
durement, car trop lauoit bien fait celui iour en la bataille.
hard for too-much it-had well done that day in the battle
Et se il, ses cors, tot solement ne fust, ia li Romain
And if he his body all alone not had-been ever the Romans
neussent este uencu par ciaus del roialme de Logres.
not-would-have been vanquished by those of-the realm of Logres
Et li ualles, ki uint deuant le roi, le salue et puis li
And the squire who came before the king him greets and then to-him
dist: 'Sire, a vos menuoie ma dame la roine Genieure,
says Lord to you me-sends my lady the queen Guinevere
uostre feme, ki uos mande par moi ke vos laues traie
your wife who you sends-word by me that you her-have betrayed
et decheue, Ne il nest pas remes en uos kele nait
and deceived Nor it not-is at-all remained in you that-she not-may-have
este honie, et ele et tos ses parentes.' Et lors li conte
been shamed both she and all her kindred And then to-him tells-he
comment Mordres a erre et comment il est corones del
how Mordred has fared and how he is crowned of-the
roialme de Logres et li ont fait homages tot li haut
realm of Logres and to-him have done homages all the high
homme ki del roi Artu tenoient terre, en tel maniere
men who from-the king Arthur held land in such manner
ke, se li rois Artus i uenoit iamais, Il ni seroit
that if the king Arthur there came ever He not-there would-be
iamais recheus por signor mais por anemis. Apres li conte
ever received for lord but for enemy After to-him tells-he
coment Mordres a la roine Genieure assis en la tour de
how Mordred has the queen Guinevere besieged in the tower of
Londres et le fait assalir cascun ior. 'et por cou', fet il,
London and her has assail each day and for this says he

'ke ma dame a doutance kil ne le destruise, sil le puet
that my lady has fear that-he — her may-destroy if-he her can
prendre a force, vos mande ele por Diu et por honour de
take by force you sends-word she for God and for honor of
vos meesmes ke uos le secoures au plus uistement ke uos
you yourself that you her may-succor at-the most quickly that you
pores; car, certes, se uos demores, ele sera prise a force,
will-be-able for certainly if you delay she will-be taken by force
v ele uoelle v non. Et il le het si mortelment kil le
whether she may-wish or not And he her hates so mortally that-he her
fera honir del cors — ce sacies uos tot certainement —
will-have shame in-the body this know you all certainly
et, sil auient kil le honisse, uos i aueres honte, car
and if-it happens that-he her may-shame you thereby will-have shame for
uos le deues garantir encontre tous homes morteus.'
you her ought to-protect against all men mortal

News of Mordred's Treason

XXIX

Arthur knows Mordred for the serpent of his old vision, issuing from his belly to burn his land, and swears to kill him with his own hands; the barons understand that Mordred is his son. The host rides for the sea with Gawain on a litter. On the shore Gawain says he will not live eight days and grieves most that he cannot ask Lancelot's pardon. Arthur says Gawain's felony has cost him both of them.

Quant li rois Artus entent ceste parole, il est tant a
When the king Arthur hears this word he is so at
malaise kil ne set kil doie dire ne faire. Et totes
unease that-he not knows what-he may say nor do And all
uoies dist au ualet kil en pensera bien, se Deu plest.
the-same says-he to-the squire that-he thereof will-think well if God please

Et tot maintenant commence a penser molt durement. et
And all at-once begins-he to think very hard and
quant il parole, si dist a cief de piece: 'Ha! Mordret, or
when he speaks so says-he at end of while Ah Mordred now
me fais tu connoistre ke tu ies li serpens ke ie ui ia
me make thou know that thou art the serpent which I saw long
dis en auision issir de mon uentre, ki mardoit toute ma
ago in vision come-out of my belly which burned all my
terre et a moi se prendoit. Mais, certes, onques peres ne
land and on me itself seized But certainly ever father not
fist autant de fil comme ie ferai de toi, car ie tocirai
did so-much to son as I shall-do to thee for I thee-shall-kill
a mes .ij. mains, ce sace tos li siecles, Ne ia Dex
with my two hands this may-know all the world Nor ever God
ne uoele consentir ke tu muires par autres mains ke
not may-wish to-consent that thou may-die by other hands than
par les moies.' Ceste parole orent plusor haut home, ki
by the mine This word had several high men who
molt sen esmeruillierent et ki erralment sorent bien
much themselves-thereof marveled and who forthwith knew well
por la parole ke li rois auoit dite ke Mordres estoit ses
by the word that the king had said that Mordred was his
fils. Si sen esmeruillierent molt durement, de teus
son So themselves-thereof marveled-they very hard of such
i ot. Et li rois commande a ciaus ki entor lui sont
there had And the king commands to those who around him are
kil facent anuit a sauoir par toute lost kil soient
that-they may-make tonight to know through all the-host that-they be
le matin tot apreste de monter, Car li rois, sans doute,
the morning all ready to mount For the king without doubt
sen ira demain uers la mer, por passer el roialme
himself-thence will-go tomorrow toward the sea for to-cross into-the realm

de Logres. Et quant ceste parole fu seue par lost, dont
of Logres And when this word was known through the-host then
ueissies tres et pauillons destendre amont et aual. Et
might-you-have-seen tents and pavilions unpitch up and down And
li rois commande ke on face une biere cheualeresse, v
the king commands that one may-make a bier knightly where
on portera mon signor Gauain, car il nel laissera gaires
one will-carry my lord Gawain for he not-him will-leave much
lonc de lui, sil puet, si ke, Se il muert, il le uieut
far from him if-he can so that If he dies he him wishes
ueir morir, et, sil respasse, de tant sera il plus ioians.
to-see die and if-he recovers by so-much will-be he more joyful
Et cil le font tot ensi comme li rois lot commande.
And they it do all thus as the king it-had commanded

Au matin, si tost comme il fu aiorne, mut toute lost.
In-the morning so soon as it was dawned moved all the-host
Et quant il furent achemine, il cheuauchierent tant par
And when they were set-on-the-way they rode so-much by
lor iornees kil uinrent a la mer. Et lors parla me sire
their days'-journeys that-they came to the sea And then spoke my lord
Gauains et dist a ciaus ki entor lui estoient: 'Ha! Dex,
Gawain and said to those who around him were Ah God
v sui ie?' 'Sire', fait li uns de ses cheualiers, 'nos somes
where am I Lord says the one of his knights we are
sor le riuage de mer.' 'Et quel part', fait il, 'uoles uos aler?'
upon the shore of sea And what way says he wish you to-go
'Sire, nos uolons aler el roialme de Logres.' 'Ha! Dex', fet
Lord we wish to-go into-the realm of Logres Ah God says
me sire Gauains, 'beneois soies uos, quant il vos plaist ke
my lord Gawain blessed be you when it you pleases that
ie uiegne en la terre ke ie ai tant desiree, ains ke ie
I may-come into the land which I have so-much desired before that I

muire!' Lors commence a plorer li cheualiers ki a lui parloit
may-die Then begins to weep the knight who to him spoke
et li dist: 'Ha! sire, quidies vos dont si prochainement
and to-him said Ah lord think you then so soon
morir?' 'oil, uoir', fait il, 'ie sai uraiement ke ie ne uiurai
to-die yes truly says he I know truly that I not shall-live
ia .viij. iors. Si sui plus dolans de ce ke ie ne puis ueoir
ever eight days So am-I more sorrowful from this that I not can see
Lanselot, ains ke ie muire, ke ie ne sui de ma mort. Car,
Lancelot before that I may-die than I — am from my death For
se ie ueisse celui ke ie sai au millor cheualier del monde
if I saw him whom I know for-the best knight of-the world
et au plus cortois et ie li peusse crier mercit de cou ke
and for-the most courteous and I to-him might cry mercy for this that
ie ai este si uilains au derrains enuers lui, il mest auis
I have been so churlish at-the last toward him it to-me-is opinion
ke mame en fust asses plus aise apres ma mort.' Et
that my-soul thereby would-be a-good-deal more at-ease after my death And
li rois Artus soruint iluec, si com me sire Gauains disoit
the king Arthur came-upon there so as my lord Gawain said
ceste parole. Et quant il lentendi, si dist: 'Gauain, biaus
this word And when he it-heard so said-he Gawain fair
nies, Damage molt grant ma fait uostre felonie, car ele
nephew Harm very great me-has done your felony for it
ma vos tolut, qui ie amoie sor tous homes, et Lanselot
me-has you taken-away whom I loved above all men and Lancelot
apres, qui on redoutoit tant ke, se Mordres seust kil
after whom one feared so-much that if Mordred knew that-he
fust ausi bien de moi comme il siut estre, Il ne fust
were as well with me as he was-wont to-be He not would-be
ia si hardis kil eust enprise la grant desloiaute kil a
ever so bold that-he had undertaken the great disloyalty which-he has

encommenchie. or aurai, si comme ie quic, soufraite del
begun now shall-have-I so as I think lack of-the
preudomme et de uos, Cest de ciaus a qui ie me fiasse
worthy-man and of you This-is of those in whom I myself would-trust
plus au grant besoigne, car li desloiaus et li traitres a
most at-the great need for the disloyal and the traitor has
assamble tot le pooir de ma terre a uenir encontre moi. Ha!
assembled all the power of my land to come against me Ah
Dex, se ie seusse ore en ma compaignie ciaus ke ie i
God if I had now in my company those whom I there
soloie auoir, Ie ne doutaisse pas granment tot le monde,
was-wont to-have I not would-fear at-all much all the world
sil fust encontre moi, ke bien nen uenisse au desus'.
if-it were against me that well not-thereof I-might-come on-the top

Gawain's Counsel

XXX

Gawain urges Arthur to send for Lancelot, who loves him and would come at the sight of his seal, and says he himself will not live four days. Arthur grieves, but will not ask, having wronged Lancelot too much. The mariners call the king aboard, and the host crosses to Logres, Arthur grieving more for Gawain, who worsens daily, than for Mordred's treason.

Teus paroles dist li rois iluec, dont me sire Gauains fu trop
Such words said the king there whereof my lord Gawain was too
dolans, quant il sot la uerite de Mordret. Si sefforcha
sorrowful when he knew the truth of Mordred So himself-strove-he
tant de parler, au plus kil pot, et dist: 'Sire, se
so-much to speak at-the most that-he could and said Lord if
uos aues perdu Lanselot, si le recoures par vostre sens.
you have lost Lancelot so him recover by your sense

Legierement le pores retraire entor vos, se uos uoles,
Lightly him will-you-be-able draw-back around you if you wish
car ce est li plus preudom ke ie onques trouaisse et li
for this is the most worthy-man whom I ever found and the
plus debonnaires et si uos aime de si grant amor ke ie sai
most gracious and so you loves with so great love that I know
tot uraiement kil uenra a vos, se vos le mandes; et vos
all truly that-he will-come to you if you him send-for and you
le manderes, se vos men crees, car il vos en est bien
him will-send-for if you me-thereof believe for it to-you thereof is well
mestiers, ce me samble. Ne por fiance que vos aies en
need this me seems Nor for trust which you may-have in
moi ne le laissies mie, car certes iamais ne me verra porter
me not it leave at-all for certainly ever not me will-see bear
armes ne uos ne autres. Quant li rois entent ke me sire
arms neither you nor others When the king hears that my lord
Gauains dist kil nen puet escaper sans mort, Si est tant
Gawain says that-he not-thence can escape without death So is-he so
dolans de ceste parole et tant en fait grant duel kil
sorrowful from this word and so-much thereof makes great grief that-it
na home en la place a qui il nen prenge grans pities.
not-has man in the place to whom it not-thereof may-take great pity
'Biaus nies', fait li rois, 'est il dont ensi que vos nos laires
Fair nephew says the king is it then thus that you us will-leave
en cest point?' 'Sire', fait il, 'oil: Ie sai certainement que ie
in this point Lord says he yes I know certainly that I
ne uiurai ia quart ior'. 'De ce me doi ie plaindre', fait li
not shall-live ever fourth day Of this me ought I to-complain says the
rois, 'car li graindres damages en est miens.' 'Sire', fait me
king for the greater harm thereof is mine Lord says my
sire Gauains, 'totes uoies uos loeroie ie en droit conseil
lord Gawain all the-same you would-advise I in right counsel

ke uos mandissies a Lanselot quil uos uenist secourre
that you should-send to Lancelot that-he to-you should-come to-succor
a cest besoing, et ie sai tot uraiement kil i uenra, si
in this need and I know all truly that-he there will-come so
tost com il uerra uostre saiel, car il vos aime asses plus
soon as he will-see your seal for he you loves a-good-deal more
ke uos ne quidies.' 'Certes', fet li rois, 'ie me sui tant
than you — think Certainly says the king I myself am so-much
meffais vers Lanselot ke ie ne croi mie ke proiere i
misdone toward Lancelot that I not believe at-all that prayer there
peust auoir mestier, et por ce ne len requerrai ie mie.'
could have use and for this not him-thereof shall-ask I at-all
Atant uinrent li maronnier au roi et li disent:
Thereupon came the mariners to-the king and to-him said
'Sire, quant il vos plaira, vos enterres en uostre nef, car
Lord when it you will-please you will-enter into your ship for
nos auons tot apareilliet cou ka nos apiertient Et li uens
we have all prepared this which to-us belongs And the wind
est leues bons et fors et bien portans, et, certes, se uos
is risen good and strong and well bearing and certainly if you
demores granment plus, ce pora estre molt grans folie'.
delay much more this will-be-able be very great folly
Atant fist li rois prendre mon signor Gauain et le fist
Thereupon had the king take my lord Gawain and him had
porter en la nef et le fist couchier au plus aaise kil
carry into the ship and him had lay at-the most easy that-they
porent cil qui de lui seruir et aaisier sentremetoient. Apres
could those who of him to-serve and to-ease themselves-undertook After
entrent dedens si priue baron et misent auoec aus lor armes
enter within his privy barons and put with them their arms
et lor cheuaus, Si kil les prendront tot prestement, se
and their horses So that-they them will-take all readily if

mestiers lor est, quant il seront ariuet. et tot li autre
need to-them is when they will-be arrived and all the other
baron entrent es autres nes et tot lor homme auoec
barons enter into-the other ships and all their men with
aus. Si sen reuint en tel maniere li rois Artus ariere
them So himself-thence returned in such manner the king Arthur back
en sa terre, molt dolans et molt couroucies de la grant
into his land very sorrowful and very angered by the great
desloiaute que Mordres a porcachie uers lui. Mais molt
disloyalty which Mordred has pursued toward him But much
plus li poise de monsignor Gauain, kil uoit cascun
more to-him grieves-it of my-lord Gawain whom-he sees each
ior enpirier molt durement et aprochier de la fin, ke
day worsen very hard and approach to the end than
dautre cose nule ki auenue li soit; car ce est li dieus
of-other thing any which happened to-him may-be for this is the grief
ki ne le laisse reposer ne ior ne nuit. Mais atant
which not him lets rest neither day nor night But thereupon
laisse ore li contes a parler de lui et retorne a Mordret.
leaves now the tale to speak of him and returns to Mordred

Mordred's Muster

XXXI

Mordred has battered the tower of London a long while, and has won the barons of Ireland, Scotland, and Logres with Arthur's own treasure. A messenger tells him Arthur has landed and will be at London within eight days. His counselors advise meeting the king and demanding that he leave the land, and fighting if he refuses. The barons swear to stand by him, and at dawn Mordred leaves London with ten thousand men.

Or dist li contes ke tant longement tint Mordres le siege
Now says the tale that so long held Mordred the siege
entour la tor de Londres ke molt en fu la tours enpirie
around the tower of London that much thereby was the tower impaired
et maumise en maint liu, car maintes fois i ot fait
and damaged in many-a place for many times there had-he made
gieter a la perriere et au mangoniel grandismes cols et
cast with the petrary and with-the mangonel very-great blows and
grans pieces, et furent asali souent; dont il ne peussent
great pieces and were-they assailed often whereby they not could
en nule maniere tant durer com il durerent, se ne fust cou
in any manner so-long last as they lasted if not were this
kil se deffendoient si uighereusement. Et entre tant
that-they themselves defended so vigorously And between so-much
comme li sieges dura, ne fina onques Mordres de mander les
as the siege lasted not ceased ever Mordred to summon the
haus hommes d'Irlande et d'Escoce ki de lui tenoient terre.
high men of-Ireland and of-Scotland who from him held land
Et quant il furent uenut, il lor donna si biaus dons et
And when they were come he to-them gave so fair gifts and
lor faisoit si biele chiere et si biau samblant lor faisoit
to-them made so fair cheer and so fair semblance to-them made-he

et mostroit damour ke cil en estoient tot esbahi. Si les
and showed of-love that they thereby were all amazed So them
conquist en tel maniere si sagement ke cil sotroierent si
won-he in such manner so wisely that they themselves-granted so
del tot a lui kil disoient bien deuant et deriere kil
of-the all to him that-they said well before and behind that-they
ne lairoient por nului kil ne li aidassent contre tos
not would-leave for anyone that-they not him would-help against all
homes, nes encontre le roi Artu, sil estoit ensi ke auenture
men even against the king Arthur if-he were thus that adventure
le raportast iamais en la terre ne el roialme de Logres.
him brought-back ever into the land nor into-the realm of Logres
Ensi torna Mordres a sa partie tos les haus homes del
Thus turned Mordred to his party all the high men of-the
paijs ki del roi Artu tenoient lor terres et les tint
country who from-the king Arthur held their lands and them held
auoec lui grant tans; et il le pooit bien faire, car li rois
with him great time and he it could well do for the king
Artus li auoit laissie a garder tos ses tresors, v kil
Arthur to-him had left to keep all his treasures where that-they
fussent, et dautre part tous li siecles li donnoit et
were and on-the-other side all the world to-him gave and
li aportoit. Et il le tenoient a trop bien enploiet por
to-him brought And they it held for too well employed for
la grant larghece kil ueoient en lui. vn ior auint
the great largess which-they saw in him one day happened-it
kil ot fait asalir la tour de Londres trop uighereusement
that-he had made assail the tower of London too vigorously
se li auint adont ke uns siens messages uint a lui et
so to-him happened-it then that a his-own messenger came to him and
se li dist a conseil: ‘Sir, nouieles uos sai a dire molt
so to-him said in secret Lord news you know-I to tell very

meruilleuses. Li rois Artus est ariues en ceste terre atot
marvelous The king Arthur is arrived in this land with-all
son pooir et uient sor uos atot molt grant gent. se uos
his power and comes upon you with-all very great people if you
le uoles atendre, uos pores ueoir dedens .viij. iors tot
him wish to-await you will-be-able see within eight days all
son effort. Si ne poes falir a bataille, se vos latendes, car
his force So not can-you fail of battle if you him-await for
il ne uient sor uos por autre cose. or gardes ke uos en
he not comes upon you for other thing now consider what you thereof
feres, car, se vos naues bon conseil, uos i pores tost
will-do for if you not-have good counsel you there will-be-able soon
pierdre'. Quant Mordres ot ceste nouiele, il est molt dolans
to-lose When Mordred heard this news he is very sorrowful
et en deuint tos esbahis et esperdus, car trop doutoit
and thereby became all amazed and distraught for too-much feared-he
le roi Artu et son effort. et meesment il a grant paour
the king Arthur and his force and especially he has great fear
ke sa desloiautes ne li nuise plus cautre cose si se
that his disloyalty — him may-harm more than-other thing so himself
conseille de ceste cose a ciaus v il plus se fioit
counsels-he of this thing with those in-whom he most himself trusted
et lor demande kil en pora faire. Et il dient:
and to-them asks what-he thereof will-be-able do And they say
'sire, nos ne vos sauons autre conseil donner, fors ke vos
lord we not you know-how other counsel to-give except that you
assambles vos homes et li ales a lencontre et li requeres,
may-assemble your men and him go to the-meeting and him may-ask
v par vos v par autre, kil wide uostre terre, dont
either by you or by other that-he may-empty your land whereof
li preudomme de cest pais vos ont saisi et rauestu par
the worthy-men of this country you have invested and re-vested by

le commun assentement de tous. Et sil au widier la
the common assent of all And if-he to-the emptying-of the
terre ne se uieut acorder, vos aues molt plus gent kil
land not himself wishes to-agree you have much more people than-he
nait, si uos combates a lui tot segurement. Et ie uos di
has so you fight with him all surely And I you tell
vraiement ke ia si home naront uers vos duree, a cou
truly that ever his men not-will-have against you endurance for this
kil sont las et traueilliet et nos somes fres et repose
that-they are weary and toiled and we are fresh and rested
si ne portames armes des grant pieche a. Et ancois ke
so not bore-we arms since great while it-has And before that
uos partes de chi, enqueres a uos barons sil sacordent a
you depart from here inquire of your barons if-they agree to
la bataille, et ie croi kil ni auera autre cose ke ce
the battle and I believe that-it not-there will-have other thing than this
ke ie uos ai dit.' Et Mordres dist ke tot ensi le fera il.
which I you have said And Mordred said that all thus it will-do he
Atant mande Mordres tos les barons par deuant lui et
Thereupon summons Mordred all the barons by before him and
tos les haus homes del pais. Et quant il i furent uenut
all the high men of-the country And when they there were come
et il lor ot dit ke li rois Artus uenoit sor aus atot son
and he to-them had said that the king Arthur came upon them with-all his
ost et ia estoit si aprochies kil seroit a Londres dedens
host and already was so approached that-he would-be at London within
.viij. iors, Cil ki la estoient disent a Mordret: 'Sire, ke
eight days Those who there were said to Mordred Lord what
vos caille de sa uenue? onques ne vos en esmaies, car
you may-trouble of his coming ever not you thereof be-dismayed for
plus aues uos homes quil na et de bons cheualiers. Si les
more have you men than-he has and of good knights So them

assambles et les faites armer et ales seurement encontre lui,
assemble and them have arm and go surely against him
et sil ne sen uieut aler en Gaule, dont il uient, et
and if-he not himself-thence wishes to-go into Gaul whence he comes and
widier vostre terre, Il ne puet falir a la plus grant bataille
to-empty your land He not can fail of the most great battle
kil onques trouast; car nos somes grans gens et bonne
that-he ever found for we are great people and good
cheualerie, ki metrons tos nos cors en auenture de mort,
chivalry who shall-put all our bodies in adventure of death
ancois ke nos ne uos garandissons tote la terre ke nos uos
rather than we not you may-protect all the land which we you
auons donnee. et sacies tot uraiement ke ia ne uos faurons,
have given and know all truly that ever not you shall-we-fail
tant ke nos peussons armes porter'. Quant Mordres entent
so-long as we may arms bear When Mordred hears
kil sahatissent tot de combatre, Si est molt lies de grant
that-they themselves-pledge all to fight So is-he very glad in great
maniere Si les en mercie tos molt debonairement Et bien
manner So them thereof thanks-he all very graciously And well
lor promet ke, se Dex lor donne lonnor de la bataile,
to-them promises-he that if God to-them gives the-honor of the battle
Il le merira a tos selonc son pooir. Puis lor commande
He it will-reward to all according-to his power Then to-them commands-he
kil prengent tot lor armes, car il ni a ke demorer;
that-they may-take all their arms for it not-there is but to-stay
car il uolra estre a lencontrer del roi Artu, ancois kil
for he will-wish to-be at the-meeting of-the king Arthur before that-he
soit molt auant en la terre et ains kil ait granment
may-be much forward in the land and before that-he may-have much
la terre damagie. Lors font la nouiele sauoir par tot le
the land harmed Then make-they the news known through all the

pais et dient kil moueront le matin a aler sor le roi
country and say that-they will-set-out the morning to go upon the king
Artu. Si font apareillier lor armes et commandent a lor
Arthur So have-they prepare their arms and command to their
escuiers kil gardent bien kil ne lor faille riens. Cele
squires that-they may-see well that-it not to-them may-lack anything That
nuit sont en paine et en trauail diaus aparellier, et li
night are-they in pain and in toil of-themselves to-prepare both the
un et li autre, et a lendemain, si tost com il fu aiorne,
ones and the others and on the-next-day so soon as it was dawned
se partent de Londres. et esmerent lor gent combien
themselves depart-they from London and reckoned their people how-many
il pooient estre si trouerent kil estoient .x. Mile,
they could be so found-they that-they were ten Thousand
ke a piet ke a ceual, et sacheminent en tel maniere
as-much on foot as on horse and set-out in such manner
encontre le roi Artu cele part v il le quident trouer.
against the king Arthur that way where they him think to-find

The Queen's Flight

XXXII

The queen learns that Arthur has landed and that Mordred has marched against him. She tells her cousin she cannot escape death: if Mordred wins he will kill her, and if Arthur wins he will never believe Mordred did not have her. The cousin bids her pray for the king's victory and his mercy. At dawn she leaves the tower with two damsels, two squires, and two pack horses of treasure, for an abbey of nuns her ancestors founded.

Quant Mordres se fu en tel maniere partis de Londres,
When Mordred himself was in such manner departed from London
entre lui et sa gent, bien orent seu cil de la tour la
between him and his men well had known those of the tower the
nouiele del roi Artu, ki estoit ariues en la terre, et ke
news of-the king Arthur who was arrived in the land and that
cil saloient conbatre encontre lui. Il le dient a la roine
those themselves-went to-fight against him They it say to the queen
Et ele fu de ceste cose lie et dolente — Lie, por cou
And she was by this thing glad and sorrowful Glad for this
kele se fu deliuree de ceste auenture, Et dolante del
that-she herself was freed from this adventure And sorrowful for-the
roi Artu, dont ele a trop grant paour kil ne muire en
king Arthur of-whom she has too great fear that-he — may-die in
ceste bataille. Puis commence a penser molt durement et en
this battle Then begins-she to think very hard and in
cel pense li caient les larmes des iex si est si amalaise
that thought to-her fall the tears from-the eyes so is-she so ill-at-ease
kele ne set quel conseil ele puisse prendre de soi. en cel
that-she not knows what counsel she may take for herself in that
penser v ele estoit uint ses cousins deuant li. Et quant
thinking where she was came her cousin before her And when

il le uit plorer, si en fu molt amalaise se li dist:
he her saw weep so thereby was-he very ill-at-ease so to-her said
'Ha! dame, caues uos por Diu? dites le moi, sil uos plaist
Ah lady what-have you for God tell it me if-it you pleases
ke nus le sace. Et, certes, se ce est cose dont ie uos
that none it may-know And certainly if this is thing whereof I you
sace consillier, ie uos en consillerai a mon pooir.'
may-know-how to-counsel I you thereof shall-counsel to my power
'dont le uos dirai ie', fait la roine. 'En cest esmai v ie
then it you shall-tell I says the queen In this dismay where I
sui mont mises ces .ij. coses ke ie uoi en mon afaire. Si
am much put these two things which I see in my affair So
sont asses perilleuses, car ie connois tot apertement ke, se
are-they a-good-deal perilous for I know all openly that if
me sire li rois est outres en ceste bataille, Mordres mocira
my lord the king is overcome in this battle Mordred me-will-kill
tot maintenant kil sera reuenus, ke ia nen prendra
all at-once that-he will-be returned that ever not-thereof will-he-take
raenchon. et sil auient cose que me sires ait uictore et
ransom and if-it happens thing that my lord may-have victory and
honor de ceste bataille, il ne pora croire en nule maniere
honor of this battle he not will-be-able believe in any manner
ke Mordres ne mait conneue carneument, por la grant
that Mordred not me-may-have known carnally for the great
force kil a faite de moi auoir; par coi ie sai bien tot
force which-he has made of me to-have for which I know well all
ciertainement kil mocira, si tost com il me pora as
certainly that-he me-will-kill so soon as he me will-be-able in-the
puins tenir. et par ces .ij. coses poes uos ueoir apertement
fists hold and by these two things can you see openly
ke ie ne puis escaper sans mort, v dune part v dautre,
that I not can escape without death either on-one side or on-the-other

si tost comme ceste morteus bataille sera menee a fin.
so soon as this mortal battle will-be brought to end
or esgardes ke ie atenc et se ie puis granment iestre lie.'
now consider what I await and if I can much be glad
Quant cil entent ceste parole, se ne li set ke
When he hears this word so not to-her knows-he what
consillier de ceste cose, car il i uoit sa mort de totes
to-counsel of this thing for he there sees her death from all
pars apertement. Se li respont: 'dame, se Diu plaist, me
sides openly So to-her answers-he lady if God please my
sire li rois ara grignor mercit de uos ke uos ne quidies.
lord the king will-have greater mercy on you than you — think
Si ne uos esmaies pas si durement, car en lesmai ne
So not you be-dismayed at-all so hard for in the-dismay not
pories uos rien gaaignier, fors male auenture, Mais proies a
could you anything gain except ill adventure But pray to
Nostre Signor kil doinst au roi Artu uictore et honour
Our Lord that-he may-give to-the king Arthur victory and honor
en ceste bataille et kil uos pardoinst son courouc, sil
in this battle and that-he you may-pardon his anger if-it
est ensi kil ait enuers vos felenesse uolente.' 'Coment',
is thus that-he may-have toward you cruel will How
fait la roine, 'kil mauiegne de trouer merchi enuers lui,
says the queen that-it me-may-befall to find mercy toward him
Nostre Signor proi ie et requier comme pecheresse kil
Our Lord pray I and ask as sinner that-he
li doinst honour en ceste bataille et kil gart son
to-him may-give honor in this battle and that-he may-guard his
cors de mort et dencombrier.' Cele nuit dormi la roine
body from death and from-hindrance That night slept the queen
petit et reposa si comme cele ki nestoit pas aise Mais
little and rested so as she who not-was at-all at-ease But

espoentee durement, car ele ne ueoit de nule part sa sauete.
frightened hard for she not saw from any side her safety
Au matin, si tost com il fu aiorne, ele se leua et
In-the morning so soon as it was dawned she herself raised and
esuilla .ij. de ses damoisieles, celes de qui ele amoit mieus
woke two of her damsels those of whom she loved best
la compaignie et en qui ele se fioit plus. Et quant
the company and in whom she herself trusted most And when
eles se furent uestues et apareillies, ele les fist monter
they themselves were dressed and made-ready she them had mount
cascune sor .i. palefroi et ele meesmes en monta sor .i.
each upon a palfrey and she herself thereon mounted upon one
et enmena .ij. escuiers auoec li et en fist conduire fors
and led-away two squires with her and thence had lead out
de la tour .ij. somiers, tos cargies dor et dargent. ensi
of the tower two pack-horses all laden with-gold and with-silver thus
garnie et a tel compaignie, comme de .ij. damoisieles et
furnished and with such company as of two damsels and
de .ij. escuiers, se parti la roine de Londres. et quant
of two squires herself departed the queen from London and when
ele se fu mise au chemin, ele cheuaucha iusques a une
she herself was put on-the road she rode as-far to a
forest, ki pres diluec estoit, v il auoit vne abeie de
forest which near from-there was where it had an abbey of
nonains ke ses anchiestres auoit commenchie et estoree.
nuns which her ancestors had founded and endowed

The Queen in the Abbey

XXXIII

The queen asks to take the veil. The abbess refuses while Arthur lives, fearing him, and doubts the queen could bear the order. When the queen warns that her soul and body will be on the abbess's head if harm befalls her elsewhere, the abbess counsels her to stay hidden until the battle is decided, and to take the habit only if Mordred wins. She hides her in a secret chamber, and the tower's defenders scatter.

Quant la roine fu laiens uenue, les dames le rechurent si
When the queen was in-there come the ladies her received so
hautement comme on deuoit tel dame recheuoir, Et ele fist
highly as one ought such lady to-receive And she had
laiens descargier tot le tresor kele auoit fait laiens aporter
in-there unload all the treasure which-she had had in-there brought
auoec li. Puis dist as damoisieles ki auoec lui estoient
with her Then said-she to-the damsels who with her were
uenues: 'Damoiseles, sil uos plaist, uos uos en ires, et,
come Damsels if-it you pleases you yourselves thence will-go and
sil uos plest, vos remanres, car de moi vos aseur ie bien
if-it you pleases you will-remain for of me you assure I well
ke ie ne me partirai iamais de chaiens, tant comme ie
that I not myself shall-depart ever from in-here so-long as I
soie uiue, ains i serai velee et serors as dames et
may-be alive rather there shall-be veiled and sister to-the ladies and
i vserai, se Diu plest, le remanant de ma vie, car autresi
there shall-use if God please the remnant of my life for likewise
fist ma dame ma mere, la roine de Tarmelide.' Quant
did my lady my mother the queen of Carmelide When
les damoisieles entendent cou ke la roine lor dist, Si
the damsels hear this which the queen to-them says So

commencent a plorer molt tenrement. Puis li dient: 'dame,
begin-they to weep very tenderly Then to-her say-they lady
ia, se Diu plest, ceste honor ne recheures uos ia sans
ever if God please this honor not will-receive you ever without
nous, car tot autresi comme nos uos fesimes compaignie au
us for all likewise as we you made company in-the
siecle, uos ferons nos compaignie en cest ordene; Car por
world you shall-make we company in this order For for
le preu de nos armes et por lonour de uos enterrons nos
the benefit of our souls and for the-honor of you shall-enter we
en ceste religion.' Et la roine dist ke ceste compaignie uieut
into this religion And the queen said that this company wishes
ele molt; et molt en est lie dedens son cuer. Lors uint
she much and much thereof is glad within her heart Then came
labbesse auant, et, si tost com ele uit sa dame, la roine,
the-abbess forward and so soon as she saw her lady the queen
se li fist molt grant ioie et molt grant feste, si comme
so to-her made very great joy and very great feast so as
a sa dame. Et la roine li requist tot maintenant lordene
to her lady And the queen to-her asked all at-once the-order
de laiens. 'Dame', fait labeesse, 'se mesire li rois Artus fust
of in-there Lady says the-abbess if my-lord the king Arthur were
trespasses de cest siecle, nos uos recheussons molt uolentiers
passed from this world we you would-receive very willingly
et a dame et a compaigne de cheens, Mais, tant com
and as lady and as companion of in-here But so-long as
il uesquist, ne vos oseriemes nos pas recheuoir, car il nos
he might-live not you would-dare we at-all receive for he us
destruiroit, sans faille, si tost com il le saroit. Et encore
would-destroy without fail so soon as he it would-know And still
i a il, dame, autre cose, car sachies pour uoir ke, se nos
there has it lady other thing for know for truth that if we

vos auiens ore recheue, vos ne pories soufrir lordene, car
you had now received you not could suffer the-order for
trop i a grant trauail et grant paine, meesment a vos,
too-much there has great toil and great pain especially to you
dame, ki aues apris a auoir tos les deduis et totes les aises
lady who have learned to have all the delights and all the comforts
del monde.' 'Dame', fait la roine, 'se uos ne me retenes,
of-the world Lady says the queen if you not me keep
sacies tot uraiement kil en sera noaus a uos et a moi;
know all truly that-it thereby will-be worse to you and to me
car, se ie men uois de chi et il me mesauient par aucune
for if I me-thence go from here and it me befalls-ill by some
auenture, Li damages en sera miens, et Nostre Sire, li
adventure The harm thereof will-be mine and Our Lord the
rois des cieus, le vos demandera — de cou soies uos toute
king of-the heavens it you will-ask of this be you all
certaine — la pierte de mame et de mon cors, car par
certain the loss of my-soul and of my body for by
uostre defaute me sera il mesauenut, sil me mesauient.'
your default to-me will-be it befallen-ill if-it me befalls-ill

Tant dist la roine a cele fois a labeesse de laiens kele
So-much said the queen at that time to the-abbess of in-there that-she
ne set prendre conseil de respondre ne ne set ke faire
not knows-how to-take counsel to answer nor not knows what to-do
de ceste cose en nule maniere, car ele doute trop le roi
about this thing in any manner for she fears too-much the king
Artu, sil uient et il sace kele ait la roine recheue
Arthur if-he comes and he may-know that-she may-have the queen received
a nonain, Et dautre part ele redoute la pierte la roine
as nun And on-the-other side she fears-in-turn the loss of-the queen
trop durement, car ele uoit tot apiertement, sele se depart
too hard for she sees all openly if-she herself departs

de laiens et ele uoist en autre liu, kil est molt grans
from in-there and she may-go into other place that-it is very great
perius de lui, a ce ke la terre ne li pais nest mie saus,
peril for her for this that the land nor the country not-is at-all safe
ainst est en guerre et en ocoison. ensi est labeesse de
rather is in war and in trouble thus is the-abbess about
ceste cose en grant doutance et en grant soupechon ne
this thing in great doubt and in great suspicion nor
ne set lequel ele doie faire, v le tenir v le laissier. Et
not knows which she ought to-do either her to-keep or her to-leave And
coi ke ele estoit en cele soupechon, la roine le traist a
while that she was in that suspicion the queen her drew to
une part Se li moustre langousse et le paour kele a,
one side So to-her shows-she the-anguish and the fear which-she has
por coi ele se uieut rendre. 'Dame', fait labeesse, quant
for which she herself wishes to-render Lady says the-abbess when
ele la entendue, 'sor ceste cose uos conseillerai ie molt
she her-has heard on this thing you shall-counsel I very
bien, se uos uoles mon conseil croire. Ie uos dirai ke uos
well if you wish my counsel to-believe I you shall-tell what you
feres: vos remanres chaiens uoirement, tant ke uos sares a
will-do you will-remain in-here truly until that you will-know to
quel fin ceste bataille uenra et li quels aura uictore, v
what end this battle will-come and the which will-have victory either
Mordres v li rois, nostre sires; et sil auenoit par aucune
Mordred or the king our lord and if-it happened by some
mescheance ke Mordres uenist au desus de mon signor le
mischance that Mordred came on-the top of my lord the
roi Artu et kil uenquist ceste bataille — ki nauenra
king Arthur and that-he vanquished this battle which not-will-happen
ia, se Deu plest — si tost comme uos le saries, Lors
ever if God please so soon as you it would-know Then

pories uos tot a tans prendre les dras de religion et entrer
could you all in time take the cloths of religion and enter
del tot en lordene; et, se Dex otroie ke me sire li rois
of-the all into the-order and if God grants that my lord the king
Artus en ait le millour et lonor et la uictore et
Arthur thereof may-have the best and the-honor and the victory and
reuiegne, haities et sains, Ie uos creanc loiaument ke ie
may-return healthy and sound I you promise loyally that I
ferai si bien uostre pais enuers lui ke uos onques en
shall-make so well your peace toward him that you ever in
uostre uie ne fustes de lui ausi bien ke uos nen soies
your life not were with him as well that you not-thereof may-be
encore mieus. Si remanes en tel maniere chaiens, se uos
still better So remain in such manner in-here if you
men crees. et ie le vos loe ensi en bonne foi'. Et la
me-thereof believe and I it you advise thus in good faith And the
roine respont, quant ele entent ceste parole, ke cis consaus
queen answers when she hears this word that this counsel
est et bons et loiaus et ensi le fera ele.
is both good and loyal and thus it will-do she

En tel maniere remest la roine Genieure en la maison de
In such manner remained the queen Guinevere in the house of
religion, et ele et ses damoiseles. Et si i demora por la
religion both she and her damsels And so there stayed-she for the
grant paour kele auoit de Mordret et del roi Artu. Et
great fear which-she had of Mordred and of-the king Arthur And
labeesse de laiens lor fist liurer une cambre si secree quil
the-abbess of in-there to-them had deliver a chamber so secret that-there
nestoit ne hom ne feme ki les i seust fors labeesse
not-was neither man nor woman who them there might-know except the-abbess
et deus de ses nonains, ki estoient de son priue conseil. Et
and two of her nuns who were of her privy counsel And

cil ki estoient remes en la tour de Londres, quant il uirent
those who were remained in the tower of London when they saw
que la roine les auoit laissies et sen estoit partie en
that the queen them had left and herself-thence was departed in
tel maniere, il issirent fors au plus bielement kil onques
such manner they went-out out at-the most fairly that-they ever
porent et ala cascuns a Garison la v il pot mieus, car il
could and went each to Safety there where he could best for they
ne trouerent ki lor deffendist. Si ne sot nus hom ke la
not found who to-them might-forbid So not knew any man what the
roine fu deuenue, fors ke labeesse et ses nonains, ki lauoient
queen was become except that the-abbess and her nuns who her-had
recheue en lor religion. Mais atant laisse ore li contes a
received in their religion But thereupon leaves now the tale to
parler de lui ichi endroit et retorne a conter del roi Artu.
speak of her here in-place and returns to tell of-the king Arthur

The Death of Gawain

XXXIV

Arthur lands at Dover, where his people had believed him dead, and swears Mordred will die for the forged letter. Gawain, dying, warns him not to fight Mordred, by whom he will die if he dies by any man. He sends his greeting to the queen, begs Lancelot's mercy, and asks to lie with Gaheriet under an inscription that blames his own outrage. He dies praying, and Arthur laments that Fortune, once his mother, is now his stepmother.

Or dist li contes ke, quant li rois Artus se fu mis en
Now says the tale that when the king Arthur himself was put to
mer, por passer el roiaume de Logres, por destruire et
sea for to-cross into-the kingdom of Logres for to-destroy and

escillier Mordret, il ot bon uent et fort ki tost lot
to-exile Mordred he had good wind and strong which soon him-had
outre porte et toute sa gent auoec lui, Si kil arriuerent,
over carried and all his men with him So that-they arrived
sain et haitie, de sous le castiel de Douure. et quant il
sound and healthy from below the castle of Dover and when they
furent uenu a riue et il orent ostees des nes lor armes
were come to shore and they had taken from-the ships their arms
et lor harnois, Li rois fist sauoir a ciaus de Doure kil
and their harness The king had know to those of Dover that-he
estoit uenus et kil ourissent le porte et le recheussent
was come and that-they should-open the gate and him should-receive
laiens; et cil si fisent a molt grant ioie et a molt grant
in-there and they so did with very great joy and with very great
feste, si comme lor signor, et li disent kil quidoient
feast so as their lord and to-him said that-they thought
tot uraiement kil fust mors et ke Lanselos leust ocis,
all truly that-he were dead and that Lancelot him-had killed
car ensi le disoit uns mesagiers ki letres en aportoit
for thus it said a messenger who letters thereof brought
del roialme de Gaunes, si com il faisoit entendant. ‘or
from-the realm of Gaunes so as he made understanding now
poes sauoir’, fait li rois, ‘ke les letres furent fausses Et
can-you know says the king that the letters were false And
cil leres et desloiaus ki les fist. Et se Dex me donne
he thief and disloyal who them made And if God me gives
uie et sante .xv. iors, ie le mousterrai bien au traitour,
life and health fifteen days I it shall-show well to-the traitor
au desloial, ke ie ne sui pas mors. et sacies bien’, fait
to-the disloyal that I not am at-all dead and know well says
il, ‘ke toute ceste desloiaute a pourcachie Mordres, dont
he that all this disloyalty has pursued Mordred whereof

il morra, se ie onques puis, comme cil ki pariures est
he will-die if I ever can as he who perjured is
et desloiaus uers Deu et uers son signor lige terriien.'
and disloyal toward God and toward his lord liege earthly
Celui iour meesmes, entour eure de prime, dist mesire
That day itself around hour of prime said my-lord
Gauains a ciaus ki entour lui estoient: 'ales dire mon signour
Gawain to those who around him were go tell my lord
le roi Artu, mon oncle, kil uiegne a moi, car ie me muir'.
the king Arthur my uncle that-he may-come to me for I me die
Cil uienent au roi et li dient ce ke me sire Gauains
They come to-the king and to-him say this which my lord Gawain
li mande. Et li rois i uient maintenant. Et quant il
to-him sends And the king there comes at-once And when he
i est uenus, il trueue mon signor Gauain si ataint ke nus
there is come he finds my lord Gawain so reached that any
nen puet mais parole traire, Mais nanporquant, quant il
not-thence can more word draw But nevertheless when he
oij le roi ki demenoit sor lui si grant duel, si ouri les
heard the king who led over him so great grief so opened-he the
iex et li dist si com il pot: 'Sire, ie me muir. por Diu,
eyes and to-him said so as he could Lord I me die for God
se vos vos poes garder dassambler encontre Mordret, si
if you yourself can guard from-joining-battle against Mordred so
vos en gardes, car ie uos di certainement ke, se uos mores
you thereof guard for I you tell certainly that if you die
par nul home, vos morres par lui. Et madame la roine,
by any man you will-die by him And my-lady the queen
qui ie ne uerrai iamais, ce sai ie bien, me salues comme
whom I not shall-see ever this know I well me greet as
la plus vaillant dame et la plus cortoise ke ie onques
the most valiant lady and the most courteous whom I ever

trouaisse. et uos signor ki chi estes, dont il i a aucun
found and you lords who here are whereof it there has some
ki encore, se Deu plest, uerra Lanselot, dites lui ke ie le
who still if God please will-see Lancelot tell him that I him
salu sor tous les cheualiers ke ie ueisse onques et li
greet above all the knights whom I saw ever and to-him
cri merchi de la grant felonie que ie li ai moustree vers
cry mercy for the great felony which I to-him have shown toward
ma fin. Et se Nostre Sires oi onques parole de pecheour
my end And if Our Lord heard ever word of sinner
ne proiere, ie li proi kil le gart et maintiegne
nor prayer I him pray that-he him may-guard and maintain
longement en tel estat comme ie le sai, car, certes, quant
long in such state as I him know for certainly when
il falra, li pilers de ceualerie sera fondus. et por Diu
he will-fail the pillar of chivalry will-be fallen and for God
proijes lui kil ne laist en nule maniere kil ne uiegne
pray him that-he not may-leave in any manner that-he not may-come
ueoir ma tombe, quant il sara ke ie serai trespasses, car
to-see my tomb when he will-know that I shall-be passed for
toutes uoies, por ce ke ie li ai este crueus, au derrain
all the-same for this that I to-him have been cruel at-the last
ne remandra il pas kil ne li prenge de moi aucune pities
not will-remain it at-all that-it not him may-take for me some pity
et de la bonne compaignie ke ie li portai lonc tans'.
and for the good company which I to-him bore long time
Apres cou dist me sire Gauains au roi: 'Sire, ie uos
After this said my lord Gawain to-the king Lord I you
requier ke vos me faites entierer en leglise mon signor
ask that you me may-have bury in the-church of-my lord
Saint Estieuene de Chamaalot auoec mes freres et uoel estre
Saint Stephen of Camelot with my brothers and wish to-be

en cele meesme tombe v li cors de Gaheriet, mon frere, fu
in that same tomb where the body of Gaheriet my brother was
mis, car il fu li hom morteus ke ie mius amai; por coi ie
put for he was the man mortal whom I best loved for which I
uoel ke nostre os soient en vne sepulture. et escrisies desus
wish that our bones may-be in one sepulcher and write upon
la lame: Chi ghist Gauains et Gaheries, ke Lanselos del
the slab Here lies Gawain and Gaheriet whom Lancelot of-the
Lac ocist par lor outrage. Cest escrit uiol ge kil i soit
Lake killed by their outrage This writing wish I that-it there may-be
Si ke ie soie blasmes de ma mort, ensi com ie lai deserui.'
So that I may-be blamed for my death thus as I it-have deserved
Li rois, ki trop faisoit grant duel, quant il oi ce ke me
The king who too-much made great grief when he heard this which my
sire Gauains dist, Se li demande: 'Coment? biaus nies', fait
lord Gawain said So to-him asks-be How fair nephew says
il. 'iestes vos dont uenus a la mort par Lanselot?' 'Sire, oil'
he are you then come to the death by Lancelot Lord yes
fait mesire Gauains. 'la plaie que il me fist el chief ma
says my-lord Gawain the wound which he me made in-the head me-has
donne la mort. Et nanporquant ie croi bien ke ie fuisse
given the death And nevertheless I believe well that I would-be
tos garis, Mais li Romain, a qui nos nos combatimes,
all healed But the Romans with whom we ourselves fought
le me renouelerent tote, dont ie me muir orendroit.'
it me renewed all whereof I me die now

Apres ceste parole mesire Gauains ne dist riens ke nus
After this word my-lord Gawain not said anything that any-one
oist onques puis, fors tant kil dist au derrain: 'Ihesu
heard ever after except so-much that-he said at-the last Jesus
Christ, Sire, uos proi ie ke uos ne me iugies mie selonc
Christ Lord you pray I that you not me may-judge at-all according-to

mes fais.' et lors trespassa del siecle, ses mains croisies
my deeds and then passed-be from-the world his hands crossed
sor son pis. Li rois en pleure et fait grant duel et se
upon his breast The king thereat weeps and makes great grief and himself
pasme sor lui souent et menu et tire ses cauiaus et sa
swoons upon him often and repeatedly and pulls his hair and his
barbe, ki tote estoit blance de caaines, et se claime las
beard which all was white with whiteness and himself calls weary
et caitis, dolereus rois, et dist si ke tot loirent: 'Ha! Artu,
and wretched sorrowful king and said so that all it-heard Ah Arthur
rois mescheans et maleureus! Or pues tu bien dire ke tu
king unfortunate and ill-starred Now canst thou well say that thou
es el monde remes ausi nus et ausi despoillies damis
art in-the world remained as bare and as stripped of-friends
carneus comme est li arbres de ses fuelles, quant la force
of-the-flesh as is the tree of its leaves when the force
de la gielee li est soruenue. Ha! fortune, cose contraire
of the frost to-it is come-upon Ah fortune thing contrary
et peruerse, la plus desloiaus cose ki el monde soit!
and perverse the most disloyal thing which in-the world may-be
por coi me fustu onques si debonnaire ne si amiable, por
for why to-me wert-thou ever so gracious nor so friendly for
uendre le moi si chier au derrain? Tu me fus iadis mere
to-sell it me so dear at-the last Thou to-me wert formerly mother
et masesis el plus haut de ta roe. Or mies deuenue
and me-hadst-set in-the most high of thy wheel Now me-art-thou become
marastre, Si mas mis de si haut si bas, et, por moi
stepmother So me-hast-thou put from so high so low and for me
faire plus de duel morir, as apielee en taide la mort, Si
to-make more of grief to-die hast called in thy-aid the death So
ke tu en .ij. manieres mas honni, de mes amis et de
that thou in two manners me-hast shamed of my friends and of

ma tiere. Ha! mors desloiaus et vilaine! tu ne deusses pas
my land Ah death disloyal and villainous thou not oughtest at-all
auoir asali tel home comme Gauains, mes nies, estoit, ki
to-have assailed such man as Gawain my nephew was who
de cheualerie et de bonte auoit passe tot le monde. Mais ie
in chivalry and in goodness had surpassed all the world But I
sai bien que tu ne le fesis se non por moi faire de duel
know well that thou not it didst except not for me to-make of grief
morir'. Molt est li rois Artus dolans de ceste mort et molt
die Much is the king Arthur sorrowful from this death and much
en a grant pesance, tant kil ne set kil doie faire
thereof has great heaviness so-much that-he not knows what-he may do
ne dire. Il en fait duel si merueilleus et se pasme si
nor say He thereof makes grief so marvelous and himself swoons so
souent ke si baron ont grant doutance kil ne muire entre
often that his barons have great fear that-he — may-die between
lor mains, Si le prendent et le portent en vne cambre,
their hands So him take-they and him carry into a chamber
por ce kil ne uoie le cors; car il seuent bien ke tant
for this that-he not may-see the body for they know well that so-long
com il le uerroit ne cesseroit il son duel ne ses plaintes.
as he it would-see not would-cease he his grief nor his laments

Gawain's Bier

XXXV

The castle mourns all day. Arthur sends Gawain's body toward Camelot on a bier with a hundred knights, and turns back, saying they carry the heart of his body and that Logres has lost its shield. At nightfall the escort lodges at Beloe, whose lord hated Gawain from envy. The lady of the castle swoons over the body and declares before all that she never loved any man but Gawain and never will.

Tot le ior fu li dieus si grans et si meruilleus el castiel
All the day was the grief so great and so marvelous in-the castle
que on ni oist pas Deu tonnant, et pleurent
that one not-there would-have-heard at-all God thundering and weep
tot et totes ausi communement comme sil fust a cascun
all and all-women as commonly as if-he were to each
cousins germains. et ce nestoit pas merueille, car mesire
cousin german and this not-was at-all marvel for my-lord
Gauains auoit este li cheualiers del monde plus ames de
Gawain had been the knight of-the world most loved by
totes gens. Il fisent au cors tote lonor kil li
all people They did to-the body all the-honor which-they to-him
porent faire et le misent en dras de soie oures a or et
could do and him put in cloths of silk worked with gold and
a pieres precieuses. La nuit ot laiens si grant luminare
with stones precious That night had-there in-there so great illumination
kil uos fust auis de lonc que li castiaus arsist. Et
that-it to-you would-be opinion from far that the castle burned And
lendemain, si tost com il fu aiorne, Li rois Artus, ki se
the-next-day so soon as it was dawned The king Arthur who himself
ueoit encombre de maintes coses, prist iusques a cent
saw burdened with many things took up to a-hundred

cheualiers si les fist armer. Apres fist faire vne biere
knights so them had arm After had-he make a bier
cheualeresse et mist dedens le cors mon signor Gauain. Et
knightly and put within the body of-my lord Gawain And
quant la biere fu couerte biel et richement, si lor dist:
when the bier was covered fairly and richly so to-them said-he
'Segnor, vos me conduires ceste biere iusques a Camaalot et
Lords you me will-escort this bier as-far to Camelot and
iluec le feres entierer, ensi com il le requist, et metre en
there him will-have bury thus as he it asked and put in
la tombe meesmes v Gaheries gist'. Et endementiers kil
the tomb itself where Gaheriet lies And while that-he
disoit ceste parole, Il ploroit si durement ke tot cil de
said this word He wept so hard that all those of
la place nestoient mie mains tormente de son duel kil
the place not-were at-all less tormented by his grief than-they
estoient de la mort mon signor Gauain. Lors montent li
were by the death my lord Gawain Then mount the
cent cheualier et au conuoier i ot plus de mil
hundred knights and at-the escorting there had more than thousand
autres ki tot ploroient et crioient apres le cors et detirent
others who all wept and cried after the body and tear
lor cauiaus et batent lor paumes et dient: 'He! preudom,
their hair and beat their palms and say Ah worthy-man
bons cheualiers et seurs, cortois et debonnaires! honnie soit
good knight and sure courteous and gracious shamed be
lamors et maudite ki de uos nos tolt la compaignie!'
the-death and cursed which from you us takes-away the company
Si pleure tos li peules apres le cors mon signor Gauain. Et
So weeps all the people after the body my lord Gawain And
quant il lorent grante piece conuoiet, li un a piet et li
when they him-had great while escorted the ones on foot and the

autre a ceual, Li rois sareste et dist a ciaus ki le cors
others on horse The king himself-stops and said to those who the body
deuoient conduire: 'Ie ne puis aler en auant. ales a Camaalot
were-to escort I not can go on further go to Camelot
et faites ce ke ie uos ai dit. Ie uos di vraiement ke
and do this which I you have said I you tell truly that
uos enportes avoec vos le cuer de mon uentre, la riens
you carry-away with you the heart of my belly the thing
el mont ke ie ai plus amee vraiement. Si en arons
in-the world which I have most loved truly So thereof shall-we-have
prochainement soufrete, si comme ie quic'. Lors retorne li
soon lack so as I think Then returns the
rois tant dolans ke nus plus et dist a ciaus ki entor lui
king so sorrowful that none more and said to those who around him
sont: 'Ha! signor, or i parra ke uos feres des ore mais,
are Ah lords now there will-appear what you will-do from now more
car vos aues perdu celui ki iusques a chi vos a este peres
for you have lost him who until to here you has been father
et escus a tos besoins et plus a essauchie lonor del
and shield at all needs and more has exalted the-honor of-the
roialme de Logres ke nus cheualiers ne fist onques, fors tot
realm of Logres than any knight not did ever except all
solement cil de Benuic. Ha! Dex, or criem ie ke nos aions
only he of Benwick Ah God now fear I that we may-have
par tans molt grant soufraite et de lun et de lautre'.
in time very great lack both of the-one and of the-other

Ensi dist li rois tot en alant. et cil ki le cors
Thus said the king all in going and those who the body
conduisoient ceuauchierent tot le ior entier, tant que auenture
escorted rode all the day whole until that adventure
les aporta al anuitier a un castiel ke on apieloit Beloe. Si
them brought at-the nightfall to a castle which one called Beloe So

en estoit sires uns cheualiers molt crueus ki onques nama
thereof was lord a knight very cruel who ever not-loved
mon signor Gauain, ains lauoit tos Iors hait par enuie, por
my lord Gawain rather him-had all Days hated for envy for
ce kil ueoit ke me sire Gauains estoit miudres cheualiers
this that-he saw that my lord Gawain was better knight
de lui. Cil ki le cors portoient descendirent deuant le
than he Those who the body carried dismounted before the
castel et disent kil ne se partiroient hui mais de
castle and said that-they not themselves would-depart today more from
laiens, por ce ke trop estoit tart. Si porterent le cors
in-there for this that too-much was-it late So carried-they the body
trescau maistre palais et le descendirent en mi la sale,
right-to-the master palace and him set-down in amid the hall
tant dolant kil nen i a nul ki asses nait
so sorrowful that-it not-thereof there has any who a-good-deal not-may-have
dolour au cuer. Atant es vos la dame de laiens, ki
sorrow at-the heart Thereupon behold you the lady of in-there who
issi fors dune cambre. Et quant ele uint en la sale, Si
came-out out of-a chamber And when she came into the hall So
sesmeruilla molt de la biere kele uoit. Lors demande
herself-marveled-she much at the bier which-she sees Then asks-she
ki cil cheualiers est, por qui il font tel duel entraus.
who that knight is for whom they make such grief among-them
Et li uns li respont: 'Dame', fait il, 'ce est li cors de
And the one to-her answers Lady says he this is the body of
mon signor Gauain, le neueu le roi Artu'. Quant la dame
my lord Gawain the nephew of-the king Arthur When the lady
entent ceste parole, ele ceurt cele part v ele uoit le cors,
hears this word she runs that way where she sees the body
ausi comme tote deruee, et le baise ensi com ele pot et
just as all maddened and him kisses thus as she could and

puis se pasme desor le cors. Et quant ele fu reuenue de
then herself swoons upon the body And when she was come-back from
pasmisons, Si dist tant dolante et tant couroucie comme
swoons So said-she so sorrowful and so angered as
nule plus: 'Ha! me sire Gauain, me sire Gauain, tant est
none more Ah my lord Gawain my lord Gawain so-much is
grans damages de uostre mort meesmement as dames et
great harm of your death especially to-the ladies and
as damoisieles, a qui vos esties secors et aiue et confors!
to-the damsels to whom you were succor and aid and comfort
et ie meesmes i pierc asses plus ke dame de tot
and I myself therein lose a-good-deal more than lady of all
le monde, car ie i pierc le cheualier del siecle ke ie
the world for I therein lose the knight of-the world whom I
plus amoie. Et bien sacent por uoir trestot cil ki chaiens
most loved And well may-know for truth all those who in-here
sunt que ie namai onques home par amors fors uos tot
are that I not-loved ever man by love except you all
solement ne iamais nul nen amerai, tant com ie uiue'.
only nor ever any not-thereof shall-love-I so-long as I may-live

The Lady of Beloe

XXXVI

Her husband, overhearing her, strikes her down over Gawain's body, and she begs to be buried beside him. One of the escort kills the lord, and the knights beat off the townsmen who rise against them. Next day they carry both bodies to Camelot, where Gawain is mourned and laid in the tomb with Gaheriet, under letters saying that Lancelot killed them, but that Gawain died by his own outrage and pride.

A ceste parole ist li sires de laiens dune cambre et ot
At this word comes-out the lord of in-there from-a chamber and had
bien entendue la parole ke sa feme auoit dite et fu ires
well heard the word which his wife had said and was angered
trop durement del duel kil uit kele demenoit. Lors
too hard by-the grief which-he saw that-she led Then
ceurt ariere maintenant si prent sespee et uient tot droit
runs-he back at-once so takes his-sword and comes all straight
vers le cors de mon signor Gauain et fiert sa feme, ki
toward the body of my lord Gawain and strikes his wife who
deseure le cors estoit, si meruilleusement et si durement
over the body was so marvelously and so hard
kil li trence lespaule doutre en outre et feri bien demi
that-he to-her cuts the-shoulder through and through and struck fully half
pie el cors — onques cil ki iluec estoient ne le porent
foot into-the body ever those who there were not him could
adeuancier. et la dame sescrie tantost molt dolereusement:
forestall and the lady cries-out at-once very sorrowfully
'Ha! me sire Gauain, or sui ie morte por vos! por Diu,
Ah my lord Gawain now am I dead for you for God
biau signor, ki chaiens estes', fait ele, 'ie uos pri et requier
fair lords who in-here are says she I you pray and ask

ke vos portes mon cors la v vos porteres le sien si
that you may-carry my body there where you will-carry the his so
le metes en tiere de iouste le sien cors, Si ke tot cil
it put in ground of beside the his body So that all those
ki nos sepultures verront Sacent ke ie sui morte por lui'.
who our sepulchers will-see May-know that I am dead for him
Li cheualier nentendent pas granment a ce ke la dame
The knights not-attend at-all much to this which the lady
dist, car trop sont dolant et courouchiet de ce kil
says for too-much are-they sorrowful and angered from this that-they
uoient kele est ensi morte deuant aus par tel mesauenture.
see that-she is thus dead before them by such misadventure
Lors ceurent sus au cheualier et li tolent sespee, et
Then run-they upon the knight and to-him take his-sword and
li uns des cheualiers ki laiens estoit uenus auoec le cors
the one of-the knights who in-there was come with the body
Li dist par molt grant maltalent et par molt grant ire:
To-him said by very great ill-will and by very great wrath
'Certes, sire cheualiers, trop aues fait grant honte a nos
Certainly lord knight too-much have-you done great shame to us
tous, ki deuant nos aues ensi ocise ceste dame, et por
all who before us have thus killed this lady and for
noient. Si uoirement mait Dex ke ie croi vraiement ke
nothing So truly me-help God that I believe truly that
iamais dame ne ferres kil ne uos souiegne de cesti.'
ever lady not will-you-strike that-it not you may-remind of this-one
Lors traist li cheualiers sespee et fiert le signor del
Then drew the knight his-sword and strikes the lord of-the
castiel si durement kil li fait plaie grant et mortel.
castle so hard that-he to-him makes wound great and mortal
et quant cil se sent naure a mort, si volt torner
and when he himself feels wounded to death so wished-he to-turn

en fuies, Mais li cheualiers ne li laisse, ains recueure .i.
in flight But the knight not to-him lets rather strikes-again an
autre cop Si le fiert parmi le cief Si kil labat
other blow So him strikes-he through the head So that-he him-strikes-down
mort en mi le palais. Et lors sescrie uns cheualiers ki
dead in amid the palace And then cries-out a knight who
laiens estoit: 'Ha! las, caitis, cist cheualiers ont mon signor
in-there was Ah alas wretch these knights have my lord
mort par lor outrage'. et puis le fait sauoir par toute la
killed by their outrage and then it makes known through all the
uile et il salent trestot as armes et dient ke mar
town and they leap all to-the arms and say that in-an-ill-hour
i uinrent li cheualier, car il lor uendront molt chier
there came the knights for they to-them will-sell very dear
la mort de lor signor. Lors uienent au palais Si les
the death of their lord Then come-they to-the palace So them
assalent trop uighereusement, Mais cil se deffendent si
assail-they too vigorously But those themselves defend so
bien, a cou kil sont bon cheualier et ami, ke cil de
well for this that-they are good knights and friends that those of
la uile se tienent por fol de la mellee kil orent
the town themselves hold for foolish of the melee which-they had
enprise. Car cil lor font widier la place en petit deure
undertaken For those to-them make empty the place in little of-hour
et les cachent contreual les degres del palais sans arest.
and them chase down the steps of-the palace without stop

En tel maniere demorerent la nuit la dedens li cheualier
In such manner stayed the night there within the knights
le roi Artu atot le cors et mangierent et burent de
of-the king Arthur with-all the body and ate and drank of
teus uiandes et de teus uins com il orent et kil
such victuals and of such wines as they had and that-they

porent trouer laiens el castiel. au matin fisent une biere
could find in-there in-the castle in-the morning made-they a bier
Si en porterent le cors a la dame auoec aus et se
So thereon carried-they the body of the lady with them and themselves
partirent del castiel de Beloe, puis cheuauchierent tant
departed from-the castle of Beloe then rode-they so-much
par lor iornees kil uinrent a Camaalot. Et quant cil
by their days'-journeys that-they came to Camelot And when those
de la cite sorent kil aportoient le cors de mon signor
of the city knew that-they brought the body of my lord
Gauain, Si furent de sa mort molt triste et molt amati, car
Gawain So were-they by his death very sad and very dejected for
il lamoient molt de grant amor. Si le rechoiuent a larmes
they him-loved very with great love So him receive-they with tears
et a plors et en plaignant molt piteusement, et dient
and with weepings and in lamenting very piteously and say
ke or sunt il del tot amati, quant li plus preudom del
that now are they of-the all dejected when the most worthy-man of-the
monde est mors. Si conuoient le cors de chi a la maistre
world is dead So escort-they the body from here to the master
eglyse de Saint Estieuene Si le misent en mi liu del
church of Saint Stephen So him put-they in middle place of-the
mostier. Tot cil de la uile sorent ke li cors mon signor
minster All those of the town knew that the body my lord
Gauain ert aportes, Si i uint tant de gent lendemain de
Gawain was brought So there came so-many of people the-next-day from
toutes pars, ke de la uile ke de fors, kil faisoient
all sides as-much from the town as from outside that-they made
tot si grant duel ke nus hom de tot le monde ne le poroit
all so great grief that any man of all the world not it could
dire ne raconter. Et quant ce uint a droite eure de tierce ke
say nor recount And when this came to right hour of tierce that

li cors ot eue sa droiture, il le misent en la tombe auoec
the body had had its due they him put in the tomb with
Gaheriet, son frere, Si com il lauoit proiet, Et escrisent
Gaheriet his brother So as he it-had prayed And wrote-they
de sor la tombe: 'Chi gisent doi frere, Mesire Gauains et
from upon the tomb Here lie two brothers My-lord Gawain and
Gaheries, ke Lanselos del Lac ocist, Mais me sire Gauains
Gaheriet whom Lancelot of-the Lake killed But my lord Gawain
fu mis a mort par son outrage meesme et par son orguel'.
was put to death by his outrage itself and by his pride

The Tomb at Camelot

XXXVII

The lady of Beloe is buried beside the brothers. Arthur marches from Dover against Mordred. In a dream Gawain comes to him, followed by the poor he helped, who have won him the house of God, and warns him not to fight Mordred but to send for Lancelot. Arthur refuses both. Waking, he prays for victory over the traitors, hears mass, and rides on slowly to keep the horses fresh.

Cis escris fu fais de sor la tombe as .ij. freres, Mais de sor
This writing was made from upon the tomb of-the two brothers But from upon
la tombe a la dame, ki auques pres fu de la lor, misent il
the tomb of the lady who somewhat near was to the theirs put they
letres ki disoient: 'Chi Gist la dame de Beloe ke ses maris
letters which said Here Lies the lady of Beloe whom her husband
meesmes ocist por lamor mon signor Gauain'. Si fu ensi me
himself killed for the-love of-my lord Gawain So was thus my
sire Gauains entieres auoec Gaheriet, son frere, a Chamaalot
lord Gawain buried with Gaheriet his brother at Camelot
dedens leglyse mon signor Saint Estieuene. et molt en
within the-church of-my lord Saint Stephen and much thereof

fisent grant duel cil del pais, car molt lamoient de grant
made great grief those of-the country for much him-loved-they with great
amour. Mais li rois Artus, quant il se fu partis del cors
love But the king Arthur when he himself was parted from-the body
de mon signor Gauain, kil ot conuoiet, il reuint ariere au
of my lord Gawain which-he had escorted he came back to-the
castiel de Douure et i seiorna celui ior. et a lendemain
castle of Dover and there sojourned that day and on the-next-day
sen parti et sesmut a aler encontre Mordret et
himself-thence departed-he and himself-set-out to go against Mordred and
cheuaucha tot le ior a tote son ost. La nuit uinrent
rode all the day with all his host That night came-they
a lentree dune molt grant forest et ne volrent pas entrer
to the-entry of-a very great forest and not wished-they at-all to-enter
dedens por la nuit, ains tendirent lor tres deuant. Au soir,
within for the night rather pitched-they their tents before In-the evening
quant li rois Artus fu coucies en son lit et il fu endormis,
when the king Arthur was laid in his bed and he was asleep
Se li fu auis en son dormant ke me sire Gauains, ses
So to-him was-it opinion in his sleep that my lord Gawain his
nies, uenoit deuant lui, et estoit ases plus biaus kil
nephew came before him and was a-good-deal more beautiful than-he
ne lauoit onques ueu a nul ior de sa uie, et apres lui
— him-had ever seen on any day of his life and after him
uenoit uns molt grans pules de poures gens, ki tot disoient:
came a very great people of poor folk who all said

‘Rois Artus, nos auons conqueste la maison Diu a oes
King Arthur we have conquered the house of-God for use-of
mon signor uostre neueu por les grans biens kil nos a fais.
my lord your nephew for the great goods which-he to-us has done
Si fai autresi com il a fait, si feras ke sages’. et li rois
So do likewise as he has done so wilt-thou-do as wise and the king

lor respont kil len ert molt biel. Lors ceurt a
to-them answers that-it to-him-thereof would-be very fair Then runs-he to
son neueu si lacole et le baise et molt en a grant ioie.
his nephew so him-embraces and him kisses and much thereof has great joy
Et me sire Gauains li disoit tot en plorant: 'Sire, se vos
And my lord Gawain to-him said all in weeping Lord if you
onques mamastes, Gardes uos dassambler a Mordret, mon
ever me-loved Guard yourself from-joining-battle with Mordred my
frere; car ie vos di certainement, se vos i assambles, vos ne
brother for I you tell certainly if you there join-battle you not
poes falir ke vos ni muiries v ke vos ni soies naures
can fail that you not-there may-die or that you not-there may-be wounded
a mort'. 'Certes, biaus nies', faisoit li rois, 'ie i assamblerai,
to death Certainly fair nephew said the king I there shall-join-battle
Nes se ie i deuoie morir, car dont seroie ie plus recreans,
Even if I there should die for then would-be I more recreant
se ie ne deffendoie ma terre encontre Mordret, le traitour
if I not defended my land against Mordred the traitor
mortel, ke onques mais ne fu nus hom'. Et me sire Gauains
mortal than ever more — was any man And my lord Gawain
sen partoit adont, faisant le grignor duel del monde, et
himself-thence parted then making the greatest grief of-the world and
disoit au roi, son oncle: 'Ha! sire, quels dius ce est et keus
said to-the king his uncle Ah lord what grief this is and what
damages ke vos hastes si uostre fin et aprocies vostre mort'!
harm that you hasten so your end and approach your death

En tel maniere sambloit le roi en son dormant, et encore
In such manner seemed-it-to the king in his sleep and still
reuenoit me sire Gauains ariere et disoit: 'Sire, mandes
came-back my lord Gawain back and said Lord send-for
Lanselot, car ce sacies uos uraiement, ke, se vos lauies en
Lancelot for this know you truly that if you him-had in

uostre compaignie, ia Mordres naroit duree encontre vos;
your company ever Mordred not-would-have endurance against you
et sacies por uoir ke, se uos a cestui besoing ne le mandes,
and know for truth that if you at this need not him send-for
vos nen poes escaper sans mort'. Et li rois respont ke
you not-thence can escape without death And the king answers that
ia por cou ne remanderoit Lanselot. Et me sire Gauains
ever for this not would-send-for-back Lancelot And my lord Gawain
sen aloit, larmoiant des iex, et disoit: 'Sire, ce sera
himself-thence went weeping from-the eyes and said Lord this will-be
damages a tos preudommes'. Et quant il ot tot cou ueu en
harm to all worthy-men And when he had all this seen in
son dormant et ce uint au matin kil sesuilla, Il fist le
his sleep and this came to-the morning that-he himself-woke He made the
signe de la uraie crois en mi son uis Et dist: 'Ha! biaus
sign of the true cross in amid his face And said Ah fair
Ihesu Cris, biaus Sire Dex, ki maues soufiert a auoir tantes
Jesus Christ fair Lord God who me-have suffered to have so-many
honours, puis ke ie portai premiers couronne et ke ie uing a
honors since that I bore first crown and that I came to
terre tenir! Biaus dous Sire, par uostre grant misericorde, ne
land to-hold Fair sweet Lord by your great mercy not
soufres ke ie pierde honor en ceste bataille, Mais donnes moi
suffer that I may-lose honor in this battle But give me
uictore sor mes anemis, ki sont pariure et desloial enuers uos
victory over my enemies who are perjured and disloyal toward you
et enuers moi, Si voirement, biaus Sire, comme li drois en
and toward me So truly fair Lord as the right thereof
est miens et li tors lor'. Lors se leua li rois et ala oir
is mine and the wrong theirs Then himself raised the king and went to-hear
messe de la bouce a un arceuesques. Et quant il lot asses
mass from the mouth of an archbishop And when he it-had a-good-deal

escoutee humlement, Il fist asseoir a mangier tot son ost, car
listened-to humbly He had sit to eat all his host for
il ne sauoit de quele eure il enconterroit les homes Mordret.
he not knew at what hour he would-meet the men of-Mordred
Et quant il orent mangie, Il monterent et entrerent en
And when they had eaten They mounted and entered on
lor chemin et cheuauchierent tot le iour a loisir, por cou
their road and rode all the day at leisure for this
ke lor cheual ne fussent trop trauilliet, quant il uenroient
that their horses not might-be too toiled when they should-come
a la bataille, car il aroient bien mestier kil fussent fort.
to the battle for they would-have well need that-they might-be strong

The Wheel of Fortune

XXXVIII

At Lovedon Arthur dreams that a beautiful lady seats him at the top of Fortune's wheel, from which he sees the whole world, then casts him down and breaks him. He confesses to an archbishop and tells him both visions. The archbishop begs him to return to Dover and send for Lancelot, or he will be killed. Arthur swears by Uther Pendragon's soul that he will not turn back before his own liegeman.

Celui ior hierbega li os en la bele praerie de Louedon et
That day lodged the host in the fair meadow of Lovedon and
furent asses aaise. Li rois se coucha en sa tente tous
were a-good-deal at-ease The king himself lay in his tent all
seus, fors de ses cambrelens. Et quant il se fu endormis,
alone except of his chamberlains And when he himself was asleep
Il li fu auis ke une dame uenoit a lui, la plus [bele]
It to-him was opinion that a lady came to him the most beautiful
feme del monde, ki le prendoit par les flans et le
woman of-the world who him took by the flanks and him

leuoit de terre Si le portoit en une montaigne, la plus
raised from ground So him carried-she onto a mountain the most
haute kil ueist onques, et iluec laseoit sor vne roe. En
high which-he saw ever and there him-seated upon a wheel In
cele roe auoit sieges, dont li un montoient et li autre
that wheel had-there seats whereof the ones mounted and the others
abaissoient. Li rois regardoit en quel liu de la roe il estoit
descended The king looked in what place of the wheel he was
assis. Il ueoit ke ses sieges estoit li plus haus de toute la
seated He saw that his seat was the most high of all the
roe, Si comme cil ki estoit ensoumeket, et cis lius estoit
wheel So as he who was at-the-summit and that place was
si tres haus kil en pooit mirer tot le monde. Et ele
so very high that-he therefrom could see all the world And she
li demandoit: 'Artu, v ies tu?' 'Dame,' fait il, 'ie sui
to-him asked Arthur where art thou Lady says he I am
en vne roe, Ie ne sai quele'. 'Ce est', fait ele, 'la roe de
on a wheel I not know which This is says she the wheel of
fortune'. Lors li demandoit: 'Artu, ke uois tu?' 'Dame',
fortune Then to-him asked-she Arthur what seest thou Lady
fait il, 'moi samble ke ie uoie tot le monde'. 'Voirs est,'
says he me seems that I may-see all the world True is-it
fait ele, 'ke tu le uois, Ne il ni a pas granment ke
says she that thou it seest Nor it not-there has at-all much that
tu naies del tot este sires iusques a chi, et de tote
thou not-may-have of-the all been lord until to here and of all
la cirquite ke tu uois as tu este li plus redoutes rois
the circuit which thou seest hast thou been the most feared king
ki i fust, Mais tel sont li eur terrien kil nen
who there was But such are the fortunes earthly that-it not-thence
i a nul assis si haut kil ne le couiegne cheoir de
there has any seated so high that-he not him may-behoove to-fall from

la poeste del monde.' Lors le prendoit si le trebuchoit a
the power of-the world Then him took-she so him cast to
terre si felenessement ke, au cheoir, estoit auis le roi
ground so cruelly that in-the falling was opinion-to the king
Artu kil estoit tos debrisies et kil perdoit le pooir del
Arthur that-he was all broken and that-he lost the power of-the
cors. Si uit en tel maniere li rois .ij. fois la senefiance de
body So saw in such manner the king two times the meaning of
sa mort et de la mescheance ki li estoit a auenir. Au
his death and of the mischance which to-him was to happen In-the
matin, quant il sesuilla, Il oi messe, ancois kil presist
morning when he himself-woke He heard mass before that-he took
ses armes, puis se fist confies a un arceuesque au mius
his arms then himself had confessed to an archbishop at-the best
kil pot de tos les pecies dont il se senti coupable uers
that-he could of all the sins whereof he himself felt guilty toward
son creatour. Et quant il se fu fais confes et il ot criet
his creator And when he himself was made confessed and he had cried
mercit a plors et a larmes, si reconnut al arceuesque
mercy with weepings and with tears so acknowledged-he to-the archbishop
les auisions ki li estoient auenues es .ij. nuis deuant.
the visions which to-him were happened in-the two nights before

Quant li arceuesques entendi les auisions, il dist au roi:
When the archbishop heard the visions he said to-the king
'Ha! gentius hom, por Diu et por le saluement de ton
Ah noble man for God and for the safety of thy
cors et por le saluement de tes homes et de ton regne,
body and for the safety of thy men and of thy kingdom
va iusques au castiel de Doure, entre toi et ta gent,
go as-far to-the castle of Dover between thee and thy men
et diluec mande a Lanselot quil te uiegne secourre;
and from-there send to Lancelot that-he to-thee may-come to-succor

et ie te di tout vraiement kil i uenra trop volentiers.
and I thee tell all truly that-he there will-come too willingly
Et quant il i sera uenus, Lors poras segurement
And when he there will-be come Then wilt-thou-be-able surely
assambler encontre Mordret, Si kil en sera desconfis et
join-battle against Mordred So that-he thereby will-be discomfited and
ocis, comme traitres et pariures, et tot cil ki a sa partie
killed as traitor and perjurer and all those who to his party
se tenront; et se tu uas ore encontre lui et tu
themselves will-hold and if thou goest now against him and thou
assambles a lui, gent a gent, en cest termine dorendroit,
joinest-battle with him people to people in this term of-now
Ie te di uraiement, ke tu i seras ocis et uencus et
I thee tell truly that thou there wilt-be killed and vanquished and
naures a mort et ti home ausi ocis. Et la perte en sera
wounded to death and thy men also killed And the loss thereby will-be
si grans par deuers toi ke iamais, tant comme li siecles
so great by toward thee that ever so-long as the world
durra, ne sera li damages restores. Rois Artus, tot ensi
will-last not will-be the harm restored King Arthur all thus
tauenra il, se tu uas en cest termine assambler encontre
to-thee-will-befall it if thou goest in this term to-join-battle against
la gent Mordret'. 'Sire', fait li rois, 'merueilles me dites, ki
the people of-Mordred Lord says the king marvels me tell-you who
ce me deffendes a faire dont ie ne puis mais retorner. Ie
this me forbid to do whence I not can more turn-back I
seroie plus uieus et plus honnis ke onques nus rois ne fu,
would-be more vile and more shamed than ever any king — was
Se ie retornoie por mon home lige'. 'faire le uos couient',
If I turned-back for my man liege to-do it you behooves
fait li preudom, 'se uos ne uos uoles honnir, vos tot
says the worthy-man if you not yourself wish to-shame you all

premierement et apres tos ciaus ki uos font conpaignie;
first and after all those who to-you make company
car de ce uos aseur ie bien ke uos ia ne partires de
for of this you assure I well that you ever not will-depart from
camp, se mors non v naures a mort, Se tant auient ke li
field if dead not or wounded to death If so-much happens that the
doi ost viegnent ensamble et fierent li .i. a lautre en cest
two hosts may-come together and strike the one at the-other at this
point.' Ensi dist li preudom au roi Artu, Si comme cil
point Thus said the worthy-man to-the king Arthur So as he
ki le quidoit refraindre de sa uolente, mes il ne pooit, car
who him thought to-restrain from his will but he not could for
li rois iure lame le roi Uterpandragon, son pere, kil ne
the king swears the-soul of-the king Uther-Pendragon his father that-he not
retornera pas, Ains assamblera a Mordret, gent a gent, sil
will-turn-back at-all Rather will-join-battle with Mordred people to people if-he
onques le puet entrecontrer. 'Sire', fait li preudom, 'ce sera
ever him can meet Lord says the worthy-man this will-be
damages molt grans; et puis ke ie de vostre cuer ne puis
harm very great and since that I from your heart not can
uostre uolente oster ne refraindre, ie men souferrai atant
your will remove nor restrain I me-thereof shall-forbear so-far
et agarderai la merueille et la merci de Nostre Signor et
and shall-await the marvel and the mercy of Our Lord and
ce kil vos en uolra faire a ceste fois'. Et li rois
this which-he to-you thereof will-wish to-do at this time And the king
dist kil sen taise atant, car il nen lairoit
said that-he himself-thereof may-be-silent so-far for he not-thereof would-leave
riens por home del monde, puis kil la enpris a faire.
anything for man of-the world since that-he it-has undertaken to do

Merlin's Inscription

XXXIX

Arthur camps on Salisbury Plain, where Merlin foretold the mortal battle. Walking with the archbishop, he finds letters carved in a rock: on this plain will be the battle that leaves Logres orphaned of its good lord. The archbishop tells him he is that lord. Arthur admits he would turn back if he were not so far committed, and fears his own sin more than his enemies. A squire comes to his tent.

Celui iour ceuaucha li rois vers les plaignes de Salesbieres
That day rode the king toward the plains of Salisbury
al plus droit kil onques pot, Si com cil qui bien sauoit
at-the most straight that-he ever could So as he who well knew
ke en cele plaigne seroit la bataille morteus, dont Merlins
that in that plain would-be the battle mortal whereof Merlin
et li autre deuineour de la Grant Bretaigne auoient parle,
and the other soothsayers of the Great Britain had spoken
ancois que li rois Artus fust uenus a terre tenir. Quant li
before that the king Arthur were come to land to-hold When the
rois fu uenus en la plaingne, Il dist a ses homes ke tot
king was come into the plain He said to his men that all
se logaissent iluec, car ci atendroit il Mordret. Et il
themselves should-lodge there for here would-await he Mordred And they
le fisent tot ensi kil lot commande. Si se logierent et
it did all thus as-he it-had commanded So themselves lodged-they and
apareillierent au mius kil porent. Celui soir, apres souper,
made-ready at-the best that-they could That evening after supper
sala li rois Artus esbatre aual la plaigne, entre lui
himself-went the king Arthur to-amuse-himself down the plain between him
et larceuesque, a qui il sestoit confiesses le ior meesmes,
and the-archbishop to whom he himself-was confessed the day itself

Et tant kil uinrent a vne roce haute et meruilleuse.
And so-far that-they came to a rock high and marvelous
Li rois commenca a regarder la roce, et, en cou kil le
The king began to look-at the rock and in this that-he it
regardoit, il uit sor une boche de la roce letres ki estoient
looked-at he saw upon a face of the rock letters which were
enciselees, lonc tans auoit ia. Lors dist a larceuesque:
carved long time it-had already Then said-he to the-archbishop
'Sire, ie uoi chi letres ki grant piecha i furent faites;
Lord I see here letters which great while-ago there were made
or gardes ke eles senefient'. Lors va li arceuesques auant
now see what they signify Then goes the archbishop forward
et esgarde les letres, ki dient: 'En cest plaigne doit estre
and looks-at the letters which say In this plain must be
la bataille morteus par qui li roialmes de Logres remanra
the battle mortal by which the realm of Logres will-remain
orphenins de son bon signor'. Quant li archeuesques a leues
orphaned of its good lord When the archbishop has read
les letres, Si a dit au roi: 'Sire, aues uos bien entendu
the letters So has-he said to-the king Lord have you well understood
ke ces letres uoelent dire?' 'Ie ne sai pas tres bien ke
what these letters wish to-say I not know at-all very well what
eles voelent dire', fait li rois. 'Sire, sacies tot vraiement que
they wish to-say says the king Lord know all truly that
vos estes li bons sires dont eles parolent, et, sil auient ke
you are the good lord of-whom they speak and if-it happens that
uos assambles encontre Mordret, li roialmes en demorra
you join-battle against Mordred the realm thereby will-remain
orphenins — ce sachies vos, sans faille. vos i morres
orphaned this know you without fail you there will-die
v seres naures a mort; autrement ne vos en poes partir.
or will-be wounded to death otherwise not you thence can part

Et, por ce ke uos men crees mieus ke en cest brief
And for this that you me-thereof may-believe better that in this writing
nait se uerite non, vos di ie por uoir ke teus lescrit
not-has-there except truth not you tell I for truth that such it-wrote
ke on ne troua onques mencoignier de cose kil desist:
that one not found ever liar of thing which-he said
Ce fu Merlins ki plus fu certains des coses ki estoient
This was Merlin who more was certain of-the things which were
a auenir que hom ki fust onques encore en nostre tans'.
to happen than man who were ever yet in our time
'Sire', fait li arceuesques, 'or esgardes ke uos uolres faire
Lord says the archbishop now consider what you will-wish to-do
et se uos uees asses de coses ki uos amonestent ke vos
and if you see a-good-deal of things which you warn that you
deues laissier ceste bataille'. 'Certes, sire', fet li rois, 'ie en
ought to-leave this battle Certainly lord says the king I thereof
uoi tant ke, se ie ne fusse tant uenus auant comme ie sui,
see so-much that if I not were so-far come forward as I am
ie men retornaisse. quelconques talent que ie aie eut
I me-thence would-turn-back whatever desire that I may-have had
iusques a chi, del retorner est ce noiens'. 'Or en soit Dex
until to here of-the turning-back is this nothing Now thereof be God
en uostre aide', fait li arceuesques, 'car ie sui molt amalaise
in your aid says the archbishop for I am very ill-at-ease
de uos'. 'Ciertes, sire', fait li rois, 'ie ne me departirai
for you Certainly lord says the king I not myself shall-depart
iamais de ceste place, deuant ce ke Dex en ait donnet
ever from this place before this that God thereof may-have given
lonnour v a moi v a Mordret, Ne ie ne me douc de
the-honor either to me or to Mordred Nor I not myself fear of
riens tant ki honor me toille comme ie fac de mon
anything so-much which honor me may-take as I do of my

pechie, Car mon pechie sai ie bien, et connois et croi
sin For my sin know I well and know and believe
ke por lui me mescara, sil me meschiet en ceste bataille,
that through it me will-befall-ill if-it me befalls-ill in this battle
a ce ke ie ai en maide grignor partie de bons cheualiers
for this that I have in my-aid greater part of good knights
ke Mordres nait en sa partie.' Et lors dist li rois, molt
than Mordred has on his part And then said the king much
plus esmaies kil ne siut, por ce kil ueoit tantes coses
more dismayed than-he — was-wont for this that-he saw so-many things
ki li estoient demoustrees en senefiance de sa mort,
which to-him were shown in signification of his death
ke por riens il nen feroit autre cose. li arceuesques
that for anything he not-thereof would-do other thing the archbishop
en pleure molt tenrement, quant il uoit kil ne puet de
thereat weeps very tenderly when he sees that-he not can from
son proprosement retraire. et lors reuint a sa tente; et
his purpose withdraw and then came-back-he to his tent and
si com il i fu uenus, vns ualles uint a lui si li dist:
so as he there was come a squire came to him so to-him said

Mordred's Defiance

XL

The squire, refusing to greet Arthur, offers Mordred's terms: leave the land by morning or fight tomorrow. Arthur answers that the land is his by heritage, and that Mordred will die by Arthur's own hands. Mordred welcomes the battle. Arthur's men spend the night in dread, being far fewer, and fear the Saxons who have joined Mordred out of hatred. At dawn Arthur forms ten battalions, leading the last himself.

'Rois Artu, ie ne te salu mie, car ie sui serians a ton anemi
King Arthur I not thee greet at-all for I am servant to thy enemy
mortel — ce est Mordres, li rois del roialme de Logres. Il
mortal this is Mordred the king of-the realm of Logres He
te mande par moi ke tu ies folement enbatus, ki es entres
thee sends-word by me that thou art foolishly thrust who art entered
en sa terre sans congiet. Se tu uieus creanter comme rois
into his land without leave If thou wishest to-promise as king
que tu ten iras le matin et wideras de toi et de tes
that thou thee-thence wilt-go the morning and wilt-empty of thee and of thy
gens sa terre et passeras la mer et ten iras la dont
men his land and wilt-cross the sea and thee-thence wilt-go there whence
tu ies uenus nouielement, Il sen souferra atant ne ia
thou art come newly He himself-thereof will-forbear so-far nor ever
mal ne te fera; Mais, se tu ies si mal consillies que tu ce
harm not thee will-do But if thou art so ill counseled that thou this
ne uoelles faire, Il te mande bataille a demain par moi de
not mayest-wish to-do He thee sends-word battle for tomorrow by me of
gent contre gent. Or garde ke tu feras; car, se tu latens
people against people Now consider what thou wilt-do for if thou him-awaitest
a bataille, tu ies mors et tot ti home ocis, ke ia pies
at battle thou art dead and all thy men killed so-that ever feet

nen escapera, et se tu ten vieus aler et uuidier lui
not-thence will-escape and if thou thee-thence wishest to-go and to-empty him
sa terre, tu pues saluer toi et tes homes. par aler pues tu
his land thou canst save thee and thy men by going canst thou
gaaignier ta uie et par le remanoir pierdre le tot outreement.
gain thy life and by the remaining lose the all utterly
Or li mande ke tu uolras faire de ceste cose, car il ne
Now to-him send-word what thou wilt-wish to-do about this thing for he not
quiert pas ton destruiement, se tu li vieus widier sa terre.'
seeks at-all thy destruction if thou to-him wishest to-empty his land
Quant li rois Artus entent cest mandement, Si respont
When the king Arthur hears this message So answers-he
tantost al uallet: 'va dire a ton signor ke ceste terre, ki
at-once to-the squire go tell to thy lord that this land which
est moie diretage, ne wideroie ie por lui en nule maniere,
is mine by-heritage not would-empty I for him in any manner
ains i sui uenus comme en la moie por deffendre et por
rather there am-I come as in the mine for to-defend and for
gieter fors Mordret, le traitor et le pariure, ki encontre
to-cast out Mordred the traitor and the perjurer who against
moi a porcachie la grignor desloiaute ke onques cheualiers
me has pursued the greatest disloyalty that ever knight
porcacast encontre son signor lige. et bien sace il tot
pursued against his lord liege and well may-know he all
uraiement kil en morra a mes .ij. mains comme pariures
truly that-he thereof will-die by my two hands as perjurer
et desloiaus, Ne onques nus ne li fist compaignie en ceste
and disloyal Nor ever any not to-him made company in this
desloiaute ki ne sen repente, car il en morront tot
disloyalty who not himself-thereof may-repent for they thereof will-die all
uilainement. De ceste cose te di ie ke tu laseures de par
villainously Of this thing thee tell I that thou him-assure on behalf

moi, et lui et tos ciaus ki auoec lui sont, et lor di tot
of-me both him and all those who with him are and to-them say all
ensamble kil soient aseur kil auront demain la bataille,
together that-they may-be sure that-they will-have tomorrow the battle
sil en camp mose atendre. et sil me deuoient ocire, si
if-he in field me-dares await and if-they me should kill so
mest il biel del assambler, car ie sai bien ke diaus tous
to-me-is it fair of-the joining-battle for I know well that of-them all
nescapera ia .i. seus kil ni soient tot mort et ocis.'
not-will-escape ever a single that-they not-there may-be all dead and killed
Apres ceste parole ne demora plus li valles auoec le roi,
After this word not stayed more the squire with the king
ains sen part et oire tant kil uint a Mordret et
rather himself-thence departs and journeys so-much that-he came to Mordred and
li conte ce kil a troue el roi Artu. 'et sacies, sire',
to-him tells this which-he has found in-the king Arthur and know lord
fait il, 'que vos ne poes falir a la bataille, se uos a demain
says he that you not can fail of the battle if you for tomorrow
le uoles atendre.' 'Ie latendrai uoirement', fait Mordres, 'car
it wish to-await I it-shall-await truly says Mordred for
ie ne desir autretant cose nule comme ie fac assambler a
I not desire as-much thing any as I do to-join-battle with
lui en bataille campel, gent encontre gent v cors a cors'.
him in battle pitched people against people or body to body

Ensi fu la bataille enprise, dont maint bon cheualier
Thus was the battle undertaken whereby many-a good knight
furent mort ki nel auoient pas deserui. Si furent cele nuit
were dead who not-it had at-all deserved So were-they that night
en grant doutance, li home le roi Artu, car il sauoient
in great dread the men of-the king Arthur for they knew
molt bien kil estoient trop mains de gent ke Mordres
very well that-they were too-much fewer of people than Mordred

nauoit en sa partie, et por ce les doutoient il molt a
had on his part and for this them feared they much to
encontrer. et encore les espoentoient plus li Saisne, ke
meet and still them frightened more the Saxons whom
Mordres auoit mandes et tant proies kil estoient uenut
Mordred had summoned and so-much prayed that-they were come
en saide. et li Saisne, sans faille, estoient unes grans gens
into his-aid and the Saxons without fail were a great people
et fors, Mais il nestoient mie si acoustume de bataille
and strong But they not-were at-all so accustomed to battle
comme la gens le roi Artu, Mais il haoient le roi de si
as the people of-the king Arthur But they hated the king with so
mortel haine kil sestoient tornet par deuers Mordret et
mortal hatred that-they themselves-were turned by toward Mordred and
li auoient fait homage, li plus haut baron de Saissoigne;
to-him had done homage the most high barons of Saxony
car a celui point se beoient il a uengier de maint
for at that point themselves aimed they to avenge of many-a
grant anui ke li rois Artus lor auoit fait aucune fois.
great trouble which the king Arthur to-them had done some time
Si furent ensi assamble dune part et dautre, molt grans
So were-they thus assembled on-one side and on-the-other very great
gens. Et si tost comme li iors aparut, Li rois Artus,
peoples And so soon as the day appeared The king Arthur
ki estoit en freor de ceste cose, oi la messe et puis
who was in dread of this thing heard the mass and then
sarma et commanda ke si home presissent lor armes.
armed-himself and commanded that his men should-take their arms
et il si fisent, cil ki encore estoient desarme. Et quant
and they so did those who still were unarmed And when
il furent tot apareilliet, li rois establi .x. batailles et
they were all arrayed the king established ten battalions and

mist en cascune conduiseour tel com il quidoit qui bons
put in each leader such as he thought who good
i fust. En la premiere fu me sire Yuains, li fils au
there were In the first was my lord Yvain the son of-the
roi Vrien, en la seconde li rois Yons, en la terce li rois
king Urien in the second the king Yon in the third the king
Charados Briebras — cil ot en sa compaignie grant plente
Carados Shortarm he had in his company great plenty
de preudommes. La quarte conduist li rois Carabantins. La
of worthy-men The fourth led the king Carabantin The
quinte mena li rois Aguiscans d'Escoce. La siste conduist
fifth led the king Aguisant of-Scotland The sixth led
Girfles li fils Do, ki asses sauoit de guerre. La sieptime
Girflet the son of-Do who a-good-deal knew of war The seventh
conduist Lucans li Boutilliers, Et luitisme Saigremors li
led Lucan the Butler And the-eighth Sagremor the
Desrees. Et la nueuime conduist Guiures de Lambale,
Unruly And the ninth led Guivret of Lamballe
.i. cheualiers de grant eage, preudom et hardis de cuer
a knight of great age worthy-man and bold of heart
durement, et ot en sa compaignie maint bon cheualier
hard and had in his company many-a good knight
adure de mal traire et souffrir. Et la disime, cele ki
hardened to ill to-bear and to-suffer And the tenth that-one which
estoit darraine, conduist li rois Artus. en celi fu li
was last led the king Arthur in that-one was the
grans effors de lor gent; en celi furent li preudomme
great force of their people in that-one were the worthy-men
ki deuoient garder le cors le roi Artu, comme lor liege
who were-to guard the body of-the king Arthur as their liege
signor et droiturier; en cele bataille orent cil deuant lor
lord and rightful in that battalion had those before their

espoir de grant secours a auoir, se mestiers lor fust; car
hope of great succor to have if need to-them were for
tant i auoit de preudommes kil ne peussent estre pas
so-many there had of worthy-men that-they not could be at-all
legierement desconfit, se trop grans plentes de gens ne uenist
lightly discomfited if too great plenties of people not came
sor aus. ensi ot cascuns des barons sa bataille ordenee.
upon them thus had each of-the barons his battalion ordered

The Battalions at Salisbury

XLI

Arthur goes weeping from battalion to battalion. Mordred forms twenty battalions from ten realms, Saxons, Irish, Welsh, and men of the north, and keeps the last for himself to meet Arthur's. Arcan, a Saxon king's son, charges first, and Yvain runs him through the heart. So begins on Salisbury Plain the battle by which Logres is laid waste. Yvain plunges into the press and fights beyond any man of his age.

Quant li rois Artus ot en tel maniere totes ses batailles
When the king Arthur had in such manner all his battalions
establies, il commencha a aler de lune a lautre et a proier
established he began to go from the-one to the-other and to pray
cascun haut home, tot en plorant, kil pensaissent de bien
each high man all in weeping that-they should-think of well
faire, car hui en cest ior en est li besoins uenus, Et, sil
doing for today on this day thereof is the need come And if-they
de ceste bataille pooient escaper a honor, Il ne troueroient
from this battle could escape with honor They not would-find
iamais en nule terre ki encontre aus sosast leuer. en
ever in any land who against them themselves-dared raise in
tel maniere ot li rois Artus totes ses batailles deuisees,
such manner had the king Arthur all his battalions devised

au mieus kil sot. et tot ensi ot fait Mordres, Mais, por
at-the best that-he knew and all thus had done Mordred But for
ce ke plus auoit gent ke le rois Artus nauoit, fist il .xx.
this that more had-he people than the king Arthur had made he twenty
batailles et mist en cascune tant de cheualiers com il sauoit
battalions and put in each so-many of knights as he knew
ke mestiers estoit et a cascune bataille bon conduiseour. Et
that need was and to each battalion good leader And
en la derraine mist il le grignor effort kil auoit et mist
in the last put he the greatest force which-he had and put
ensamble iteus cheualiers v il plus se fioit, et fu il
together such knights in-whom he most himself trusted and was he
meismes conduisieres de cele eschiele et dist ke cele bataille
himself leader of that squadron and said that that battalion
asambleroit a la roi Artu, Car ses espies li auoient
would-join-battle with that-of-the king Arthur For his spies to-him had
ia dit ke li rois Artus conduiroit la derraine bataille. Es
already said that the king Arthur would-lead the last battalion In-the
.ij. premeraines batailles Mordret nauoit nul cheualier qui ne
two first battalions of-Mordred not-had any knight who not
fust de Saisoigne; et es .ij. autres apres furent cil d'Illande;
were of Saxony and in-the two others after were those of-Ireland
Apres furent cil de Gales, et tinrent .ij. batailles; apres furent
After were those of Wales and held two battalions after were
cil del roialme de Nohumberlande, et tinrent .ij. batailles;
those of-the realm of Northumberland and held two battalions
apres furent cil de Norgales, et tinrent .iij. batailles; car
after were those of North-Wales and held three battalions for
asses auoit Mordres grant cheualerie a cel ior assamblee.
a-good-deal had Mordred great chivalry on that day assembled

Ensi ot Mordres de .x. roialmes esleus les cheualiers et
Thus had Mordred from ten realms chosen the knights and
amenes en cele bataille. Et quant il les ot tos ordenes en
brought into that battle And when he them had all ordered in
tel maniere, si les aloit tos proiant et semonant de bien
such manner so them went-he all praying and summoning to well
faire. et il cheuauchierent totes uoies rengiet et entalente
doing and they rode all the-same ranged and eager
dencontrer ciaus kil demandoient, tant kil uinrent en
to-meet those whom-they sought until that-they came into
la grant plaigne de Salesbieres et uirent les banieres le
the great plain of Salisbury and saw the banners of-the
roi Artu ki uenteloient encontre le uent. et atendoient, tot
king Arthur which fluttered against the wind and awaited all
monte, cil del ost le roi Artu, tant ke li home Mordret
mounted those of-the host of-the king Arthur until that the men of-Mordred
uenissent; et quant il se furent si entraprochie kil
should-come and when they themselves were so each-other-approached that-it
ni auoit fors de ferir, Lors ueissies ceuaus poindre
not-there had but of striking Then might-you-have-seen horses spur
et lances brisier. Deuant tos les autres par deuers les gens
and lances break Before all the others by toward the men
Mordret venoit poignant Arcans. et fu armes de totes
of-Mordred came spurring Arcan and was armed with all
armes et fu montes sor .i. destrier fort et isniel, si bien
arms and was mounted upon a charger strong and swift so well
com a fil de roi couenoit. Et quant me sire Yuains, ki
as to son of king befitted And when my lord Yvain who
estoit deuant trestos ses compaignons, armes dunes blances
was before all his companions armed with-a white
armes, et atendoit a auoir la premiere iouste, le uit uenir,
arms and awaited to have the first joust him saw come

Il li adrece la teste del cheual et puis laisse courre, la
He to-him directs the head of-the horse and then lets run the
lance abaissie; et cil nel refuse pas, comme cil ki estoit
lance lowered and he not-it refuses at-all as he who was
asses preus et hardis Se li adrece de cuer et de
a-good-deal valiant and bold So to-him directs-himself with heart and with
cors. Archans fiert monsignor Yuain Si kil li perche
body Arcan strikes my-lord Yvain So that-he to-him pierces
lescut, Mais li haubers fu si fors kil nen pot maille
the-shield But the hauberk was so strong that-he not-thereof could mail
fausser. Et me sire Yuains, ki estoit de grant force, le fiert
break And my lord Yvain who was of great strength him strikes
si durement kil li perce lescut et le hauberc et li
so hard that-he to-him pierces the-shield and the hauberk and to-him
met le fier de sa lance par mi le cuer. Il lenpaint bien
puts the iron of his lance through amid the heart He him-thrusts well
si le porte del ceual a la terre, Si kil gist a terre,
so him carries from-the horse to the ground So that-he lies on ground
tos enfieres et naures a mort. et vns cousins mon signor
all ironed and wounded to death and a cousin of-my lord
Yuain, ki uit cel cop, dist si haut que plusor le porent
Yvain who saw that blow said so loud that several it could
bien oir: 'Ha! Dex, com biel commencement! Saissoigne est
well hear Ah God how fair beginning Saxony is
ia apouroije de son millor oir'. Atant desbuchent les
already impoverished of its best heir Thereupon come-out the
batailles a premiere par deuers le roi Artu encontre les
battalions at-the first by toward the king Arthur against the
.ij. batailles des Saisnes. Si peussies ueoir al assambler
two battalions of-the Saxons So might-you-have seen at-the joining
maint biel cop de lance et maint cheualier a terre uerser
many-a fair blow of lance and many-a knight to ground overturn

qui nauoit pooir de releuer. Si peussies ueoir en poi deure
who not-had power of rising So might-you-have seen in little of-hour
la terre couuerte de cheualiers abatus, dont li .i. estoient
the ground covered with knights struck-down whereof the ones were
ocis et li autre naure. Si commencha ensi en la plaigne
killed and the others wounded So began thus in the plain
de Salesbieres la bataille dolereuse, dont li roialmes de
of Salisbury the battle sorrowful whereby the realm of
Logres fu mis a destruction; et ausi furent maint autre,
Logres was put to destruction and also were many-an other
car onques puis ni ot autant de preudommes com
for ever after not-there had-there as-many of worthy-men as
il i auoit eut deuant. Si en remesent apres lor mors
it there had had before So thereof remained after their deaths
les terres gastes, car il furent iluec ocis a grant dolour
the lands waste for they were there killed with great sorrow
et a grant haschie. Et la bataille fu commencie grans et
and with great anguish And the battle was begun great and
meruilleuse. Et quant cil deuant orent lor glaues brisies,
marvelous And when those before had their lances broken
Il metent les mains as espees et vont tot maintenant
They put the hands to-the swords and go all at-once
requerre les vns et les autres et sentrefierent si mortelment,
to-attack the ones and the others and each-other-strike so mortally
a cou kil se haoient de cuer, kil font boire
for this that-they each-other hated from heart that-they make drink
par mi les elmes les espees totes nues iusques es
through amid the helms the swords all naked until into-the
ceruеles Si sentrabatent a la terre, les uns ocis et
brains So each-other-strike-down-they to the ground the ones killed and
les autres naures a mort. Et me sire Yuains, ki ot mis la
the others wounded to death And my lord Yvain who had put the

main a lespee trenchant, se met en la presse v il le
hand to the-sword sharp himself puts into the press where he it
uoit plus grant Si commence a departir grans cols as vns
sees most great So begins-he to deal great blows to-the ones
et as autres et a ocire cheualiers et cheuaus et abatre
and to-the others and to kill knights and horses and strike-down
contre terre quankil consuit. Si fet teus merueilles de son
to ground whatever-he reaches So does-he such marvels of his
cors et si grans proeces que a paines peust on trouer
body and so great prowesses that with pains might one find
homme de son eage ki a celui point en peust tant faire.
man of his age who at that point thereof might so-much do

Yvain and the Saxons

XLII

The king of the Saxons wounds Yvain in the side, and Yvain strikes off his head. The Saxons flee and are driven onto the Irish battalions, whose fresh knights cut down many of Yvain's men. Yvain is struck down and would have been killed with all his company had King Yon not come to the rescue. The field fills with the dead, and of all the good knights in that place only three or four escaped.

Molt le fist bien mesire Yuains icelui ior et molt greua les
Much it did well my-lord Yvain that day and much harmed the
Saisnes. Et encore leust il mieus fait, Se ne fust li rois
Saxons And still it-would-have he better done If not were the king
des Saisnes, ki regarda les merueilles kil faisoit. Et quant
of-the Saxons who looked-at the marvels which-he did And when
il lot grant piece regarde Et il uit kil aloit si ociant
he him-had great while looked-at And he saw that-he went so killing
ses homes, Il dist a soi meesmes: 'Se cis uit longement,
his men He said to himself even If this-one lives long

nos somes desconfit. car nus de mes homes ne puet auoir
we are discomfited for any of my men not can have
duree contre lui.' Il tint un glaue cort et gros a fier
endurance against him He held a lance short and thick with iron
trenchant Si laisse courre par mi la presse a mon signor
sharp So lets-he run through amid the press at my lord
Yuain, tant com il pot del ceual traire, Si le fiert en
Yvain as-much as he could from-the horse draw So him strikes-he in
son uenir de tote sa force si durement ke li escus ne li
his coming with all his force so hard that the shield nor the
haubers nel pot garantir kil ne li mece el coste
hauberk not-him could protect that-he not to-him might-put in-the side
senestre le fier del glaue, mais ne la pas naure a mort.
left the iron of-the lance but not him-has at-all wounded to death
Il lenpaint bien si le quide porter a terre mais non fait, car
He him-thrusts well so him thinks to-carry to ground but not does for
me sire Yuains se tint fermement es archons, et cil se
my lord Yvain himself held firmly in-the saddlebows and he himself
fiert outre molt durement, et en cou kil sen passoit
strikes past very hard and in this that-he himself-thence passed
outre, mesire Yuains le fiert si durement de lespee kil
past my-lord Yvain him strikes so hard with the-sword that-he
li fait la teste uoler ens el camp. Et quant li Saisne
to-him makes the head fly into in-the field And when the Saxons
uirent lor signor mort, Si commencent a demener trop grant
saw their lord dead So begin-they to lead too great
duel. Mais cil de Logres, quant il uirent le duel kil
grief But those of Logres when they saw the grief which-they
auoient commenciet, Il ne lor calut gaires de lor dolour,
had begun They not to-them cared much of their sorrow
ains lor corurent sus, les espees nues traites, Si les ocient
rather them ran upon the swords naked drawn So them kill-they

et abatent et en font si grant destruction ke en poi deure
and strike-down and thereof make so great destruction that in little of-hour
lor couint torner les dos, car il ni auoit celui diaus ki
them behooved turn the backs for it not had that-one of-them who
neust plaie petite v grant. Et nanporquant plus les desconfist
not-had wound small or great And nevertheless more them discomfited
et esmaie lamors de lor signor ke nauoient fait lor anemi.
and dismayed the-death of their lord than had done their enemies

Quant li Saisne orent la place widie et il furent torne
When the Saxons had the place emptied and they were turned
en fuies, Cil de Logres, ki les siuoient, les encaucent si
in flight Those of Logres who them followed them chase so
roidement kil les font flatir sor les .ij. batailles d'Irlande.
stiffly that-they them make dash upon the two battalions of-Ireland
Et quant cil uirent uenir les Saisnes si honteusement, Si
And when those saw come the Saxons so shamefully So
laissent corre, por aus aidier, et brocent les ceuaus encontre
let-they run for them to-help and spur the horses against
les homes mon signor Yuain. Si les fierent si durement,
the men my lord Yvain So them strike-they so hard
a cou kil erent fres et repose et cil lasse et trauillie,
for this that-they were fresh and rested and those weary and toiled
kil abatent des mieus vaillans en lor uenir. A cele
that-they strike-down of-the best valiant in their coming At that
assamblee peussies oir grant noise et grant criee, car des
encounter might-you-have heard great noise and great outcry for of-the
compaignons mon signor Yuain i ot ocis grant partie a
companions my lord Yvain there had killed great part at
celui point, Si comme cil ki tant estoient preu et hardi
that point So as those who so-much were valiant and bold
kil uoloient mieus morir ke retorner, car il lor estoit
that-they wished better to-die than to-turn-back for it to-them was

auis, sil retornaissent, ke trop lor fust torne a grant
opinion if-they turned-back that too-much to-them would-be turned to great
recreandise et a grant couardise. et me sire Yuains fu
recreancy and to great cowardice and my lord Yvain was
abatus a cel poindre, et si fu naures de .ij. glaues, estre
struck-down at that charge and so was-he wounded with two lances beside
lautre plaie del glaue, ki molt li nuisoit. Si fust ocis
the-other wound of-the lance which much to-him harmed So would-he-be killed
a celui point et tot si compaignon mort et detrenciet, ke
at that point and all his companions dead and hacked so-that
iamais uns seus pies nen escapast, Se ne fust li rois Yons,
ever a single foot not-thence would-escape If not were the king Yon
ki conduisoit la seconde bataille, ki les secourut a tant
who led the second battalion who them succored with as-many
de gent com il auoit, au plus tost kil onques pot. Et
of men as he had at-the most soon that-he ever could And
lors laissent courre li un encontre les autres Si sentrefierent
then let run the ones against the others So each-other-strike-they
al assambler si morteument kil se metent les glaues
at-the joining so mortally that-they themselves put the lances
trenchans par mi les cors. Si sentrabatent des
sharp through amid the bodies So each-other-strike-down-they from-the
ceuaus, li uns cha et li autres la, Si ke en molt poi deure
horses the one here and the other there So that in very little of-hour
peussies ueoir tote la campaigne couierte des abatus,
might-you-have seen all the field covered with-the struck-down
dont li un sont mort et li autre nauret Si oissies
whereof the ones are dead and the others wounded So would-you-have-heard
parmi le camp une si dolereuse criee de ciaus ki gisent
through the field a so sorrowful outcry of those who lie
nauret a mort a qui li ceual passoient par desus les cors,
wounded to death over whom the horses passed by above the bodies

tot arme, kil vos fust auis ke tos li mons fust tornes
all armed that-it to-you would-be opinion that all the world were turned
a la mort. et sans [faille], pres que tot li prodomme del
to the death and without fail near that all the worthy-men of-the
mont estoient a la mort torne, car en tot le siecle, si grans
world were to the death turned for in all the world so great
com il estoit, nauoit pas remes autant de bons cheualiers
as it was not-had at-all remained as-many of good knights
com il auoit en cele place, dont il nescapa nus ki ni
as it had in that place whence it not-escaped any who not-there
morust, fors troi v .iiij. si com la uraie istore tiesmoigne.
died except three or four so as the true history witnesses

King Yon Slain

XLIII

King Yon remounts Yvain, who says he has never feared death until today. Together they rout the Irish, until an Irish knight runs Yon through. Yvain laments the Round Table, now losing its nurslings, and cleaves the slayer to the teeth. Yon's knights stop to mourn him, and the rallied Irish kill many of them, until King Carados brings the third battalion, telling his men to show no grief if he falls.

Quant cil d'Irlande et li home le roi Yon furent
When those of-Ireland and the men of-the king Yon were
assamble, li .i. encontre les autres, Lors peussies ueoir
joined the one against the others Then might-you-have seen
cols doner et recheuoir et cheualiers cheoir a terre et
blows give and receive and knights fall to ground and
si grant ocision dune part et dautre kil nauoit nul si
so great slaughter on-one side and on-the-other that-it not-had any so
dur cuer el monde, sil ueist la grant mortalite kil
hard heart in-the world if-he saw the great mortality which-they

faisoient, ki tote pitie nen eust. et li rois Yons, ki
made who all pity not-thereof might-have and the king Yon who
aloit les rens cercant a lespee clere et brune, a tant ale
went the ranks searching with the-sword bright and burnished has so-far gone
par mi le camp kil troua mon signor Yuain tot a pie
through amid the field that-he found my lord Yvain all on foot
entre ses anemis, ki saloit deffendant molt durement et
among his enemies who himself-went defending very hard and
uoloit monter, mais il ne pooit, car trop le tenoient cort
wished to-mount but he not could for too-much him held short
si anemi. et quant li rois Yons le uoit, Si laisse courre
his enemies and when the king Yon him sees So lets-he run
a ciaus d'Irlande, ki molt se penoi[en]t docire mon
at those of-Ireland who much themselves strove to-kill my
signor Yuain, sil le peussent faire, Si lor donne grans
lord Yvain if-they it could do So to-them gives-he great
cols par la v il les puet ataindre Si les esparpaille et
blows by there where he them can reach So them scatters-he and
depart, v il uoelent v non, et les fait traire en sus,
parts whether they wish or not and them makes draw in away
tant ke me sire Yuains fu montes sor un ceual ke li
until that my lord Yvain was mounted upon a horse which the
rois meesmes li donna. Et quant il est montes a ceual,
king himself to-him gave And when he is mounted on horse
Il recommence la mellee, Si comme cil ki molt estoit
He begins-again the melee So as he who much was
de haut cuer et de grant proece et trop pooit soufrir
of high heart and of great prowess and too-much could suffer
a grant besoing, si se commence a abandonner et a
at great need so himself begins-he to abandon and to
faire merueilles dommes ocire et de colper, Si ke riens
do marvels of-men to-kill and of cutting So that anything

nauoit contre ses cols duree. Si resortist les rois, si com il
not-had against his blows endurance So withdraws the kings so as he
cheuauce a celui poindre, le giet a une piere petite. Et li
rides at that charge him casts at a stone small And the
rois Yons, quant il le uoit maintenir en tel maniere, vient
king Yon when he him sees bear-himself in such manner comes
a lui se li dist: 'Por Diu, sire, gardes uostre cors de
to him so to-him said For God lord guard your body from
si folement enbatre et vos gardes hui mes de cheoir au
so foolishly to-thrust and you guard today more from falling at-the
plus ke vos poes, se uos ne uoles morir, car trop vos
most that you can if you not wish to-die for too-much you
heent morteument nostre anemi. et sacies por uoir ke ceste
hate mortally our enemies and know for truth that this
bataille est la plus crueus et la plus perilleuse ke uos
battle is the most cruel and the most perilous which you
onques mais ueissies, car tant i a gent dune part et
ever more saw for so-many there has people on-one side and
dautre ke ie douc molt ceste iornee'. Et mesire Yuains dist
on-the-other that I fear much this day And my-lord Yvain said
kil not onques mais paour de mort, fors hui solement.
that-he not-had ever more fear of death except today only
'si mesmerveil, sire', fait il, 'dont ce me puet auenir, car
so me-marvel-I lord says he whence this me can come for
onques mais ne me pot paours mener iusques a esmai'. Et,
ever more not me could fear lead until to dismay And
sans faille, me sire Yuains fu li hom el monde a son
without fail my lord Yvain was the man in-the world in his
tans ki plus fu hardis et mais redouta prius et auentures,
time who most was bold and least feared perils and adventures

dont Molt de cheualier lapieloient 'celui sans paour'; et
whereof Many of knight him-called him without fear and
molt fu preudom et loiaus et bons cheualiers et segurs.
much was-he worthy-man and loyal and good knight and sure
Atant se remetent en la bataille, entre le roi Yon
Thereupon themselves put-again into the battle between the king Yon
et mon signor Yuain, et commencent a donner grans cols,
and my lord Yvain and begin to give great blows
ausi fres et ausi uistes, par samblant, comme sil ni
as fresh and as quick by seeming as if-they not-there
eust hui mais cop feru. Si font tant par lor proeces
had today more blow struck So do-they so-much by their prowesses
et par cou ke li uns aide lautre de bon cuer et par
and by this that the one helps the-other with good heart and by
la force de lor homes que cil d'Irlande estoient ia tot
the force of their men that those of-Ireland were already all
torne a desconfiture et sen fuioient durement, quant
turned to rout and themselves-thence fled hard when
uns cheualiers yrois laisse corre atot un glaue trenchant
a knight Irish lets run with-all a lance sharp
et aguisiet et fiert le roi Yon durement, que li escus
and sharpened and strikes the king Yon hard that the shield
ne li haubers nel garandist kil ne li mece par
nor the hauberk not-him protects that-he not to-him may-put through
mi le cors et fer et fust, Si ke li fiers parut de lautre
amid the body both iron and shaft So that the iron appeared on the-other
part. Il lenpaint del ceual a terre si durement kil na
side He him-thrusts from-the horse to ground so hard that-he not-has
mestier de mire, car il morut trestot maintenant. Quant
need of physician for he died all at-once When
me sire Yuains le uoit, si est si dolans que nus plus et
my lord Yvain him sees so is-he so sorrowful that none more and

dist trop courouchies: 'Ha! Sire Dex, quel duel et quel
said too angered Ah Lord God what grief and what
damage de cest preudomme ki si tost est mors! Ha! Table
harm of this worthy-man who so soon is dead Ah Table
Reonde, tant abaisse hui vostre hautece et la grans grasse
Round so-much lowers today your highness and the great grace
que Nostre Sire uos auoit otroie, puis ke uos primes fustes
which Our Lord you had granted since that you first were
establie; car or me samble il ke uos seres hui deseuree
established for now me seems it that you will-be today severed
de uos nouris, ki, apres Diu, vos ont maintenue en la
from your nurslings who after God you have maintained in the
haute renomee v vos esties'. Teus paroles dist me sire
high renown where you were Such words said my lord
Yuains, tot en plorant, quant il uit gesir mort a terre le
Yvain all in weeping when he saw lie dead on ground the
roi Yon. et maintenant laisse corre a celui qui ocis lauoit
king Yon and at-once lets-he run at him who killed him-had
Si le fiert del espee si durement par mi lelme kil
So him strikes-he with-the sword so hard through amid the-helm that-he
le porfent tot iusques es dens Si labat mort
him cleaves all until to-the teeth So him-strikes-down-he dead
del ceual a la terre. Lors regarde sespee, Si le uoit tote
from-the horse to the ground Then looks-he-at his-sword So it sees-he all
uermeille del sanc celui. Si dist adont: 'Ha! Sire Dex, ore
red with-the blood of-him So said-he then Ah Lord God now
est cis mors; ne por ce ne puis ie mie [donner] la uie
is this-one dead nor for this not can I at-all give the life
au preudomme kil a tot maintenant ocis et estorer'.
to-the worthy-man whom-he has all now killed and restore

Quant li cheualier au roi Yon uirent lor signor mort,
When the knights of-the king Yon saw their lord dead
Lors ueissies un duel leuer si dolereus kil se
Then might-you-have-seen a grief rise so sorrowful that-they themselves
claiment las et caitif, et par le grant desconfort kil
call weary and wretched and by the great discomfort which-they
en orent remest la cache kil auoient encommenchie.
thereof had remained the chase which-they had begun
Et quant cil ki fuioient uirent ke cil ki cachoient sont
And when those who fled saw that those who chased are
areste sor le cors au roi, Il connurent tot maintenant
stopped over the body of-the king They knew all at-once
ke cil por qui il ploroient estoit aucune haute persone.
that he for whom they wept was some high person
Si ne furent pas esbahi a celui point, ains recourerent
So not were-they at-all amazed at that point rather recovered-they
erralment et retornerent sor ciaus ki le duel faisoient. Si
forthwith and turned-back upon those who the grief made So
commenchierent sor aus a ferir et acapler si mortelment
began-they upon them to strike and to-hew so mortally
kil en ocisent en poi deure grant partie et tos les
that-they thereof killed in little of-hour great part and all them
eussent ocis, sans faille, a cou ke cil auoient tant de
would-have killed without fail for this that those had so-much of
dolour kil ne se pooient deffendre, Se ne fust la
sorrow that-they not themselves could defend If not were the
terce bataille ki les secourut tantost com il uirent ke
third battalion which them succored as-soon as they saw that
on les liuroit a si grant martire. Et li rois Charados, ki
one them delivered to so great torment And the king Carados who
la terce bataille conduisoit, si tost com il sot por coi il
the third battalion led so soon as he knew for why they

faisoient cest duel, Si dist a ses homes: 'Segnor, nos alons
made this grief So said-he to his men Lords we go
en ceste bataille, ki est la plus morteus et la plus crueus
into this battle which is the most mortal and the most cruel
que ie onques mais ueisse, ne ie ne sai kil est a auenir
that I ever more saw nor I not know what-it is to happen
de moi. Et sil auient ke on mochie, ie uos proi por Diu
of me And if-it happens that one me-kill I you pray for God
ke ia nen faites chiere ne samblant, Mais confortes
that ever not-thereof may-you-make face nor semblance But comfort
uos au plus que uos pores; car en la maluaise chiere,
yourselves at-the most that you will-be-able for in the bad face
se uos le faisies, uos ne gaaigneries uos riens Et si poroient
if you it made you not would-gain you anything And so could
prendre et cuer et hardement uostre anemi; et ensi pories
take both heart and boldness your enemies and thus could
uos legierement recheuoir mor[t] por lamor de moi'.
you lightly receive death for the-love of me

King Carados

XLIV

Carados routs the Irish, until Heliades, Mordred's king of Scotland, meets him and each lances the other mortally. Heliades is found dead. Carados has himself carried to a tree on a mountain and asks to be buried at Saint Stephen's for love of Gawain, foretelling that this will be the last battle of Arthur's time. Led by Yvain, the men of three battalions destroy Mordred's first six, though they have lost more than half their own.

Ensi dist li rois Charados a ses homes, quant il entra en la
Thus said the king Carados to his men when he entered into the
bataille. Et quant il si fu mis, entre lui et sa gent,
battle And when he himself-there was put between him and his people
Il le commencha si bien a faire, ke nus nel peust tenir
He it began so well to do that any not-him could hold
a couart ne a lent. Et por son bien faire et por la grant
for coward nor for slow And for his well doing and for the great
proece ki en lui estoit tornerent les dos en poi deure cil
prowess which in him was turned the backs in little of-hour those
d'Irlande, Si kil se misent tot a la fuite, Si comme
of-Ireland So that-they themselves put all to the flight So as
cil ki ni atendoient se la mort non. Lors peussies
those who not-there awaited except the death not Then might-you-have
ueoir ferir des esporons et cheuaus courre et tost aler et
seen strike with-the spurs and horses run and fast go and
cex d'Irlande uerser et cheoir. Si en ocisent tant a cele
those of-Ireland overturn and fall So thereof killed-they so-many at that
fois li home le roi Carado, ains ke cil eussent secours,
time the men of-the king Carados before that those might-have succor
que vos en peussies ueoir la terre couerte de cheualiers
that you thereby might-have seen the ground covered with knights

ocis et tote uermeille de sanc par la v il passoient.
killed and all red with blood by there where they passed
Mais quant li haut baron d'Escoce virent lor cheualiers et
But when the high barons of-Scotland saw their knights and
lor compaignons mener si dolereusement, il ne le porent
their companions led so sorrowfully they not it could
plus soufrir, ains laissent courre as homes Carado et
more suffer rather let-they run at-the men of-Carados and
Heliades, ki sires estoit d'Escoce, comme cil a qui Mordres
Heliades who lord was of-Scotland as he to whom Mordred
en auoit donnee lonnor et couronne lauoit. Quant ce uint
thereof had given the-honor and crowned him-had When this came
al assambler, il laisse corre au roi Charado, ki mieus
to-the joining he lets run at-the king Carados who better
estoit montes et plus richement armes ke nus de ses
was mounted and more richly armed than any of his
hommes et mieus resambloit rices hom par les coses ki
men and better resembled rich man by the things which
de fors aparoient. Et li rois Carados nel refuse pas,
from outside appeared And the king Carados not-him refuses at-all
comme cil ki asses auoit cuer et hardement por encontrer
as he who a-good-deal had heart and boldness for to-meet
le millor cheualiers del monde. Il sentrefierent des
the best knight of-the world They each-other-strike with-the
glaues si fort ki li escut percent et li hauberc rompent
lances so hard that the shields pierce and the hauberks break
Si se metent par mi les cors les espius trenchans,
So themselves put-they through amid the bodies the spears sharp
Si ke li fier en perent del autre part. Il sentrehurtent
So that the irons thereof appear on-the other side They each-other-dash
de totes lor forces Si se portent des ceuaus a la
with all their forces So themselves carry-they from-the horses to the

terre si enfierre kil ni a celui ki puist gaber lautre,
ground so impales that-it not-there has that-one who may mock the-other
car il sont ambedoi naure a mort. A la rescousse de ces
for they are both wounded to death At the rescue of these
.ij. saillent dambes .ij. pars lor maisnies, cascuns por aidier
two leap from-both two sides their households each for to-help
au sien et por lautre encombrer. Si sadeuancent tant
to-the his and for the-other to-encumber So themselves-basten so-much
li home Carado kil prendent a force Heliades et le
the men of-Carados that-they take by force Heliades and him
traient fors de la bataille et le roi Carado ausi. Et quant
draw out of the battle and the king Carados also And when
il orent Helyades mene au plain et desarme de son elme,
they had Heliades led to-the plain and disarmed of his helm
Il trouerent que li arme li estoit partie del cors, Si
They found that the soul to-him was parted from-the body So
comme cil ki estoit ferus del glaue par mi le cuer.
as he who was struck with-the lance through amid the heart
Lors desarment lor signor et li demandent comment
Then disarm-they their lord and to-him ask how
il se sent. Et il lor dist: 'ie ne uos pri fors ke de
he himself feels And he to-them said I not you pray except that of
uengier ma mort, car ie sai vraiement ke ie ne uerai ia
to-avenge my death for I know truly that I not shall-see ever
eure de none. et por Diu nen faites ia samblant, car
hour of nones and for God not-thereof make ever semblance for
nostre home en poroient estre tot desconforte, Si ke la
our men thereby could be all discomforted So that the
pierte en seroit grignors, Mais tant me faites que uos
loss thereby would-be greater But so-much me do that you
mostes mon hauberc et mes armes, puis me portes en mon
may-remove my hauberk and my arms then me carry on my

escut iusques desous cel arbre, ki est en cele montaigne.
shield until below that tree which is on that mountain
Si morrai totes uoies plus aaise que ie ne feroie ichi'.
So shall-I-die all the-same more at-ease than I — would-do here
Ensi dist li rois Charados a ses homes, et tot ensi com
Thus said the king Carados to his men and all thus as
il lor commanda, il le fisent. Si le desarment et le
he to-them commanded they it did So him disarm-they and him
porterent en la montaigne, faisant asses mains de duel
carried onto the mountain making a-good-deal less of grief
que li cuers ne lor aportast, car molt amoient lor signor
than the heart — to-them brought for much loved-they their lord
de grant amor. Et quant il lorent mis desous larbre, il
with great love And when they him-had put below the-tree he
lor dist: 'ales en la bataille et laissies moi chi en la
to-them said go into the battle and leave me here in the
garde a .iij. escuiers et uengies moi ma mort au mieus ke
keeping of three squires and avenge me my death at-the best that
vos pores; et, sil auient que aucuns de vos puist escaper
you will-be-able and if-it happens that any of you may escape
de ceste bataille, Ie uos proi ke vos portes mon cors en
from this battle I you pray that you may-carry my body into
la cite de Camaalot Si me faites entierer en leglyse mon
the city of Camelot So me have bury in the-church of-my
signor S. Estieuene, por lamor de mon signor Gauain, ki
lord Saint Stephen for the-love of my lord Gawain who
i gist'. Et il li otroient, tot en plorant, et li dient
there lies And they to-him grant all in weeping and to-him say
kil le feront molt uolentiers et puis li demandent:
that-they it will-do very willingly and then to-him ask
'Sire, quidies vos que en ceste bataille ait si grant
Lord think you that in this battle there-may-be so great

mortalite comme uos dites'? 'Ie uos di', fait il 'que, puis ke
mortality as you say I you tell says he that since that
el roialme de Logres uint crestientes, ni ot il bataille
into-the realm of Logres came Christianity not-there had it battle
nule v il morussent tant de preudommes comme il fera
any where it died so-many of worthy-men as it will-do
en ceste. Et ce ert, sans faille, la desraine bataille ki
in this And this will-be without fail the last battle which
sera au tans le roi Artu'. Quant cil oirent ceste parole,
will-be in-the time of-the king Arthur When they heard this word
si en furent molt esmaiet et laissierent iluec lor signor
so thereby were-they much dismayed and left there their lord
gisant et reuienent a la bataille au ferir des esporons. Si
lying and return to the battle at-the striking of-the spurs So
se fierent entre lor anemis, lor espees nues es puins,
themselves strike-they among their enemies their swords naked in-the fists
et ia lauoient Si bien fait li home le roi Carado et
and already it-had So well done the men of-the king Carados and
li home le roi Yon a laide mon signor Yuain, ki les
the men of-the king Yon with the-aid of-my lord Yvain who them
tenoit en uertu et en qui il a[u]oient totes lor fiances —
held in strength and in whom they had all their trust
car, sans faille, il faisoit fines merueilles, de cheualiers
for without fail he did fine marvels of knights
ocire et mehaignier, Si que tot le fuioient ausi com fait
to-kill and to-maim So that all him fled just as does
laloe lespreuier — ke cil d'Escoce et cil d'Irlande et
the-lark the-sparrowhawk that those of-Scotland and those of-Ireland and
cil de Saissoigne estoient desconfit si dolereusement ke poi
those of Saxony were discomfited so sorrowfully that few
en i auoit remes ki tot ne fussent ocis et detrenchiet.
thereof there had remained who all not were killed and hacked

Et li home le roi Artu, cil des trois batailles, estoient
And the men of-the king Arthur those of-the three battalions were
si atorne kil en gisoit mors a la terre plus de lune
so arrayed that-it thereof lay dead on the ground more than the-one
moities; et de cex ki encore uiuoient ni auoit il celui
half and of those who still lived not-there had it that-one
ki neust plaie petite v grant. et nanporquant par mi
who not-had wound small or great and nevertheless through amid
tote langousse quil soufroient des plaies kil auoient
all the-anguish which-they suffered from-the wounds which-they had
et des grans bleceures kil auoient auoient il les .vi.
and from-the great hurts which-they had had they the six
premieres batailles Mordret menees a cou kil les auoient
first battalions of-Mordred led for this that-they them had
desconfites Si outreement kil ni auoit preudome remes
discomfited So utterly that-it not-there had worthy-man remained
kil neussent mort et ocis v nauret a mort.
whom-they not-had dead and killed or wounded to death

The Fourth Battalion

XLV

Two fresh Welsh battalions break Arthur's weary men, and five hundred horses pass over the swooning Yvain. Arthur's fourth and fifth battalions charge, and King Aguisant rescues Yvain from four enemies. By tierce all are engaged but the last two. A squire sent up a hillock reports that Mordred's battalion is twice the size of Arthur's, and the king, weeping, wishes Lancelot were beside him and blames himself for not heeding Gawain.

A celui point orent tant fait les gens le roi Artu kil
At that point had so-much done the people of-the king Arthur that-they
se furent ferut de plain front sor les .ij. batailles ki
themselves were struck of full front upon the two battalions which
del roialme de Gales estoient uenues. et en ces .ij. batailles
of-the realm of Wales were come and in these two battalions
auoit maint preudome qui il tardoit molt quil se
had-there many-a worthy-man whom it delayed much that-they themselves
peussent ferir en la bataille et molt lor pesoit de cou
might strike into the battle and much to-them weighed-it from this
kil sestoient si longement repose. Si uos di kil
that-they themselves-were so long rested So you tell-I that-they
rechiurent la gent le roi Artu si bien kil en remest
received the people of-the king Arthur so well that-it thereof remained
poi es sieles kil nabatissent en lor uenir, a cou kil
few in-the saddles whom-they not-struck-down in their coming for this that-they
estoient fres et repose et li home le roi Artu estoient
were fresh and rested and the men of-the king Arthur were
las et trauilliet des cols doner et recheuoir. A celui
weary and toiled from-the blows to-give and to-receive At that
encontre fu mesire Yuains portes a terre et ses cheuaus ocis
encounter was my-lord Yvain carried to ground and his horse killed

desous lui; et il estoit tant las et tant trauillies que al
below him and he was so weary and so toiled that at-the
cheoir quil fist fu il si estones kil giut grant piece en
fall which-he made was he so stunned that-he lay great while in
pasmisons. et la cace commencha maintenant sor les homes
swoons and the chase began at-once upon the men
le roi Artu Si kil auint ke par de sor mon signor
of-the king Arthur So that-it happened that by from above my lord
Yuain passerent a cele pointe plus de .v.c. cheual, ki
Yvain passed at that charge more than five-hundred horses which
tant li greuerent ke, sil neust plus dangousse eue le ior,
so-much him harmed that if-he not-had more of-anguish had the day
Si en ot il asses a cele fois. et ce fu la cose ki plus
So thereof had he a-good-deal at that time and this was the thing which most
lafoibloia le ior et ki plus li toli uertu et force. ensi
him-weakened the day and which most from-him took virtue and strength thus
furent torne en fuies la gent le roi Artu — cil ki porent
were turned in flight the people of-the king Arthur those who could
escaper, mais ce fu poi. Mes quant li rois Carabantins,
escape but this was few But when the king Carabantin
cil de Cornuaille, uit ke sor aus estoit la pierte tornee,
he of Cornwall saw that upon them was the loss turned
Si dist a ses homes: 'or a aus! li nostre sont desconfit'.
So said-he to his men now at them the ours are discomfited

Atant desbuce la quarte bataille le roi Artu et laisse
Thereupon comes-out the fourth battalion of-the king Arthur and lets
courre as .ij. batailles Mordret. Si peussies oir en lor
run at-the two battalions of-Mordred So might-you-have heard in their
uenir ensaignes escrier de diuerses gens et de diuers langages
coming war-cries cried of divers peoples and of divers languages
et peussies ueoir glaues brisier et voler es clas et
and might-you-have seen lances break and fly in-the splinters and

cheualiers uerser a tierre, les uns mors et les autres naures,
knights overturn to ground the ones dead and the others wounded
et cheuaus corre cha et la, tos estraiers. Si ne ueistes
and horses run here and there all straying So not saw-you
onques plus dolereus encontre ke cil fu, a cou kil
ever more sorrowful encounter than that was for this that-they
sentrebaoient de mortel haine. Si peussies ueoir en poi
each-other-coveted with mortal hatred So might-you-have seen in little
deure la campaigne couierte de cheualiers abatus, dont li
of-hour the field covered with knights struck-down whereof the
un gisent ocis et li autre naure a mort. et quant li glaue
ones lie killed and the others wounded to death and when the lances
sont brisiet, il metent les mains as espees et sentrefierent
are broken they put the hands to-the swords and each-other-strike
les grignors cols kil pueent des bras amener Si durement
the greatest blows that-they can with-the arms bring So hard
kil se depecent les haubers et les escus et les elmes.
that-they themselves break-up the hauberks and the shields and the helms
Si sentrocient et mehaignent et abatent des ceuaus a la
So each-other-kill-they and maim and strike-down from-the horses to the
terre et haste cascuns diaus la mort a son auersaire, au plus
ground and hastens each of-them the death to his adversary at-the most
kil puet. ensi fu la quarte bataille le roi Artu venue en
that-he can thus was the fourth battalion of-the king Arthur come into
camp et se fu mellee molt durement as .ij. de la. Puis
field and itself was joined very hard with-the two from there Then
ne demora gaires que Mordres en i renvoia deus por aidier
not stayed-it much that Mordred thereof there sent two for to-help
as lor ki el camp estoient. et quant li rois Aguiscans,
to-the theirs who in-the field were and when the king Aguisant
qui conduisoit la quinte bataille, les uit aprochier et prendre
who led the fifth battalion them saw approach and take

la campaigne, Si dist a ciaus ki auoec lui estoient: 'or nos
the field So said-he to those who with him were now we
en alons par decha, Si que nos puissons assambler a ces
thence go by this-side So that we may join-battle with these
deus batailles de dela, ki orendroit sont departies de lor
two battalions from there which now are parted from their
gent. et gardes ke uos nen touchies a nul, deuant que
people and see that you not-thereof touch to any before that
vos soies a aus; et quant vos venres a aus, ales les ferir
you may-be at them and when you will-come at them go them strike
en mi le uis si durement quil en soient tot esbahi'.
in amid the face so hard that-they thereby may-be all amazed

Tot ensi comme li rois le commanda, tot ensi le
All thus as the king it commanded all thus it
fisent il, car il trespasserent tos ciaus kil lor auoit
did they for they passed all those whom-be to-them had
moustres ki darrainement sestoient parties de Mordret et
shown who lastly themselves-were parted from Mordred and
les uont ferir si durement kil en abatent grant partie
them go strike so hard that-they thereof strike-down great part
en lor uenir. Al abaissier des lances et al assambler
in their coming At-the lowering of-the lances and at-the joining
oissies vne si grant noise que vos ni oissies
would-you-have-heard a so great noise that you not-there would-have-heard
mie Deu tonnant de ciaus ki cheoient des bons cheuaus
at-all God thundering from those who fell from-the good horses
et des froisseis des lances et del grant hurteis kil
and from-the crashing of-the lances and from-the great dashing which-they
faisoient, ensi comme li escut aiostoient ensamble. Si en
made thus as the shields joined together So thereof
peussies ueoir par terre plus de .v.c. al assambler.
might-you-have seen on ground more than five-hundred at-the joining

Mais de ciaus par deuers Mordret en ot molt au
But of those by toward Mordred thereof had many at-the
commencement dabatus et de naures, car molt sauoient
beginning of-struck-down and of wounded for much knew
bien ioster li home le roi Aguiscant. ensi fu la bataille
well to-joust the men of-the king Aguisant thus was the battle
commencie en .ij. lius plus morteus et plus perilleuse ke
begun in two places more mortal and more perilous than
mestiers ne fust. Et quant li home le roi Aguiscant orent
need — were And when the men of-the king Aguisant had
lor lances peccoies, Il metent les mains as espees, cleres
their lances shattered They put the hands to-the swords bright
et trenchans, Si courent sus a lor anemis, les bras leues
and sharp So run-they up at their enemies the arms raised
en contremont, et lor donent grandismes cols la v il
in upward and to-them give very-great blows there where they
les pueent aconsiure. Et cil se deffendent molt bien
them can reach And those themselves defend very well
et en ocient grant parti. Et en cou ke li rois Aguiscans
and thereof kill great part And in this that the king Aguisant
aloit les rens ciercant a lespee, il regarde deuant lui et
went the ranks searching with the-sword he looks before him and
uoit mon signor Yuain tot sanglent et molt nauret, ki
sees my lord Yvain all bloody and very wounded who
uoloit monter sor .i. ceual Mais si anemi ne le laissoient,
wished to-mount upon a horse But his enemies not him let
ains le tenoient si cort kil lauoient ia abatut
rather him held so short that-they him-had already struck-down
deus fois — Mais il se deffendoit comme hom de molt
two times But he himself defended as man of very
grant cuer et de molt grant proece plains. Quant li rois
great heart and of very great prowess full When the king

Aguiscans uit mon signor Yuain si entrepris de ses anemis,
Aguisant saw my lord Yvain so beset by his enemies
Il laisse corre cele part quankil puet del ceual traire.
He lets run that way as-much-as-he can from-the horse draw
Et cil estoient .iiij. ki mon signor Yuain uoloient ocire et
And those were four who my lord Yvain wished to-kill and
lauoient ia trait fors de la bataille. Et li rois ki cele
him-had already drawn out of the battle And the king who that
part uient a le rescousse en fiert lun de lespee par
way comes to the rescue thereof strikes the-one with the-sword through
mi lelme si grant cop ke li elmes nel garantist pas
amid the-helm so great blow that the helm not-him protects at-all
kil ne li face lacier boire iusquen la cerueile. Lors
that-he not to-him may-make the-steel drink until-into the brain Then
se fiert entraus si est tant uistes et tant preus ke nus
himself strikes-he among-them so is-he so quick and so valiant that any
hom qui ueist son eage et cou kil faisoit ne fust qui
man who saw his age and this which-he did not were who
ne sesmeruillast dont cele proece li pooit uenir. Ne cele
not would-marvel whence that prowess to-him could come Nor that
proece, sans faille, ne li uenoit mie de la proece ne
prowess without fail not to-him came at-all from the prowess nor
de la force de son cors, ains li uenoit del grant cuer
from the strength of his body rather to-him came-it from-the great heart
kil auoit el uentre et de la grant ire que il auoit.
which-he had in-the belly and from the great wrath which he had

Quant li rois Aguisans par la valor de lui ot deliure mon
When the king Aguisant by the valor of him had freed my
segnor Yuain de tous ciaus ki entrepris lauoient, il li
lord Yvain from all those who beset him-had he to-him
baille cheual sel fait monter. Et cil monte, ki mout estoit
hands horse so-him makes mount And he mounts who much was

las et trauellies, et se refiert tout maintenant en la
weary and toiled and himself strikes-again all at-once into the
meslee et coumence molt grans cols a douner si en fait
melee and begins very great blows to give so thereof does
tant amont et aval ke nus ne le uoit ki ne sen
so-much up and down that any not him sees who not himself-thereof
peust mierueillier des cols kil donoit et receuoit, a
might marvel at-the blows which-he gave and received for
cou kil auoit mout fait le ior. En tel maniere assamblent
this that-he had much done the day In such manner join
toutes les batailles, les unes encontre les autres, si ke a
all the battalions the ones against the others so that at
eure de tierce les peussies ueoir plenierement ensamble,
hour of tierce them might-you-have seen fully together
fors seulement les .ij. daerraines batailles — Cele v li
except only the two last battalions That where the
rois Artus estoit et cele ke Mordres conduisoit. Et li rois
king Arthur was and that which Mordred led And the king
Artus ot fait monter en .j. tiertre pries diluec .j. vallet, pour
Arthur had had mount on a hillock near from-there a squire for
veoir conbien de gent Mordres pooit auoir en sa daerraine
to-see how-many of people Mordred could have in his last
bataille. Et quant li ualles fu el tiertre et il ot veu chou
battalion And when the squire was on-the hillock and he had seen this
con li ot commande, Il reuint au roi et li dist
which-one to-him had commanded He came-back to-the king and to-him said
a conseil: 'Sire, il a bien en sa bataille .ij. tans de gens
in secret Lord he has well in his battalion two times of people
ke vous naues en la uostre'. 'Voire', fait li rois', en [n]on
than you not-have in the yours Indeed says the king in name
Diu, ke chou est meschies grans! ore en soit Nostre Sire
of-God that this is mischief great now thereof be Our Lord

en nostre aide, car autrement serons nous mal bailli'. Lor
in our aid for otherwise shall-be we ill used Then
regrette son neueu et dist, en larmoiant des iex de son
laments-be his nephew and said in weeping from-the eyes of his
front: 'Ha, Gauain, biaus nies, or auerons nous hui soufraite
brow Ah Gawain fair nephew now shall-have we today lack
de uostre aide et de la Lanselot! maleoit soit la mors ki
of your aid and of that-of Lancelot cursed be the death which
de uous et de moi departi la compaignie! Ha! Lanselot,
from you and from me parted the company Ah Lancelot
Lanselot! car pleust ore al Saint Esperit ke vos
Lancelot now might-it-please now to-the Holy Spirit that you
fuissies de iouste moi armes de toutes armes. Ciertes, ie ne
were of beside me armed with all arms Certainly I not
douteroie mie ke nous neussons encore anuit lonor et la
would-fear at-all that we not-should-have still tonight the-honor and the
uictore de la bataille a laide de Diu et a la prouece ke
victory of the battle with the-aid of God and with the prowess which
ie senc en vos. Or ai iou doute ke ie ne me tiegne por
I feel in you Now have I fear that I — myself may-hold for
fol de chou ke ie ne crei Gauain men neueu, quant il me
fool for this that I not believed Gawain my nephew when he me
dist ke ie vous mandaisse ke vos me uenissies secourre et
said that I you should-send-for that you me should-come to-succor and
aidier encontre Mordret; car, se iou vous eusse mande, ie sai
to-help against Mordred for if I you had sent-for I know
bien ke vous i fussies venus deboinairement et volentiers.'
well that you there would-be come graciously and willingly

Mordred's Charge

XLVI

Arthur, on a black horse, tells the seventy-two companions of the Round Table with him to keep close together. His standard is set forward under a hundred knights, and Mordred sends three hundred of his best to overthrow it. Horns and trumpets sound until the earth seems to tremble. Arthur prays to be shielded from death. He and Mordred charge, and Arthur bears Mordred and his horse to the ground.

Ceste parole dist li roi Artus, mout esmaies, et il nen
This word said the king Arthur much dismayed and he not-thereof
pot mais, car bien li dist ses cuers grans parties des
could more for well to-him said his heart great parts of-the
maus ki le ior li estoient a auenir, et a lui et a sa
evils which the day to-him were to happen both to him and to his
compaignie. il estoit trop bien armes et trop ricement et
company he was very well armed and very richly and
si seoit sour .j. cheual noir, ki estoit .i. des plus fors
so sat upon a horse black which was one of-the most strong
cheuaus del monde et .j. des boins, ne en toute lassamblee
horses of-the world and one of-the good nor in all the-assembly
ki iluec estoit nen trouast on mie .j. Meillor. Dont
which there was not-thereof would-find one at-all a Better Then
vient a chiaus de la Table Reonde, dont il i auoit bien
comes-he to those of the Table Round whereof it there had well
en sa compaigne .lxxij. si lor dist: 'Segnor, ceste bataille
in his company seventy-two so to-them said-he Lords this battle
est la plus perilleuse et la plus doutable ke iou onkes mais
is the most perilous and the most dreadful that I ever more
veisse. Pour Diu, vos, ki estes frere et compaignon de la
saw For God you who are brothers and companions of the

Table Reonde, tenes vous mais hui ensamble, li uns pries
Table Round hold yourselves more today together the one near
de lautre, sans departir; car, se uous chou faites, on ne vos
of the-other without parting for if you this do one not you
pora pas legirement departir ne desconfire, si con feroit,
will-be-able at-all lightly part nor discomfit so as one-would-do
se vos esties lonc, lun de lautre. et il sont grant gent par
if you were far the-one from the-other and they are great people by
de la et bien duit de bataille et enseignie de Guerrier,
from there and well trained in battle and taught in Warring
cou me samble, pour quoi il font plus a redouter.' Et il
this me seems for which they are more to be-feared And they
respondent tout maintenant au roi: 'Sire, ne vos esmaies
answer all at-once to-the king Lord not you be-dismayed
pas mais cheuauchies tout asseur, car uous poes ia ueoir
at-all but ride all sure for you can already see
la baniere Mordret, ki uient uiers nous grant aleure; et
the banner of-Mordred which comes toward us great pace and
naies doutance, car de trop douter ne poroit nus biens
not-have dread for from too-much fearing not could any good
venir ne a vous ne a nous'. lors fu li estandars le roi
come neither to you nor to us then was the standard of-the king
mis auant et mist au garder .c. Cheualliers et plus. Et
put forward and put-he to-the guarding a-hundred Knights and more And
Mordres ot pris .ccc. ceualiers, tous les meillors kil
Mordred had taken three-hundred knights all the best whom-he
ot en sa compaignie, si lor dist: 'vous vous departires
had in his company so to-them said you yourselves will-part
de nous et vous en ires tout droit a cel tiertre de la;
from us and you thence will-go all straight to that hillock from there
et quant uous i seres venut, retournes uous au plus
and when you there will-be come turn yourselves at-the most

coiement ke vous poes toute cele valee et lors vous adrecies
quietly that you can all that valley and then yourselves direct
viers cel estandart, au plus droit ke uous poes au ferir
toward that standard at-the most straight that you can at-the striking
des esperons; si uenes si roidement ke il ne remaigne en nule
of-the spurs so come so stiffly that it not may-remain in any
maniere kil ne soit abatus a tiere. et se vous ensi le poes
manner that-it not may-be struck-down to ground and if you thus it can
faire comme ie vous di et cou ke ie vous ai deuise, iou
do as I you tell and this which I you have devised I
uous creanc loialment ke li home le roi Artu en seront
you promise loyally that the men of-the king Arthur thereby will-be
si esbahi que il naueront ia puis duree, ain[s] torneront
so amazed that they not-will-have ever after endurance rather will-turn
en fuies, puis ke il ne saront v repairier'. et cil dient
in flight since that they not will-know where to-repair and they say
que tout ce feront il mout legierement et mout uolentiers.
that all this will-do they very lightly and very willingly
Atant departent de Mordret et sen uont toute
Thereupon depart-they from Mordred and themselves-thence go all
la uoie ke il lor auoit ensaignie. Et Mordres fait souner
the way which he to-them had shown And Mordred has sound
ses cors et ses buisines si kil fait si grant noise en son
his horns and his trumpets so that-he makes so great noise in his
venir ke il sanle ke toute tiere doiue encontre lui trambler.
coming that it seems that all earth must against him tremble
Et li rois Artus fist faire tout autretel, si ke a lasambler
And the king Arthur had do all likewise so that at the-joining
de ces .ij. batailles uous fust il bien auis ke tous li
of these two battalions to-you would-be it well opinion that all the
mons deust uenir ensamble. Et quant li rois Artus uolt
world must come together And when the king Arthur wished

prendre son glaiue et son escut, il fait la signe de le uraie
to-take his lance and his shield he makes the sign of the true
crois sour lui et dist: 'Ha!' biaus pere, Iesu Cris, par ta
cross upon him and said Ah fair father Jesus Christ by thy
mierci, ki tant est grans, ne regarde pas a mon pechie
mercy which so-much is great not look at-all at my sin
mais soies moi hui en cest iour escus et deffendemens, en
but be to-me today on this day shield and defense in
tel maniere ke iou ne soie en ceste bataille mors ne ocis'.
such manner that I not may-be in this battle dead nor killed
'Ha! gentius rois', fait Galegantis li Galois, 'ne tesmaier
Ah noble king says Galegantin the Welshman not thee-dismay
pas, mais soies asseur, car tu uaincras ceste bataille'. 'Ha!
at-all but be sure for thou wilt-vanquish this battle Ah
biaus amis' fait li rois, 'ensi comme Diex le puet faire, le
fair friend says the king thus as God it can do it
motroit il'. Lors se commande li rois a Nostre Segnor
me-may-grant he Then himself commends the king to Our Lord
molt doucement, puis prent son escut et son glaiue. et
very sweetly then takes-he his shield and his lance and
quant il est si appareillies kil ni faut riens, il dist a
when he is so arrayed that-it not-there lacks anything he said to
ses homes: 'cheuauchies hui mais seurement, car Nostre Sire
his men ride today more surely for Our Lord
nous aidera'. Lors laissent courre cele part droit u il
us will-help Then let-they run that way straight where they
uoient la bataille Mordret uenir plus espessement si se
see the battalion of-Mordred come most thickly so themselves
fierent entriaus les glaues alongies, si uous fust auis ke
strike-they among-them the lances lengthened so to-you would-be opinion that
toute tiere deust fondre en lor uenir, car la noise estoit
all earth must founder in their coming for the noise was

si grande des lances et li abateis des cheualiers ke on
so great of-the lances and the striking-down of-the knights that one
peust bien oir le son de .ij. liues lonc. Et li rois Artus,
could well hear the sound from two leagues far And the king Arthur
ki deut asambler encontre Mordret, le counut bien si
who was-to join-battle against Mordred him knew well so
laisse courre le destrier, lescut ioint encontre le pis et le
lets-be run the charger the-shield joined against the breast and the
lance abaissie, et cil refait autre tel ki de noient ne le
lance lowered and he does-in-turn other such who by nothing not him
refuse. Li cheual furent fort et isniel Et cil ki deseure
refuses The horses were strong and swift And those who above
furent estoient preu et hardi et sentrehanoient de mortel
were were valiant and bold and each-other-hated with mortal
haine. Mordres fiert premiers le roi si kil li pierce
hatred Mordred strikes first the king so that-he to-him pierces
lescu, mais li haubiers fu si fors ke maille nen rompi
the-shield but the hauberk was so strong that mail not-thereof broke
et li glaiue uole en pieces a lempoindre ke Mordres a
and the lance flies in pieces at the-thrust which Mordred has
fait, si ne remut le roi ne peu ne grant. Et li rois, ki
made so not moved-he the king neither little nor great And the king who
fu fors et durs et acoustumes de bataillier et molt sot
was strong and hard and accustomed to battling and very knew
bien manoier lansce, le fiert de si grant force ke il porte
well to-handle lance him strikes with so great force that he carries
et lui et le cheual a la tiere tout en .i. mont, mais
both him and the horse to the ground all in a heap but
autre mal ne li fist, car trop estoit Mordres bien armes.
other harm not to-him did-he for very was Mordred well armed

Arthur and Mordred Meet

XLVII

Three thousand men rescue Mordred and remount him, and he and Arthur stun each other with blows to the helm. Mordred beheads Galegantin the Welshman. A Northumbrian knight unhorses Arthur, and Yvain kills him and remounts the king, but Mordred, wielding his sword in both hands, cleaves Yvain to the shoulders. Arthur asks God why He lets the greatest traitor kill so worthy a man, and Sagremor answers that these are Fortune's games.

A cest cop desrengent dambes .ij. pars, ausi li boin ke
At this blow break-ranks from-both two sides as-much the good as
li mauuais, car li home le roi Artu uoloient prendre
the bad for the men of-the king Arthur wished to-take
et retenir a fine force Mordret. mais a la rescousse en
and to-hold by fine force Mordred but at the rescue thereof
peussies ueoir plus de .iij. Mil tous fieruiestis et armes,
might-you-have seen more than three Thousand all iron-clad and armed
dont il ni auoit celui ki pour le garison Mordret ne
whereof it not-there had that-one who for the safety of-Mordred not
mesist son cors en auenture. si peussies ueoir grans chous
would-put his body in adventure so might-you-have seen great blows
douner et recheuoir et cheualiers morir desmesureement et
give and receive and knights die beyond-measure and
cheoir de toutes pars. si a entour lui si grant debouteis
fall from all sides so has-there around him so great jostling
et si grant fereis despees ke en peu deure peussies ueoir
and so great striking of-swords that in little of-hour might-you-have seen
entor lui plus de .ij. cens cheualiers gisans a terre, dont il
around him more than two hundred knights lying on ground whereof it
ni auoit cil ki ne fust ocis v naures a mort. Et pour
not-there had that-one who not were killed or wounded to death And for

chou ke la force croissoit toudis par diuiers la gent Mordret,
this that the force grew always by toward the people of-Mordred
fu il remontes de terre et remontes en son cheual, malgre
was he raised from ground and remounted on his horse despite
trestos ses anemis. Mais anchois ot il tes trois cols de la
all his enemies But before had he such three blows from the
main le roi Artu meisme ke del meneur se tenist
hand of-the king Arthur himself that from-the least himself would-hold
vns autres cheualiers tous a encombres, mais Mordres estoit
an other knight all at hindrance but Mordred was
fors et durs et boins cheualiers de sa main et hardis,
strong and hard and good knight of his hand and bold
si laisse courre au roi Artu pour soi reuengier — car
so lets-he run at-the king Arthur for himself to-avenge for
mout a grant duel, quant il la ensi abatu, uoiant
much has-he great grief when he him-has thus struck-down seeing
sa gent — et li rois nel refuse mie, ains li adrece
his people and the king not-him refuses at-all rather to-him directs
la tieste del cheual. il sentrefierent amont es hiaumes si
the head of-the horse they each-other-strike above on-the helmets so
grans cols kil ni a celui ki del soustenir ne se
great blows that-it not-there has that-one who from-the sustaining not himself
tiegne a tolt cargie, et sont si durement estordi ke a
may-hold for all burdened and are so hard dazed that with
paines se pueent il tenir es sieles, et, se il ne se
pains themselves can they hold in-the saddles and if they not themselves
fuscent tenu as cols de leurs cheuaus, ie croi quil fussent
were held to-the necks of their horses I believe that-they would-be
ambedoi cheut; mais li cheual furent fort, si se lancent
both fallen but the horses were strong so themselves launch
outre si eslongent, lun del autre, plus dun arpent de lonc.
past so distance the-one from the-other more than-an arpent of length

Ensi se furent entrabatu li rois Artus et
Thus themselves were each-other-struck-down the king Arthur and
Mordres, et lors recoumence la meslee grans et meruelleuse.
Mordred and then begins-again the melee great and marvelous
Et Galegantins li Galois, ki estoit cheualiers de grant
And Galegantin the Welshman who was knight of great
renomee, laisse courre a Mordret, lespee traite. et cil, ki
renown lets run at Mordred the-sword drawn and he who
ia estoit reuenus en son pooir et en sa force, quant il le
already was come-back into his power and into his strength when he him
uoit uenir, li gete son escu encontre lui, et Galegantins
sees come to-him casts his shield against him and Galegantin
i fiert si grant cop ke il en abat vn cantiel par
therein strikes so great blow that he thereof strikes-off a cantle by
deseure. Et Mordres, ki estoit mout ires, le fiert de toute
above And Mordred who was very angered him strikes with all
sa forche si durement kil li fait la tieste voler plus
his force so hard that-he to-him makes the head fly more
dune lance lonc del bu et li cors kiet a tiere, dont
than-a lance long from-the trunk and the body falls to ground whereof
ce fu damages mout grans, car mout estoit Galegantins
this was harm very great for very was Galegantin
boins cheualiers et gentius hom, si comme cil ki auoit
good knight and noble man so as he who had
este fius de roi et auoit tous iours este molt loiaus enuiers
been son of king and had all days been very loyal toward
son segneur le roi Artu. Quant li rois uoit Galegantin
his lord the king Arthur When the king sees Galegantin
iesir mort a tiere, il nest pas aaise, ains dist ke il le
lie dead on ground he not-is at-all at-ease rather says that he him
uengera, se il puet. Lors relaisse courre a Mordret, Et, en
will-avenge if he can Then lets-again-he run at Mordred And in

chou kil le uoloit ferir, .i. cheualiers de Honumberlande
this that-he him wished to-strike a knight of Northumberland
le prent a la trauierse si le fiert el coste seniestre dun
him takes at the cross so him strikes in-the side left with-a
glaiue fort et trencant. il le prist a descouiert si le peust
lance strong and sharp he him took at uncovered so him could
bien auoir mort, se li haubiers ne fust si fors, mais il se
well have dead if the hauberk not were so strong but it itself
tint si bien ke onkes maille nen rompi. il lenpaint bien
held so well that ever mail not-thereof broke he him-thrusts well
si le porte par desous le uentre del cheual a la tiere.
so him carries by below the belly of-the horse to the ground

Quant me sire Yuains, ki estoit errant uenus en la
When my lord Yvain who was journeying come into the
bataille le roi et estoit asses [pres] diluec, vit celui cop,
battalion of-the king and was quite near from-there saw that blow
si dist: 'Ha! Diex, quel dolor ci a, quant li preudon
so said-he Ah God what sorrow here has-there when the worthy-man
est mis a tiere si vilment!' lors laisse courre au cheualier
is put to ground so vilely then lets-be run at-the knight
de Nohomberlande si le fiert dun glaiue cort et gros si
of Northumberland so him strikes with-a lance short and thick so
durement ke por lescut ne pour le haubierc ne remaint il
hard that for the-shield nor for the hauberk not remains it
mie ke il ne li mece parmi le cors et fier et fust
at-all that he not to-him may-put through-amid the body both iron and shaft
si le porte a la tiere del cheual tel atorne ke il na de
so him carries to the ground from-the horse such arrayed that he not-has of
mire mestier, car lame se fu tost del cors departie. et
physician need for the-soul itself was soon from-the body departed and
au chaoir kil fist brisa li glaiues et uola en pieches. Il
at-the falling which-he made broke the lance and flew in pieces He

vient au roi si le fait monter, maugret trestous ses anemis.
comes to-the king so him makes mount despite all his enemies
Et Mordres, ki tant est dolans kil li est bien auis ke
And Mordred who so-much is sorrowful that-it to-him is well opinion that
il doiue del sens issir, sadrece uiers mon segnor Yuain,
he must from-the sense go-out himself-directs toward my lord Yvain
tout sans escut, et tint sespee a .ij. Mains. il fu fors de
all without shield and held his-sword in two Hands he was strong of
grant force et dur et li cols mut de haut si fiert si
great force and hard and the blow moved from high so strikes-he so
merueilleusement ke il li fent le hiaume et la coiffe de
marvelously that he to-him cleaves the helmet and the coif of
fier et le pourfent tout iusques ens espaules. lors estort
iron and him cleaves all until into shoulders then wrenches-he
son cop si labat mort a tiere, dont ce fu damages et
his blow so him-strikes-down dead to ground whereof this was harm and
grans dels, Car a celui tans tenoit on monsegnor Yuain a
great grief For at that time held one my-lord Yvain for
lun des .iij. cheualiers del monde et des plus preudomes,
the-one of-the three knights of-the world and of-the most worthy-men
et molt estoit et dous et debounaires et gentiex de
and much was-he both sweet and gracious and noble of
cuer et plus auoit le ior fait darmes et souffiert ke nus
heart and more had-he the day done of-arms and suffered than any
cheualiers ki eust este en toute lasanlee, ne de lune part et
knight who had been in all the-assembly or of the-one side and
de lautre, et mout auoit cous dounes et recheus. Quant li
of the-other and much had-he blows given and received When the
rois Artus voit ce cop, si dist: 'Ha! Diex, pour quoi souffres
king Arthur sees this blow so says-he Ah God for why suffer
uous ke iou uoi ke li plus traitres del monde a ocis vn
you that I may-see that the most traitor of-the world has killed one

des plus preudomes del siecle?' Et Saigremors li Derrees
of-the most worthy-men of-the world And Sagremor the Unruly
li respont: 'Sire, tel sont li giu de fortune. or poes
to-him answers Lord such are the games of fortune now can-you
ueoir quele vous vent mout chierement les grans honneurs
see that-she you sells very dearly the great honors
ke nous auons eues en cest monde; car al daerrain nous
which we have had in this world for at-the last us
tolt ele nos plus carnels amis. or doinst Diex ke nous
takes-away she our most fleshly friends now may-grant God that we
naion encore pis ke nous nauons eu iuskes a chi!'
not-may-have still worse than we have had until to here

The Death of Mordred

XLVIII

The guards of the standard kill all of Mordred's three hundred. By nones fewer than three hundred of a hundred thousand are alive, and of the Round Table only Arthur, Lucan, Girflet, and Sagremor remain. Mordred beheads Sagremor. Arthur drives his lance through Mordred, so that a ray of sunlight passes through the wound, and Mordred cleaves the king's skull: the father kills the son, and the son wounds the father to death. By vespers only Lucan and Girflet are left.

Endementiers kil ploroient ensi pour mon segnor Yuain, si
While that-they wept thus for my lord Yvain so
oient par derriers iaus une si grant huee, comme se tous li
hear-they from behind them a so great shout as if all the
mondes sescriast, car li .iij. cent cheualier Mordret, si tost
world cried-out for the three hundred knights of-Mordred so soon
com il aprochierent del estandart, sescrierent et li home
as they approached to-the standard cried-out and the men

le roi Artu ensement. Si peussies ueoir al encontrer
of-the king Arthur likewise So might-you-have seen at-the meeting
lances brisier et cheualiers cheoir. Mais li home le roi
lances break and knights fall But the men of-the king
Artu, ki estoient boin cheualier et adure et acoustume de
Arthur who were good knights and hardened and accustomed to
celui mestier, les rechiurent si bien et si uigereusement ke
that trade them received so well and so vigorously that
il en abatirent plus de .lx. en lor venir. Il traient les
they thereof struck-down more than sixty in their coming They draw the
espees dambesdeus pars Si sentrefierent de tout lor pooir
swords from-both sides So each-other-strike-they with all their power
et sentremehaignent et ocient, au plus ke il pueent. Si
and each-other-maim and kill at-the most that they can So
peussies ueoir iluec endroit, la v il assamblerent, la
might-you-have seen there in-place there where they joined the
tiere toute couuierte de cheualiers, mors et naures. si le
ground all covered with knights dead and wounded so it
fisent si bien a cele envaie li home le roi Artu — cil ki
did-they so well at that onset the men of-the king Arthur those who
lesstandart gardoient — ke onkes des .iij. cens cheualiers
the-standard guarded that ever of-the three hundred knights
Mordret nescapa pies que tout ne fuissent ocis et decope.
of-Mordred not-escaped foot but-that all not were killed and cut-down
La v il assamblerent entour eure de none, se uos a lor
There where they joined about hour of nones if you at that-time
fuissies el camp v cele grans bataille estoit, vos peussies
had-been in-the field where that great battle was you might-have
ueoir la tiere couuierte de mors si ke a paines pooit mais
seen the ground covered with dead so that with pains could more
nus cheuaus core, fors par deseur cors de cheualiers mors. A
any horse run except by over bodies of knights dead At

cele eure vn poi apries noune estoit ia la bataille si menee
that hour a little after nones was already the battle so brought
a fin ke de tous chiaus ki al matin assamblerent a la
to end that of all those who in-the morning joined on the
campaigne, ki estoient plus de cent mile, ke a piet ke
field who were more than hundred thousand as-much on foot as
a cheual, ni auoit pas remes .iij. cens, ke dune part
on horse not-there had at-all remained three hundred as-much on-one side
ke dautre, ke tout ne fuissent ocis et detrenchie. Et
as on-the-other but-that all not were killed and hacked And
des compaignons de la Table Reonde estoit ia si auenu
of-the companions of the Table Round was already so happened
ke il estoient tout mort et detrenchiet ne mais .iiij. car
that they were all dead and hacked nor more four for
il sestoient plus abandoune ke tout li autre por le grant
they themselves-had more abandoned than all the others for the great
besoing ke il uenoient. des .iiij. ki remes estoient en vie
need which they saw of-the four who remained were in life
est li rois Artus li vns; Et li autres Lucans li Boutelliers;
is the king Arthur the one And the other Lucan the Butler
Et li tiers Gyfles li fius Dos; Et li quars Saigremors li
And the third Girflet the son of-Do And the fourth Sagremor the
Derres. Mais Segremors, sans faille, estoit si naures durement
Unruly But Sagremor without fail was so wounded hard
parmi le cors ke a paines se pooit il mais tenir sespee.
through-amid the body that with pains himself could he more hold his-sword
A cele fois rasamblerent lor homes et laissent corre li
At that time assembled-again-they their men and let run the
vn encontre lautre, car il uoloient miex receuoir mort en
one against the-other for they wished better to-receive death in
la bataille ke li vn naient la uictore. Mordres laisse courre
the battle than the ones may-have the victory Mordred lets run

a Saigremor si le fiert de lespee, uoiant le roi Artu, si
at Sagremor so him strikes with the-sword seeing the king Arthur so
durement kil li fait le chief uoler plus dune toise
hard that-he to-him makes the head fly more than-a fathom
lonc. Et quant li rois le uoit, si dist trop dolans et trop
far And when the king it sees so said-he too sorrowful and too
courechies: 'Ha! Dex, por quoi laissies vous tant abaissier
angered Ah God for why let you so-much bring-low
tieriene [honeur]? Ha! Mordret, por lamour de cestui cop
earthly honor Ah Mordred for the-love of this blow
fac iou vn veu a Dieu ke il couuient ici morir v moi v
make I a vow to God that it behooves here to-die either me or
toi'. Il tint .i. glaiue boin et fort et bien trencant si laisse
thee He held a lance good and strong and well cutting so lets-he
courre tant kil puet del cheual traire. et Mordres, ki
run as-much that-he can from-the horse draw and Mordred who
bien counoist et apiercoit ke li rois ne bee fors a lui ocire,
well knows and perceives that the king not aims except at him to-kill
ne le refusa pas, car trop estoit de grant cuer, ain[s] li
not him refused at-all for too-much was-he of great heart rather to-him
adreche le tieste del cheual, lespee traite, ki toute estoit
directs the head of-the horse the-sword drawn which all was
uiermelle de sanc de chiaus qui il auoit le ior ocis. Et li
red with blood of those whom he had the day killed And the
rois, ki li uient de toute la force ke il ot, le fiert si
king who to-him comes with all the force which he had him strikes so
durement ke il li ront les mailles del haubierc se li
hard that he to-him breaks the mails of-the hauberk so to-him
met parmi le cors le fier de son glaiue et del fust grant
puts through-amid the body the iron of his lance and of-the shaft great
partie. et si dist lestoire ke apries le cop de son glaiue
part and so says the-history that after the blow of his lance

passa parmi la plaie li rais del solleil si apiertement ke
passed through-amid the wound the ray of-the sun so openly that
Gyrfles li fius Do le uit, Dont cil del pais, ki puis en
Girflet the son of-Do it saw Whence those of-the country who afterward thereof
oirent asses parler, disent ke chou auoit este senefiance de
heard a-good-deal speak said that this had been signification of
Nostre Segneur et signe de courouc. Et quant Mordres se
Our Lord and sign of anger And when Mordred himself
sent plaie, il pense bien ke il est naures a mort Si fiert si
feels wounded he thinks well that he is wounded to death So strikes-he so
durement le roi Artu amont en liaume ke li hiaumes ne
hard the king Arthur above on-the helmet that the helmet nor
la coiffe de fier ne le garandist ke il ne li face sentir
the coif of iron not him protects that he not to-him may-make feel
le trencant de lespee duskes au ties[te], et del ties[te]
the edge of the-sword until to-the skull and of-the skull
li abat grant piece. De celui cop fu li rois Artus si
to-him strikes-off great piece By that blow was the king Arthur so
estordis ke il vole a la tiere del cheual et autresi fait
dazed that he flies to the ground from-the horse and likewise does
Mordres, li vns dales lautre, car molt estoit cascuns naures.
Mordred the one beside the-other for very was each wounded
Ensi ocist li peres le fil et li fius le pere naura a
Thus killed the father the son and the son the father wounded to
mort. Et quant li home le roi Artu uirent lor segnor
death And when the men of-the king Arthur saw their lord
iesir a la tiere, ki ot tant de duel comme cuers morteus
lie on the ground who had so-much of grief as heart mortal
poroit dire ne penser, Si sescrient pluisor diaus: 'Ha! Diex,
could say nor think So cry-out several of-them Ah God
pour quoi souffres vous ceste dolor et ceste mierueille?'
for why suffer you this sorrow and this marvel

Lors relaissent courre as homes Mordret et cil a iaus,
Then let-again-they run at-the men of-Mordred and those at them
si recoumencierent entraus lestour mortel, ke, anchois eure
so began-again among-them the-fight mortal that before hour
de uiespres fust passee, ne remest il diaus tous ke tout
of vespers were passed not remained it of-them all but-that all
ne fussent ocis, fors seulement Lucans li Boutelliers et
not were killed except only Lucan the Butler and
Girfles ki estoit cheualiers le roi Artu.
Girflet who was knight of-the king Arthur

Quant la chose fu a chou uenue quil nen i ot mais
When the thing was to this come that-it not-thereof there had more
nul el camp ki a cheual fust remes, fors tout seulement
any in-the field who on horse were remained except all only
cil doi, ains gisoient li vn mort et li autre naure a mort,
those two rather lay the ones dead and the others wounded to death
il coumenchierent a plorer mout tenrement et osterent lor
they began to weep very tenderly and took-off their
hiaumes et disent: 'Ha! Diex, ki uit onkes mais si grant
helmets and said Ah God who saw ever more so great
dolor comme ci a, ke de tous les boins cheualiers del
sorrow as here has-there that of all the good knights of-the
roiame de Logres ni a nul remes ki ne gise mors!
realm of Logres not-there has any remained who not may-lie dead
Ha! bataille, tant feres en cest pais et en mains
Ah battle so-many will-you-make in this country and in many
lius autres poures orfenins, et mainte dame et mainte biele
places other poor orphans and many-a lady and many-a fair
damoisiele en demorra poure et desconseillie et en sera
damsel thereby will-remain poor and helpless and thereby will-be
tornee a hontage! Ha! iors, pour choi aiornas tu onkes,
turned to shame Ah day for why dawned thou ever

pour metre en si grant pourete le roialme de la Grant
for to-put into so great poverty the realm of the Great
Bertai[n]ge, dont li oir estoient renoume de mout grant
Britain whose the heirs were renowned for very great
proueche et doutet sour tous les cheualiers del monde, ki
prowess and feared above all the knights of-the world who
or gisent chi mort et detrenchiet a si grant dolor! Ha!
now lie here dead and hacked with so great sorrow Ah
Diex, ke poes uous plus tolir nos nouris et nous ausi
God what can you more take-away our nurslings and us also
ke nous ueons ici mors nos peres et nos freres et nos
that we see here dead our fathers and our brothers and our
fius et nos cousins si outreement ke el monde ne nous
sons and our cousins so utterly that in-the world not us
est remes dont riens nous doiue iestre a nul ior mais!'
is remained whereof anything to-us ought to-be at any day more

The True Chapel

XLIX

Lucan and Girflet find Arthur sitting wounded, and he rides with them from the field, leaving all his men dead. They pass the night in the True Chapel on a moor, Arthur praying on his knees for his men. At prime Lucan laments him, and Arthur, falling back in his armor, crushes him unknowing. Girflet reproaches him. At the shore Arthur draws Excalibur, red with blood, and wishes it were in Lancelot's hands.

Quant il ont grant pieche mene lor duel, si uinrent cele
When they have great while led their grief so came-they that
part v il orent veut le roi Artu cheoir. Et quant il
way where they had seen the king Arthur fall And when they

sont uenu la v il trouerent le roi en son seant, ki
are come there where they found the king in his sitting who
mout se sentoit durement naures, Il descendent et li
much himself felt hard wounded They dismount and to-him
demandent: 'Sire, coument uous sentes uous'? Et il lor
ask Lord how you feel you And he to-them
respont: 'maintenant il ni a ke del monter et deslongier
answers at-once it not-there is but of-the mounting and to-leave
ceste place, au plus ke nous poons, car iou uoi bien ke ma
this place at-the most that we can for I see well that my
fins aproce, ne entre mes anemis ne nauroie iou por rien
end approaches nor among my enemies not would-have I for anything
finer'. Lors se lieue sus de la v il seoit et monte sor
to-end Then himself raises-he up from there where he sat and mounts upon
son cheual asses plus legierement ke si doi compaignon
his horse a-good-deal more lightly than his two companions
ne peussent quidier. Et li autre montent apries et li rois
— could think And the others mount after and the king
se part del camp, mout durement pensis et larmoiant
himself departs from-the field very hard pensive and weeping
des iex del front, et lait tous ses homes ocis et sen
from-the eyes of-the brow and leaves all his men killed and himself-thence
uait, entre lui et Lucan le Bouteillier et Gyrflet. Si oirent
goes between him and Lucan the Butler and Girflet So journeyed
tout troi en tel maniere droit uiers la mer tant ke la nuis
all three in such manner straight toward the sea until that the night
lor soruint. Lors vinrent enmi vne capiele ki estoit enmi
to-them came-upon Then came-they amid a chapel which was amid
vne lande. et estoit cele capiele apielee le Uraie Capiele et
a moor and was that chapel called the True Chapel and
si venoit cascun ior canter vns preudom et de sainte vie, ki
so came each day to-sing a worthy-man and of holy life who

manoit pries diluec en .i. boskiel. Li rois vient a la capiele
dwelt near from-there in a thicket The king comes to the chapel
et descent, et autresi font li autre et ostent a lor
and dismounts and likewise do the others and take-off from their
cheuaus les frains et les sieles. Li rois entre laiens si se
horses the bridles and the saddles The king enters in-there so himself
met deuant lautel a genous et coumence ses orisons, tels
puts before the-altar on knees and begins his prayers such
com il les sauoit, si demora laiens en tel maniere desi au
as he them knew so stayed-he in-there in such manner until-to the
matin ke onkes de genous ne se remua ne sa proiere ne
morning that ever from knees not himself moved nor his prayer not
fina uiers Nostre Segnor ke il eus[t] mierci de ses homes
ceased toward Our Lord that he might-have mercy on his men
ki le ior auoient este ocis Et de lui meismes. Et, en ce
who the day had been killed And on him himself And in this
kil faisoit ceste proiere, il ploroit si parfondement ke cil
that-he made this prayer he wept so deeply that those
ki aueuc lui estoient entendoient mout bien ke il ploroit.
who with him were heard very well that he wept

Toute la nuit fu li rois Artus en proieres et en orisons,
All the night was the king Arthur in prayers and in orisons
ensi ke ie vous di. A lendemain, a eure de prime, auint
thus as I you tell On the-next-day at hour of prime happened-it
ke Lucans li Boutelliers estoit deriere le roi Artu et auoit
that Lucan the Butler was behind the king Arthur and had
mout longement demouret et regardet le roi, ki ne se
very long stayed and looked-at the king who not himself
remouoit de genous. Et lors dist tout en plorant vne parole
moved from knees And then said-he all in weeping a word
ke li rois entendi mout bien: 'Ha! rois Artus, mout est de
which the king heard very well Ah king Arthur much is of

uous grans dieus et grans damages!' Quant li rois ot oie
you great grief and great harm When the king had heard
ceste parole, si sestent arriere. Il fu grans et fors et
this word so himself-stretches-he backward He was great and strong and
pesans et corsus et tous armes si a consiut de sous
heavy and bulky and all armed so has-he caught from below
lui entre lui et la terre Lucan, ki tous estoit desarmes.
him between him and the ground Lucan who all was unarmed
si lestraint, si non mie par courous que il eust a lui
so him-clasps so not at-all through anger which he had at him
mais por langoisse ki li estoit au cuer, si durement
but for the-anguish which to-him was at-the heart so hard
ke il le froissa tout en tel maniere ke il ne puet parole
that he him crushed all in such manner that he not can word
dire, ains li parti tout maintenant lame del cors.
say rather to-him parted all at-once the-soul from-the body
Quant li rois ot deseur lui este grant pieche, il se
When the king had over him been great while he himself
relieue ne ne quide pas encore que il soit mors. Et quant
raises nor not thinks at-all yet that he may-be dead And when
Gyrfles la grant piece regarde et il uoit ke il ne se
Girflet him-has great while looked-at and he sees that he not himself
remue, il apierchoit molt bien ke il est mors et ke li rois
moves he perceives very well that he is dead and that the king
la ocis, si recoumence son duel et dist au roi: 'Ha!
him-has killed so begins-again-he his grief and said to-the king Ah
sire, mal aues fait, ki Lucam aues mort! ia uous auoit
lord ill have-you done who Lucan have killed already you had
il sierui tout son aage et loyalment'. Et quant li rois se
he served all his age and loyally And when the king himself
regarde et il uoit ke il a son cheualier ocis, Lors li
looks and he sees that he has his knight killed Then to-him

croist ses dieus et enforce. Si respont a Gyrflet en samblant
grows his grief and strengthens So answers-he to Girflet in semblance
de home courouchiet: 'Fortune, ki ma este mere et
of man angered Fortune who to-me-has been mother and
amie iuskes a chi, mest ore deuenue marastre et ennemie.
beloved until to here to-me-is now become stepmother and enemy
Et chou fait ele por chou ke iou vse le remanant de
And this does she for this that I may-use the remnant of
ma vie en duel et en tristor, et si ferai iou, ce sage bien
my life in grief and in sadness and so shall-do I this know well
ciertainement'. Lors dist a Gyrflet ke il mece les frains et
certainly Then said-he to Girflet that he may-put the bridles and
les sieles Et il si fait. Li rois monte erranment et se part
the saddles And he so does The king mounts forthwith and himself departs
de la capiele, entre lui et Girflet, Et cheuaucent uiers la
from the chapel between him and Girflet And ride toward the
mer au plus droit ke il pueent Et il i sont uenu entor
sea at-the most straight that they can And they there are come about
leure de miedi. Il descendent a la riue si sasient. et li
the-hour of midday They dismount at the shore so themselves-sit and the
rois descaint sespee de entour lui et puis la traist del
king ungirds his-sword from around him and then it draws from-the
fuerre si le uoit tainte et uiermeille del sanc a chiaus
sheath so it sees stained and red with-the blood of those
a qui il en auoit ocis. Et quant il la regardee grant
to whom he thereof had killed And when he it-has looked-at great
pieche, si dist: 'Escalibor, espee boine et riche, la miudre
while so said-he Excalibur sword good and rich the best
ki onkes entrast el roiaume de Logres, san celi as
which ever entered into-the kingdom of Logres except that-of the
Estranges Renges, or pierdras tu ton maistre v recouuerras
Strange Hangings now wilt-lose thou thy master where wilt-recover

tu iamais dautre si bon et home en cui tu soies ausi
thou ever of-other so good and man in whom thou mayest-be as
bien enploie comme tu estoies en moi, Se tu ne viens
well employed as thou wert in me If thou not comest
es mains Lanselot. Ha! Lanselot, li plus preudom et li
into-the hands of-Lancelot Ah Lancelot the most worthy-man and the
miudres cheualiers ke iou ueisse onkes, pleust a Ihesu
best knight whom I saw ever might-it-please to Jesus
Crist ke tu le tenisse orendroit et iou le seusse! ciertes
Christ that thou it held now and I it knew certainly
mame en seroit plus aaise a tous iors mais, se tu lauoies'.
my-soul thereby would-be more at-ease for all days more if thou it-hadst

Excalibur

L

Arthur bids Girflet throw Excalibur into a lake. Twice Girflet hides it and lies, and twice the king knows. The third time he throws it, and a hand rises from the water, catches it by the hilt, brandishes it three times, and sinks. Arthur sends Girflet away, saying they will never meet again. From a hillock Girflet sees Morgan's ship of ladies take the king aboard; it is gone before he reaches the shore, where he grieves a day and a night.

Quant li rois ot dite ceste parole, lors dist a Gyrflet: 'Ales
When the king had said this word then said-he to Girflet Go
la sus en cel tiertre v uous troueres .i. lac, et, quant
there up on that hillock where you will-find a lake and when
vous lares troue, si gietes ceste espee dedens, car ie ne
you it-will-have found so cast this sword within for I not
wel mie ke li mauuais oir de cest roiaume ki apries nous
wish at-all that the bad heirs of this kingdom who after us

regneront soient saisi de si bone espee comme ceste est'.
will-reign may-be seized of so good sword as this is
'Sire', fait il, 'a uostre commandement, mais encore vausisse
Lord says he at your command but still would-I-wish
iou miex ke vous le me dounissies'. 'Non ferai, Gyrflet', fait
I better that you it me might-give Not shall-I-do Girflet says
li rois, 'car en vous ne seroit ele pas bien enploie a ma
the king for in you not would-be it at-all well employed to my
volente'. Lors prent Gyfles lespee et uient el tiertre et
will Then takes Girflet the-sword and comes onto-the hillock and
trueue le lac tout ensi ke li rois li auoit dit. et quant
finds the lake all thus as the king to-him had said and when
il vit le lac, il traist lespee fors del fuerre si le commence
he saw the lake he drew the-sword out of-the sheath so it begins
a regarder et li samble si biele et si bone et si rice
to look-at and to-him seems so fair and so good and so rich
ke il li est auis ke trop seroit grans damages, se il le
that it to-him is opinion that too great would-be harm if he it
gietoit en cel lac, car ensi seroit ele pierdue; mius vieut il
cast into that lake for thus would-be it lost better wishes he
ke il i giet la soie et celi retiegne, puis die au
that he there may-cast the his and that-one may-keep then may-say to-the
roi ke il li a ietee. Lors descaint sespee si la ietee
king that he it-to-him has cast Then ungirds-he his-sword so it-has cast
el lac et lautre repont en lierbe et uient au roi si
into-the lake and the-other hides in the-grass and comes to-the king so
li dist: 'Sire, iou a[i] fait vostre commandement, car iou
to-him said Lord I have done your command for I
ai ietee lespee dedens le lac'. 'et ke as tu veu?' fait li
have cast the-sword within the lake and what hast thou seen says the
rois. 'Sire', fait il, 'iou ne uic noient'. 'Ha! Gyrflet', fait li
king Lord says he I not saw anything Ah Girflet says the

rois, ‘tu me trauailles. Va arriere et se li giete, car encore
king thou me troublest Go back and so it cast for still
ne li as tu pas ietee’. Et cil retorne maintenant al lac
not it hast thou at-all cast And he returns at-once to-the lake
et prent lespee si le traist hors del fuere et le commence
and takes the-sword so it draws out of-the sheath and it begins
trop durement a regarder et a plaindre, et dist ke ce
too hard to look-at and to lament and said that this
seroit trop grans damages, se ele estoit ensi del tout
would-be too great harm if it were thus of-the all
pierdue. Et lors se pourpense ke il i gietera le fuerre
lost And then himself bethinks-he that he there will-cast the sheath
et lespee retenra, car encore pora auoir mestier v a
and the-sword will-keep for still will-be-able have need either to
lui v a autrui. Lors giete le fuerre el lac erranment et
him or to another Then casts-he the sheath into-the lake forthwith and
puis repont lespee de soz un arbre, puis sen reuient
then hides the-sword from below a tree then himself-thence returns-he
maintenant au roi se li dist: ‘Sire, iou ai fait uostre
at-once to-the king so to-him says Lord I have done your
commandement’. ‘Et que as tu ueut?’ fait li rois. ‘Sire, ie
command And what hast thou seen says the king Lord I
nai riens veu ke ie ne deusse veoir’. ‘Ha!’ fait li rois,
not-have anything seen that I not should see Ah says the king
‘encore ne li as tu pas ietee. por coi me trauailles tu
still not it hast thou at-all cast for why me troublest thou
tant? Va se li giete, si verras kil en auenra; car sans
so-much Go so it cast so wilt-thou-see what-it thereof will-happen for without
trop grant merueille ne sera ele ia pierdue, ce saces tu’.
too great marvel not will-be it ever lost this know thou

Quant Gyrfles uoit ke faire li couuient, si reuient la v
When Girflet sees that to-do it behooves so returns-he there where
il auoit lespee laissie si le prent et le coumence a regarder
he had the-sword left so it takes-he and it begins to look-at
et a plaindre trop durement et dist: 'Ha! espee, boine et
and to lament too hard and said Ah sword good and
biele, com est grans damages ke uous ne chaes en le main
fair how is great harm that you not fall into the hand
a aucun preudome!' lors la gietee el lac au plus loins
of some worthy-man then it has-cast into-the lake at-the most far
de lui ke il puet. Et maintenant ke il aprocha liaue, il
from him that he can And at-once that he approached the-water he
vit ke vne mains issi del lac et apparu desi au coute,
saw that a hand came-out of-the lake and appeared until to-the elbow
mais del cors de quoi la mains estoit ne uit il point.
but of-the body of which the hand was not saw he a-whit
La mains recut lespee parmi le heut, puis le commencha
The hand received the-sword by the hilt then it began
a brandir et a escoure encontre mont par trois fois.
to brandish and to shake against high by three times
Quant Gyrfles lot ueu apiertement, la mains se rebouta
When Girflet it-had seen openly the hand itself thrust-back
en liaue a toute lespee. Et il atendi illuec grant piece,
into the-water with all the-sword And he waited there great while
por sauoir se ele se demousterroit plus. Et quant il vit
for to-know if it itself would-show more And when he saw
kil i musoit por noient, il se part de lac et
that-he there idled for nothing he himself departs from-the lake and
uint au roi si li dist ke il a lespee ietee el lac
came to-the king so to-him said that he has the-sword cast into-the lake
et li conte tout chou kil auoit ueu. 'Par Diu', fait li
and to-him tells all this which-he had seen By God says the

rois, ‘tout chou pensoie iou bien, car ma fins aproche mout
king all this thought I well for my end approaches very
durement’. et lors commence a penser mout longement Et
hard and then begins-he to think very long And
en cel penser li venoient les larmes as iex. Et quant il
in that thought to-him came the tears to-the eyes And when he
a mout grant pieche este en cel penser, si dist a Gyrflet:
has very great while been in that thought so said-he to Girflet
‘il vous couuient aler de ci A tel eure et departir de moi
it you behooves to-go from here At such hour and to-part from me
ke iamais ne me venres a nul ior’. ‘Par cest couuent’,
that ever not me will-you-come-to on any day By this covenant
fait Giffles, ‘ne me departiroie iou en nule maniere’. ‘Si
says Girflet not me would-part I in any manner So
feres’, fait li rois, ‘car a faire le uous couuient v autrement
will-you-do says the king for to do it you behooves or otherwise
ie vous haroie de mortel haine’. ‘Ha! sire’, fait Gyrfles,
I you would-hate with mortal hatred Ah lord says Girflet
‘comment porroit chou iestre ke iou uos laisseroie chi tout
how could this be that I you would-leave here all
seul et ie men iroie et encore me dites uous ke ie
alone and I me-thence would-go and still me tell you that I
ne vous uerrai iamais?’ ‘Il couient’, fait li rois, ‘ke vous le
not you shall-see ever It behooves says the king that you it
faites ensi comme ie vous di. mais ales uous ent de ci
do thus as I you tell but go you thence from here
uistement, car del demorer ni a il point. et ie vous en
quickly for of-the staying not-there is it a-whit and I you thereof
pri par icele amor ki a este tous iors entre moi et vos’.
pray by that love which has been all days between me and you

Quant Gyrfles entent ke li rois len proie si
When Girflet hears that the king him-thereof prays so
doucement, se li dist: 'Sire, ie ferai chou ke vous
sweetly so to-him said-he Lord I shall-do this which you
me commandes si dolans conques nus plus. Mais tant me
me command so sorrowful that-ever any more But so-much me
dites, se vous plait, se vous quidies ke iou vous reuoie
tell if-it you pleases if you think that I you may-see-again
iamais'. 'Nenil, voir', fait li rois. 'Et quel part', fait Gyrfles,
ever No truly says the king And what way says Girflet
'cuidies vous aler?' 'Chou ne vous dirai iou pas', fait li
think you to-go This not you shall-tell I at-all says the
rois. et quant Gyrfles uoit kil ni prendera plus, si
king and when Girflet sees that-he not-there will-take more so
monte et se part del roi Artu. Et si tost comme il
mounts-he and himself departs from-the king Arthur And so soon as he
sen fu partis, vne pluie commence a chaoir, trop grans
himself-thence was departed a rain begins to fall too great
et trop mieruelleuse, ki li dura duskes a vn tiertre
and too marvelous which to-him lasted until to a hillock
ki estoit lonc del roi bien demie liue. Et quant il
which was far from-the king fully half league And when he
fu venus al tiertre, il sariesta par desus vn arbre, tant
was come to-the hillock he himself-stopped by over a tree until
ke la pluie fu passee, et commencha a regarder, tout en
that the rain was passed and began to look all in
plorant, cele part u il auoit le roi laissiet. Si uit venir
weeping that way where he had the king left So saw-he come
parmi la mer vne nef toute plaine de dames, et ariua
through-amid the sea a ship all full of ladies and arrived
la nes deuant le roi Artu, ki encore estoit a la riue. Les
the ship before the king Arthur who still was at the shore The

dames vinrent al bort de la nef et cele ki estoit dame
ladies came to-the board of the ship and she who was lady
deles estoit Morghe, la suer le roi Artu, si proia le roi
of-them was Morgan the sister of-the king Arthur so prayed-she the king
ke il entrast en la nef Et il li otroia. Si tost comme
that he might-enter into the ship And he it-to-her granted So soon as
il counut Morgain, si se leua tantost de la tiere v
he knew Morgan so himself raised-he at-once from the ground where
il seoit et entra en la nef et mist son cheual aueuc lui
he sat and entered into the ship and put his horse with him
et ses armes. Et quant Girfles, ki estoit el tiertre, ot
and his arms And when Girflet who was on-the hillock had
veu ke il sen torna, si retorna arriere quanquil pot
seen that he himself-thence turned so returned-he back as-much-as-he could
del cheual traire et faitant ke a la riue vient. Et
from-the horse draw and does-so-much that to the shore comes And
quant il i est venus, il voit le roi Artu entre les dames
when he there is come he sees the king Arthur among the ladies
et counoist bien Morgain la Fee, car maintes fois lauoit
and knows well Morgan the Fay for many times her-had-he
veue. Et la nef sen fu eslongie de la riue en poi
seen And the ship itself-thence was distanced from the shore in little
deure plus ke vns arbalaistres ne peust traire a trois fois.
of-hour more than a crossbowman — could shoot at three times
Et quant Gyrfles voit kil a ensi le roi pierdu, il descent
And when Girflet sees that-he has thus the king lost he dismounts
a la riue et fait le grenor duel del monde et demeure
at the shore and makes the greatest grief of-the world and stays
iluec tout le ior et toute la nuit en tel maniere ke onques
there all the day and all the night in such manner that ever
ni but ne ne manga. ne ausi nauoit il fait le ior de
not-there drank-he nor not ate nor also not-had he done the day of

deuant, car tant auoit de la mescanche grant dolor ki
before for so-much had-he from the mischance great sorrow which
auenue lor estoit, en tel maniere ke nus ne le poroit dire.
happened to-them was in such manner that any not it could say

The Tombs in the Chapel

LI

Girflet stays two days with a hermit, then returns to the True Chapel and finds two tombs before the altar: Lucan's, and a richer one inscribed for King Arthur, who brought twelve kingdoms under his rule. The holy man says ladies brought the body. Girflet becomes a hermit there and lives eighteen days after the king. Mordred's two sons seize the land, and the queen, fearing them, takes the veil in her abbey.

A lendemain, quant solaus fu leues et li oisiel orent
On the-next-day when sun was risen and the birds had
commenchies lor cans parmi ces bos, Gyrfles, si dolans et
begun their songs through these woods Girflet so sorrowful and
si courouchies, monta sour son cheual et se parti de
so angered mounted upon his horse and himself departed from
la riue et cheuauche tant ke il vint a .i. petit bos, ki
the shore and rides so-much that he came to a little wood which
pries diluec estoit. Il auoit en cel bos .i. hiermite, dont
near from-there was It had in that wood a hermit with-whom
il estoit mout acointes. Si ala a lui et demora laiens
he was much acquainted So went-he to him and stayed in-there
deus iors, por che kil se senti aukes dehaitie del
two days for this that-he himself felt somewhat unwell from-the
grant duel kil auoit eu, et conta tout al preudome
great grief which-he had had and told all to-the worthy-man
chou kil auoit auenu et veu del roi Artu. Al tierc
this which-he had befallen and seen of-the king Arthur On-the third

ior se departi de laiens et se pensa kil iroit a
day himself departed-he from in-there and himself bethought that-he would-go to
la Uaire Capiele, por sauoir si Luchans li Boutelliers estoit
the True Chapel for to-know if Lucan the Butler was
encore mis en tiere. Et quant il fu la venus entour leure
yet put in ground And when he was there come about the-hour
de miedi, Il descendi a lentree et atacha son cheual a
of midday He dismounted at the-entry and tied his horse to
un arbre et puis entra dedens. Et quant il fu dedens, il
a tree and then entered within And when he was within he
troua deuant lautel .ij. tombes mout bieles et mout rices,
found before the-altar two tombs very fair and very rich
Mais lune estoit asses plus riche del autre. Desus la
But the-one was a-good-deal more rich than-the other Upon the
mains riche auoit letres ki disoient: 'Chi gist Luchans
less rich had-there letters which said Here lies Lucan
li Bouteilliers, cui li rois Artus estainst desous lui'. Et
the Butler whom the king Arthur crushed below him And
desous la tombe ki si estoit rice et biele auoit letres ki
upon the tomb which so was rich and fair had-there letters which
disoient: 'Chi gist li rois Artus, ki par sa valor mist en
said Here lies the king Arthur who by his valor put into
se subiection .xij. roiaumes'. Et quant il ot leues les letres,
his subjection twelve kingdoms And when he had read the letters
si se pasme desus sa tombe. Et quant il reuint de
so himself swoons-he upon his tomb And when he came-back from
pasmisons, il baisa la tombe mout doucement et coumenche
swoons he kissed the tomb very sweetly and begins
desous li a faire mout grant duel. et demora laiens duskes
below it to make very great grief and stayed in-there until
au nuit ke li preudons vint ki sieruoit lautel. Et quant il
to-the night that the worthy-man came who served the-altar And when he

fu uenus, Gyrfles li demanda maintenant: 'Sire preudom,
was come Girflet to-him asked at-once Lord worthy-man
est chou uoirs ke caiens gist li rois Artus?' 'Biaus amis',
is this true that in-here lies the king Arthur Fair friend
fait li preudons, 'il gist caiens voirement, se li aporterent
says the worthy-man he lies in-here truly so him brought
dames; mais ie ne se sai ki eles furent'. Et Gyrfles
ladies but I not it know who they were And Girflet
sapense erranment ke ce furent celes ki lauoient mis
bethinks-himself forthwith that these were those who him-had put
en lor nef Si dist ke, puiske se sire est partis de cest
in their ship So said-he that since-that his lord is departed from this
siecle al siecle, ne demorra il plus; si proie tant liermite
world in-the world not will-stay he more so prays-he so-much the-hermit
ke il le rechoit auoec lui en sa compaignie.
that he him receives with him in his company

Ensi deuint Gyrfles hyermites en la Uaire Capiele, mais il
Thus became Girflet hermit in the True Chapel but he
ni fu pas longement, car apries le roi Artu ne uesqui il
not-there was at-all long for after the king Arthur not lived he
ke .xviij. iors. et endeme[n]tiers kil demoroit en liermitage,
but eighteen days and meanwhile that-he stayed in the-hermitage
vinrent auant li doi fil Mordret, ke il auoit fait demorer a
came forward the two sons of-Mordred whom he had made stay at
Wincestre, por garder la vile, se mestiers fust. et les auoit
Winchester for to-guard the town if need were and them had
Mordres laissies dedens meismement pour chou. Cil doi
Mordred left within especially for this Those two
estoient boin cheualier et adure, et, si tost com il sorent
were good knights and hardened and so soon as they knew
la mort lor pere et la mort le roi Artu et des autres
the death of-their father and the death of-the king Arthur and of-the other

preudoumes ki en la bataille auoient este ocis, Il prisent
worthy-men who in the battle had been killed They took
auoec iaus tous ciaus de Wincestre et alerent saisissant la tiere
with them all those of Winchester and went seizing the land
de toutes pars. Et il le porent faire asses legierement et
from all sides And they it could do a-good-deal lightly and
a chou kil ne trouerent onkes ki lor contredesist, car
for this that-they not found ever who to-them would-gainsay for
tout li preudoume et li boin cheualier del pais auoient este
all the worthy-men and the good knights of-the country had been
mort en la bataille. Et la roine Genyeure, ki estoit en labeie,
dead in the battle And the queen Guinevere who was in the-abbey
quant ele sot mort le roi et on li ot conte ke cil aloient
when she knew dead the king and one to-her had told that those went
ensi la tiere saisissant, ele ot paor ke cil ne locesissent, se
thus the land seizing she had fear that those — her-would-kill if
il le pooient trouer. Ele prist tout maintenant les dras de
they her could find She took all at-once the cloths of
relegion et deuint noune en labeie. Mais atant laisse li
religion and became nun in the-abbey But thereupon leaves the
contes ore a parler diaus tous et retorne a conter de Lanselot.
tale now to speak of-them all and returns to tell of Lancelot

Lancelot Returns to Logres

LII

A messenger tells Lancelot of Arthur's end and of Mordred's sons. With Bors, Lionel, and Hector he crosses with twenty thousand men. The sons choose to fight at Winchester rather than flee. On the day of the battle Lancelot learns that the queen died three days before, after a fair repentance, and rides for Winchester in grief and wrath. Melehan, the elder son, runs Lionel through, and Bors cleaves Melehan to the shoulders.

Or dist li contes ke, endementiers ke ces choses furent
Now says the tale that while that these things were
auenues, vint vns messages de la roine de Logres a Lanselot,
happened came a messenger of the queen of Logres to Lancelot
v il estoit el roiame de Gaunes, et li conta toute la
where he was in-the kingdom of Gaunes and to-him told all the
verite, ensi com il estoit auenut del roi Artu et la grant
truth thus as it was happened of-the king Arthur and the great
dolor des preudoumes ki auoient este mort Et coument li
sorrow of-the worthy-men who had been dead And how the
doi fil Mordret ont saisie toute la tiere de Logres apries le
two sons of-Mordred have seized all the land of Logres after the
mort le roi Artu. Quant Lanselos entendi ces nouuieles, il
death of-the king Arthur When Lancelot heard these news he
en fu molt courechies si en fist duel molt mieruelleus,
thereby was very angered so thereof made-he grief very marvelous
car trop auoit amet le roi Artu. Et autresi en fisent
for too-much had-he loved the king Arthur And likewise thereof made
mout grant duel tout li autre baron et tout li cheualier
very great grief all the other barons and all the knights
del roiame de Gaunes ki le counissoient. Lanselos se
of-the kingdom of Gaunes who him knew Lancelot himself

consella a[s] .ij. rois ke il pora faire de ceste chose,
counseled with-the two kings what he will-be-able do about this thing
car il ne haoit riens autretant comme Mordret et ses
for he not hated anything as-much as Mordred and his
enfans. ‘Sire’, fait li rois Boors, ‘ie vous dirai ke uous en
children Lord says the king Bors I you shall-tell what you thereof
feres. on mandera nos homes et pries et lonc; et quant
will-do one will-summon our men both near and far and when
il seront uenut, nous nous partirons del roiame de
they will-be come we ourselves shall-depart from-the kingdom of
Gaunes si passerons en la Grant Bertaigne. Et quant nous
Gaunes so shall-cross into the Great Britain And when we
i serons venut, se li fil Mordret ne senfuient, il
there shall-be come if the sons of-Mordred not themselves-thence-flee they
pueent iestre asseur de mort nouuiele recheuoir’. ‘Loes vous’,
can be sure of death new to-receive Advise you
fait Lanselos, ‘ke nous le faisons ensi?’ ‘Sire’, fait Boors,
says Lancelot that we it may-do thus Lord says Bors
‘nous ne ueons mie comment nous en soiens autrement
we not see at-all how we thereof might-be otherwise
vengiet’. Lors mandent lor homes de toutes pars chiaus
avenged Then summon-they their men from all sides those
del roiame de Benuyc et de Gaunes Si en assambrerent
of-the kingdom of Benwick and of Gaunes So thereof assembled-they
tant ke dedens .xv. iors en orent il assamble bien
so-many that within fifteen days thereof had they assembled well
.xx. mile, ke a piet ke a cheual. En la cite de
twenty thousand as-much on foot as on horse In the city of
Gaunes fu faite ceste assamblee. Et quant li cheualier del
Gaunes was made this assembly And when the knights of-the
pais furent uenu, Li rois Boors et li rois Lyons et
country were come The king Bors and the king Lionel and

Lanselos et Hector se partirent erramment de la tiere
Lancelot and Hector themselves departed forthwith from the land
de Gaunes a toute lor compaignie et cheualchierent tant
of Gaunes with all their company and rode so-much
par lor iornees ke il vinrent a la mer. et auoient
by their days'-journeys that they came to the sea and had
tant fait, cil qui il auoit envoiet auant, ke il trouerent
so-much done those whom he had sent before that they found
lor nes prestes, si entrerent ens et orent si bon uent ke
their ships ready so entered-they in and had so good wind that
il arriuerent celui ior meismes en la Grant Bertaigne.
they arrived that day itself in the Great Britain

Quant il furent venut a tiere, sain et haitie, il en
When they were come to land sound and healthy they thereof
fisent molt grant ioie si se logierent celui ior sor
made very great joy so themselves lodged-they that day upon
la mer et sor la marine et fisent mout grant fieste.
the sea and upon the shore and made very great feast
a lendemain vinrent les nouuieles as fius Mordret ke
on the-next-day came the news to-the sons of-Mordred that
Lanselos estoit arriues en la tiere et auoit amenet auoec
Lancelot was arrived in the land and had brought with
lui molt grant gent. et quant il oirent ceste nouuiele, il
him very great people and when they heard this news they
en furent molt esmaiet, car il ne doutoient nul home
thereby were very dismayed for they not feared any man
autretant comme Lanselot, si se conseillierent entriaus
as-much as Lancelot so themselves counseled-they among-them
ke il poroient faire, Et tant ke il sacorderent a chov ke
what they could do And so-far that they agreed to this that
il prenderoient lor homes et iroient combatre a Lanselot
they would-take their men and would-go to-fight with Lancelot

en bataille campel et cui Dex en dounast lonor se
in battle pitched and to-whom God thereof might-give the-honor so
le presist, Car mieus amoient il a morir en bataille ke
it might-take For better loved they to die in battle than
aler defuiant par le pais. Tout ensi com il le disent,
to-go fleeing through the country All thus as they it said
il le fisent, car il manderent esranment tous leur homes
they it did for they summoned forthwith all their men
et les fisent tous assambler a Wincestre, Et il sestoient
and them had all assemble at Winchester And they themselves-were
ia auanchie si en poi de tans ke tout li preudome del
already advanced so in little of time that all the worthy-men of-the
roiame de Logres lor auoient fait houmage. Quant il
kingdom of Logres to-them had done homage When they
orent fait assambler lor homes, ensi com ie vous ai dit,
had had assemble their men thus as I you have said
Et cheuauchierent encontre Lanselot, a vn mardi matin
And rode against Lancelot on a Tuesday morning
oirent nouuieles ke vns messages lor dist ke Lanselos
heard-they news that a messenger to-them said that Lancelot
venoit a ost sor iaus et estoit ia pries diluec .vi. liues;
came in host upon them and was already near from-there six leagues
bien fussent il asseur ke il aroient la bataille ains eure
well might they-be sure that they would-have the battle before hour
de tierce. Quant il oirent ceste nouuiele il disent ke il
of tierce When they heard this news they said that they
latenderoient iluec et se combateroient a lui et a ses
him-would-await there and themselves would-fight with him and with his
homes, puis ke par autre cose ne sen pooient passer.
men since that by other thing not themselves-thence could pass

Ensi furent cil de Logres arrieste deuant Wincestre. et
Thus were those of Logres halted before Winchester and
Lanselos cheuauche toutes voies, entre lui et sa compaignie,
Lancelot rides all the-same between him and his company
Mais il estoit si tristres et si courechies ke nus plus; Car
But he was so sad and so angered that none more For
celui ior meismes ke la bataille deuoit iestre li furent
that day itself that the battle was-to be to-him were
uenues nouuieles ke sa dame la roine estoit morte, .iij.
come news that his lady the queen was dead three
iors auoit passes; et tout ensi estoit il avenut con li
days had-there passed and all thus was it happened as-one to-him
auoit dit, Car la roine estoit lors trespassee nouuielement.
had said For the queen was then passed newly
Mais onkes nule dame plus biele fin not ne plus biele
But ever any lady more fair end not-had nor more fair
repentanche ne plus doucement ne cria mierchi uiers Nostre
repentance nor more sweetly not cried mercy toward Our
Segnor com ele fist. De sa mort fu Lanselos mout dolans
Lord than she did Of her death was Lancelot very sorrowful
et mout chourechies et en fu a grant mescief sour
and very angered and thereof was at great distress above
tous homes. quant il en sot la uerite, si cheuaucha
all men when he thereof knew the truth so rode-he
mout ireement droit viers Wincestre. Et quant cil ki les
very wrathfully straight toward Winchester And when those who them
atendoient les uirent uenir, il monterent sor lor cheuaus
awaited them saw come they mounted upon their horses
et assamblerent a iaus en plaine bataille. si peussies
and joined with them in full battle so might-you-have
ueoir al encontrer maint ceualier ocire et maint uierser a
seen at-the meeting many-a knight kill and many-a overturn to

tiere et maint cheual estraier parmi le camp, dont li segnor
ground and many-a horse straying through the field whereof the lords
gissoient mort par tiere. La bataille dura duskes a eure de
lay dead on ground The battle lasted until to hour of
noune, car molt estoient grant gent, dune part et dautre.
nones for very were great people on-one side and on-the-other
Entour eure de none auint ke li ains nes des .ij. fius
About hour of nones happened-it that the first born of-the two sons
Mordret, cil ki Melehaus estoit apieles, tenoit vn glaiue a
of-Mordred he who Melehan was called held a lance with
fier trenchant et aguissiet. Il laisse courre au roi Lion
iron sharp and sharpened He lets run at-the king Lionel
tant durement ke il pot del cheual traire si le fiert
as hard as he could from-the horse draw so him strikes-he
si durement de toute sa forche ke li escus ne li haubiers
so hard with all his force that the shield nor the hauberk
nel garandist ke il ne li meche la glaiue parmi le
not-him protects that he not to-him may-put the lance through-amid the
cors, si en paint le roi de toute sa uiertu si durement
body so thereby thrusts-he the king with all his strength so hard
ke il le porte del cheual a la tiere, si ke li fiers a
that he him carries from-the horse to the ground so that the iron with
tout grant piece del fust se li remest el cors dedens.
all great piece of-the shaft itself to-him remained in-the body within
Cestui cop uit li rois Boors et bien counut ke ses freres
This blow saw the king Bors and well knew that his brother
estoit naures mortelment, si es[t] si dolans ke il cuide
was wounded mortally so is-he so sorrowful that he thinks
bien morir de duel. lors laisse courre a Melehaut, lespee
well to-die of grief then lets-he run at Melehan the-sword
traite, si le fiert parmi le hiaume si grant cop ke il
drawn so him strikes-he through the helmet so great blow that he

li trence le hiaume et la coiffe et le fent tout duskes
to-him cuts the helmet and the coif and him cleaves all until-the
espaules. il estort son cop si le porte a tiere tout mort.
shoulders he wrenches his blow so him carries to ground all dead

The Battle of Winchester

LIII

Bors tells the dead Melehan that his death is poor amends for his brother's. The battle is even until nones. Then Lancelot cuts off the younger son's hand and his head, and the men of Logres flee into the forest, cut down as they go. Lancelot chases a traitorous duke of Gorre a league into the forest and kills him, then loses his way, and at evening a squire tells him King Lionel is dead.

Quant li rois Boors lot ocis en tel maniere, si dist: 'Ha!
When the king Bors him-had killed in such manner so said-he Ah
traitres, desloiaus, tant ai ore poure restor en ta mort del
traitor disloyal so-much have-I now poor amends in thy death for-the
grant damage ke tu mas fait, ki mon frere mas ocis!
great harm which thou me-hast done who my brother me-hast killed
Ciertes, tu mas mis le grant duel el cuer ki ia nen
Certainly thou me-hast put the great grief in-the heart which ever not-thence
istera a nul iour mais', Lors laisse courre as autres la v
will-go-out on any day more Then lets-he run at-the others there where
il uoit la gregnor presse, si commence a ocire et a abatre
he sees the greatest press so begins-he to kill and to strike-down
quankes il encontre deuant lui si mieruelleusement ke nus ne
whatever he meets before him so marvelously that any not
le uoit ki ne sen voist mout mieruellant. Et quant li
him sees who not himself-thence may-go much marveling And when the
cheualier de Gaunes uirent cair le roi Lyon, il descendent
knights of Gaunes saw fall the king Lionel they dismount

entor lui et le portent hors de la priesse desous vn orme. et
around him and him carry out of the press below an elm and
quant il le uoient si durement naure, il ni a celui ki
when they him see so hard wounded it not-there has that-one who
molt durement couroucies ne fu. ensi la bataille commenchie,
very hard angered not was thus the battle begun
piesme et dolereuse, ki dura duskes a eure de noune si
cruel and sorrowful which lasted until to hour of nones so
ingalment ke a paines pooit on counoistre la mellor partie.
evenly that with pains could one know the better part

Apries noune auint ke Lanselos encontra enmi la bataille
After nones happened-it that Lancelot met amid the battle
le plus iouene des fieus Mordret. il le counut mout bien
the most young of-the sons of-Mordred he him knew very well
as armes, car il portoit autreteus armes comme ses peres
by-the arms for he bore such arms as his father
porta. Et Lanselos, ki trop mortelment le haoit, li laisse
bore And Lancelot who too mortally him hated to-him lets
courre, lespee traite, et cil nel refuse pas, ains iete lescut
run the-sword drawn and he not-him refuses at-all rather casts the-shield
encontre le cop, si tost com il le uoit uenir. Et Lanselos
against the blow so soon as he it sees come And Lancelot
i fiert de toute sa force si ke il li trence lescut iuske
there strikes with all his force so that he to-him cuts the-shield until
en la boucle et le puing aueuc dont cil tenoit lescut. Et
into the boss and the fist with-it wherewith he held the-shield And
quant cil se senti mehaigniet, il uaut tourner en fuies,
when he himself felt maimed he wished to-turn in flight
mais Lanselos le tient si court ke il nen a loisir si le
but Lancelot him holds so short that he not-thereof has leisure so him
refiert si grant cop del espee ke il fait uoler la tieste
strikes-again so great blow with-the sword that he makes fly the head

a tout le hiaume vne lance lonc del bu. Et quant cil
with all the helmet a lance far from-the trunk And when those
de Logres uoient cestui mort apries son frere, il ne uoient
of Logres see this-one dead after his brother they not see
a cui il puissent auoir recouurier. Si tornent en fuies, por
to whom they may have recourse So turn-they in flight for
saluer lor cors ensi com il porent, et sadrecent uiers la
to-save their bodies thus as they could and themselves-direct toward the
foriest, ki pries diluec estoit a mains de .ij. liues. Et cil
forest which near from-there was at less than two leagues And those
les uont en caucant de plus pries ke il pueent, si comme
them go in chasing from more near than they can so as
cil ki les haoient mortelment. Si les ocient et abatent
those who them hated mortally So them kill-they and strike-down
par les chemins ausi comme ce fussent biestes mues. Et
along the roads just as if-these were beasts dumb And
Lanselos, ki les uait en cauchant deuant tout les autres,
Lancelot who them goes in chasing before all the others
les vait ociant et abatant si plenierement ke apries lui
them goes killing and striking-down so fully that after him
peussies ueoir la trace de ciaus cui il faisoit uoler a tiere.
might-you-have seen the track of those whom he made fly to ground
Tant a alet Lanselos ke il a consiut vn duc de Gorke
So-far has gone Lancelot that he has caught a duke of Gorre
il counissoit a traitor: maint anui auoit cil fait aucune
he knew for traitor many-a trouble had he done some
fois a maint haut home. Il li escrie, si tost com il le
time to many-a high man He to-him cries so soon as he him
counoist: 'Ha! traitres desloiaus, ciertes, or iestes vous a la
knows Ah traitor disloyal certainly now are you to the
mort venus ke riens ne vous puet garantir'. Et cil se
death come that anything not you can protect And he himself

regarde maintenant, et quant il uoit ke chou est Lanselos
looks at-once and when he sees that this is Lancelot
ki ensi le manache et ki le siut, lespee traite, si uoit
who thus him threatens and who him follows the-sword drawn so sees-he
bien ke il est ales, se il le puet ataindre, si broche le
well that he is gone if he him can reach so spurs-he the
cheual des espourons et sen tourne fuiant si grant
horse with-the spurs and himself-thence turns fleeing so great
aleure com il puet. il estoit mout bien armes et mout bien
pace as he can he was very well armed and very well
montes et Lanselos ausi. si commencha la chache entraus
mounted and Lancelot also so began the chase between-them
deus en tel maniere ki dura duskes en la foriest bien
two in such manner which lasted until into the forest well
vne liue en parfont. Lors recru li cheuaus au duc et cai
a league in deep Then gave-out the horse of-the duke and fell
mors desous lui. et Lanselos, qui de pries le siuoit, si tost
dead below him and Lancelot who from near him followed so soon
com il le vit a tiere, il li court sus, tout ensi a cheual
as he him saw on ground he to-him runs up all thus on horse
com il estoit, si le fiert parmi le hiaume si durement ke
as he was so him strikes-he through the helmet so hard that
il li met lespee duskes es dens. et cil kiet a tiere si
he to-him puts the-sword until into-the teeth and he falls to ground so
sestent, si comme cil qui la mors angoisse. Et Lanselos
himself-stretches so as he whom the death anguishes And Lancelot
nel regarde onkes, ains sen vait outre mout grant
not-him looks-at ever rather himself-thence goes on very great
oire. Et quant il cuide reuenir a ses homes, il les aslonge
pace And when he thinks to-return to his men he them distances
plus et se met toudis plus et plus en la foriest, si
more and himself puts always more and more into the forest so

ala tant fouruoiant cha et la, ensi comme auenture le
went-he so-much wandering here and there thus as adventure him
portoit, ke il vint apries eure de viespres en vne valee et
carried that he came after hour of vespers into a valley and
lors voit .i. vallet a piet ki venoit deuiers Wincestre. il
then sees a squire on foot who came from-toward Winchester he
li demande dont il vient. Et quant cil le uoit, il cuide
to-him asks whence he comes And when he him sees he thinks
tout maintenant ke il soit del roiame de Logres et ke
all at-once that he may-be of-the kingdom of Logres and that
il sen soit afuis de la bataille si li dist: 'Sire, ie
he himself-thence may-be fled from the battle so to-him says Lord I
vieng de la bataille et de la place v la dolerouse iornee
come from the battle and from the place where the sorrowful day
est auenue a nos gens, car, au mien essient, il nen
is happened to our people for to-the my knowledge it not-thence
est nes vns escapes ke vous tot seul; et nonporquant
is not-even one escaped except you all alone and nevertheless
trop sont cil de la dolant del roi Lyon, ki est mors
too-much are those from there sorrowful for-the king Lionel who is dead
en la bataille'. 'Coument?' fait Lanselos. 'est chou dont
in the battle How says Lancelot is this then
uoirs ke li rois Lyons soit mors?' 'Oil, voir', fait li valles.
true that the king Lionel may-be dead Yes truly says the squire
'iou le uic mort'. 'Chou est damages', fait Lanselos, 'car il
I him saw dead This is harm says Lancelot for he
estoit mout gentius hom et bons cheualiers de son cors'.
was very noble man and good knight of his body

The Archbishop's Hermitage

LIV

Lancelot rides grieving all night through the forest. In the morning he finds a poor hermitage on a rocky mountain, where the archbishop of Canterbury and Lancelot's cousin Bleoberis have lived since Salisbury. The archbishop urges him to amend a life spent in mortal sin, since God rejoices more over one repentant sinner than a hundred just men. Lancelot vows to stay with them and serve God for the rest of his life.

Atant commence Lanselos a plorer si durement ke il en
Thereupon begins Lancelot to weep so hard that he thereby
a toute la face moillie par desous le hiaume. 'Sire, il est
has all the face wet by below the helmet Lord it is
anuit mais tart et vous iestes lonc de rechet. v cuidies
tonight more late and you are far from lodging where think
vous anuit iesir?' 'Iou ne sai', fait il. 'moi nen caut v
you tonight to-lie I not know says he to-me not-thereof matters where
iou gisse'. Et quant li ualles entent ke il ni prendra
I may-lie And when the squire hears that he not-there will-take
plus, si se part tout maintenant de lui. Et Lanselos
more so himself departs all at-once from him And Lancelot
uait toutes uoies cheuaucant parmi la foriest tant ke il
goes all the-same riding through-amid the forest until that it
li anuite. Mais il faisoit tous iors le gregnor duel del
to-him grows-night But he made all days the greatest grief of-the
monde et disoit ke ore ne li estoit il riens remes el
world and said that now not to-him was it anything remained in-the
monde, quant il auoit pierdu sa dame et son cousin. En
world when he had lost his lady and his cousin In

tel ire et en tel dolor cheuauca tote la nuit ensi comme
such wrath and in such sorrow rode-he all the night thus as
auenture le portoit, car il naloit nule fois droit chemin.
adventure him carried for he not-went any time straight road
Av matin il auint ke il troua en vne montaigne toute
In-the morning it happened that he found on a mountain all
plaine de roche vn hiermitage asses estrange de gent. Il
full of rock a hermitage a-good-deal remote from people He
tourne cele part son frain et pense ke il ira ueoir cel liu,
turns that way his bridle and thinks that he will-go to-see that place
por sauoir ki i repaire. si sen uait tout contremont
for to-know who there dwells so himself-thence goes all upward
vn sentier estroit, tant ke il est uenus al hiermitage, ki
a path narrow until that he is come to-the hermitage which
asses estoit poures et gastes, et auoit iluec vne capiele
a-good-deal was poor and waste and had-there there a chapel
mout petitete et mout anchiene. il descent al entree et oste
very little and very ancient he dismounts at-the entry and removes
sespee et son hyaume, puis entre dedens et trueue deuant
his-sword and his helmet then enters within and finds before
vn autel .ij. preudoumes uiestus de reubes blanches et bien
an altar two worthy-men clad in robes white and well
resambloient iestre priestre. Il les salue et il se drecent
seemed-they to-be priests He them greets and they themselves raise
encontre lui, quant il loent parler, se li rendent son
to-meet him when they him-hear speak so to-him render his
salut. Et quant il lorent auise, il li coururent ambedoi,
greeting And when they him-had considered they to-him ran both
les bras tendus, si lacolerent et baisierent et font la grenor
the arms outstretched so him-embraced and kissed and make the greatest
fieste del monde et pleurent sor lui de ioie et de pitie.
feast of-the world and weep over him for joy and for pity

Quant Lanselos les vit ensi demener, il sen
When Lancelot them saw thus behave he himself-thereof
esmierueille mout si lor demande ki il sont: 'Ne nous
marvels much so to-them asks who they are Not us
counissies vous', font il, 'pas'? Et il les regarde adont
know you say they at-all And he them looks-at then
si counoist ke li vns estoit cil ki fu archeueskes de
so knows that the one was he who was archbishop of
Cantorbile, cil meismes ki pour la pais del roi Artu et
Canterbury he himself who for the peace of-the king Arthur and
de la roine auoit este en mout grant paine. Et li autres
of the queen had been in very great pain And the other
estoit Blihobleeris, cousins giermains Lanselot. Lors est molt
was Bleoberis cousin german of-Lancelot Then is-he very
lies de grant maniere Si lor demande: 'biau segnor, pour
glad in great manner So to-them asks-he fair lords for
Diu, quant venistes uous demorer en cest hiermitage? molt
God when came you to-dwell in this hermitage very
durement mest biel de chou ke ie uous i ai trouues'.
hard to-me-is fair from this that I you there have found
Et il li dient ke il i uinrent des le dolerous iornal
And they to-him say that they there came from the sorrowful day
ke la bataille fu en la plaigne de Salebieres. 'Si uous disons',
that the battle was in the plain of Salisbury So you tell-we
font il, 'tout pour uoir, a nos essians, ke de tous les
say they all for truth to our knowledge that of all the
compaignons de la Reonde Table nescaperent del camp ke
companions of the Round Table not-escaped from-the field but
nous doi et li rois Artus et Gyrfles li fius Do et Lucans
we two and the king Arthur and Girflet the son of-Do and Lucan
li Bouteilliers, mais nous ne sauons pas ke il deuinrent.
the Butler but we not know at-all what they became

‘Qvant auenture nous eut cha aportes, nous trouuasmes
When adventure us had hither brought we found
chaien vn preudoume hiermite ki nous aquelli auoec lui en
in-here a worthy-man hermit who us took-in with him in
compaignie. Si est puissedi mors et nous somes chi remes
company So is-he since dead and we are here remained
apries lui si i vserons, se Diu plaist, le remanant de nos
after him so there shall-use-we if God please the remnant of our
vies en sieruir Nostre Segnor en proier lui ke il nos pardoinst
lives in serving Our Lord in praying him that he us may-pardon
nos pechies. Et uous, sire, pour Diu, ke feres vous ki aues
our sins And you lord for God what will-do you who have
este iuskes a chi li miudres cheualiers del monde et mout
been until to here the best knight of-the world and much
aues eu de uostre uolente et dounour tierriene? pour Diu,
have had of your will and of-honor earthly for God
penses de uostre uie amender; car uous saues ore mout bien
think of your life to-amend for you know now very well
ke il en est des ore mais tans et bien saisons et aues le
that it thereof is from now more time and good season and have the
plus grant partie de uostre uie vsee en pechie mortel. Ciertes,
most great part of your life used in sin mortal Certainly
mout est li fruis mauuais ki ne meure. et nous trouuomes,
very is the fruit bad which not ripens and we find
li sant, ke Dius est plus lies dun pecheor, quant il vient a
the saints that God is more glad of-a sinner when he comes to
amendement et a repentanche de son meffait que de cent
amendment and to repentance of his misdeed than of hundred
iustes. Pour Diu, biaus sire, penses damender uostre uie et
just For God fair lord think to-amend your life and
de recounoistre uostre creator ki vous forma a sa samblance.’
to acknowledge your creator who you formed in his likeness

En tel maniere disoit li archeueskes a Lanselot. Et il
In such manner said the archbishop to Lancelot And he
li respondi tout maintenant en tel maniere; 'Ciertes, sire',
to-him answered all at-once in such manner Certainly lord
fait il, 'iou uous dirai ke iou ferai. Vous aues este mi
says he I you shall-tell what I shall-do You have been my
compaignon as aises et es deduis del monde. Or vous
companions in-the comforts and in-the delights of-the world Now you
referai compaignie en ceste vie et es trauaus del
shall-make-again-I company in this life and in-the toils of-the
siecle. Car, si mait Dius, iamais tant comme iou uiue
world For so me-help God ever so-long as I may-live
ne me remuerai de cestui liu, ains i vserai le remanant
not myself shall-move from this place rather there shall-use the remnant
de ma vie et i espanirai partie de mes pechies, se Diu
of my life and there shall-expiate part of my sins if God
plaist. Et iou proi a Nostre Segnor ke il mi laist iestre
please And I pray to Our Lord that he me-there may-let be
et uiure en tel maniere ke iou puisse desieruir la ioie de
and live in such manner that I may deserve the joy of
paradis. Et ciertes, biau segnor, se il estoit ensi ke vous ne
paradise And certainly fair lords if it were thus that you not
me vausissies rechoiure auoeques vous, si iroie iou aillors et
me might-wish to-receive with you so would-go I elsewhere and
i demouerroie'. Et quant cil lentendent, si en sont trop
there would-dwell And when they it-hear so thereby are-they too
durement liet et en mierchient Nostre Segnor mout de
hard glad and thereof thank Our Lord very with
boin cuer et entendent lor mains viers le ciel. Si remaint en
good heart and stretch their hands toward the heaven So remains in
tel maniere Lanselos en liermitage auoekes les .ij. preudomes,
such manner Lancelot in the-hermitage with the two worthy-men

molt lies et molt ioians de chou ke si boine compaignie
very glad and very joyful from this that so good company
li a Diex dounee. Mais atant laisse ore li contes a
to-him has God given But thereupon leaves now the tale to
parler de lui ichi endroit et retorne a ses deus cousins.
speak of him here in-place and returns to his two cousins

Lancelot the Hermit

LV

Bors takes Winchester, buries Lionel, and seeks Lancelot in vain for three months before going home. Hector wanders until he finds the hermitage, and stays. For four years Lancelot lives on bread, water, and roots, in prayer and penance. Hector dies, and Lancelot, falling sick, asks to be buried at the Dolorous Gard in Galehaut's tomb. He dies on the fifth day, while his companions sleep, and Bleoberis finds the archbishop rejoicing in a vision.

Or dist li contes ke, quant la bataille de Wincestre fu finee
Now says the tale that when the battle of Winchester was ended
et li home as enfans Mordret sen furent fui —
and the men of-the children of-Mordred themselves-thence were fled
cil ki porent — Li rois Boors a tout le pooir de sa
those who could The king Bors with all the power of his
gent entra en Wincestre, v cil dedens vausissent v non.
people entered into Winchester whether those within would or not
Quant il sot pour voir ke ses freres Lyons estoit mors, il
When he knew for truth that his brother Lionel was dead he
en fist duel grenor ke nus ne uous poroit retraire. Il fist
thereof made grief greater than any not you could recount He had
le cors si honorablement entierer comme on doit faire fil
the body so honorably bury as one ought to-do son

de roi dedens la cite en le maistre [e]glise. Et quant il fu
of king within the city in the master church And when he was
mis en tiere, il fist quere Lanselot et lonc et pries et de
put in ground he had seek Lancelot both far and near and from
toutes pars, mais nus nel quist ki adont le peust trouer.
all sides but any not-him sought who then him might find
si dura bien cele queste .iij. mois, et quant il vit ke nus
so lasted fully that quest three months and when he saw that any
ne le poroit trouuer, si dist vn ior a Hestor: 'Hestor,
not him could find so said-he one day to Hector Hector
biaus cousins, puis ke me sire Lanselos est si pierdus ke
fair cousin since that my lord Lancelot is so lost that
on nen set ne uens ne voie, iou men wel aler en
one not-thereof knows neither wind nor road I me-thence wish to-go into
nostre pais. et quant nous serons la uenut, si prendres
our country and when we shall-be there come so will-you-take
de nos .ij. roiames le quel ke vous vaures, v celui
of our two kingdoms the one-which that you will-wish either that-one
de Benuyc v celui de Gaunes, car vous aueres abandon
of Benwick or that-one of Gaunes for you will-have at-will
celui ki mieus vous plaira.' Et Hestor dist ke il na
that-one which best you will-please And Hector said that he not-has
ore nul talen ke il se parte del roiame de Logres,
now any desire that he himself may-depart from-the kingdom of Logres
ains i demorra encore vne piece. 'Mais, quant iou men
rather there will-stay yet a while But when I me-thence
partirai, sachies de uoir ke ie men irai tout droit a
shall-depart know for truth that I me-thence shall-go all straight to
vous, car vous iestes ore li hom el monde qui iou plus
you for you are now the man in-the world whom I most
aim; et iou le doi bien faire tout par droit et par raison'.
love and I it ought well to-do all by right and by reason

Ensi se parti li rois Boors del roiame de Logres
Thus himself departed the king Bors from-the kingdom of Logres
si sen rala en son pais aueuc sa gent. Et Hestor,
so himself-thence went-back into his country with his people And Hector
ki demora en la Grant Bertaigne, cheuaucha par le pais
who stayed in the Great Britain rode through the country
vne eure auant et lautre arriere, tant ke auenture laporta
one hour forward and the-other back until that adventure him-carried
a liermitage v Lanselos demoroit. Et li archeueskes lauoit
to the-hermitage where Lancelot dwelt And the archbishop him-had
ia a chou mene ke mout estoit de boine vie et de
already to this led that very he-was of good life and of
grant abstinence et faisoit mieruelles grant penanche, car
great abstinence and made marvels great penance for
il ne manioit fors pain et eue et rachines, teles comme
he not ate except bread and water and roots such as
il les queilloit en la roche, Et estoit adies en proieres et
he them gathered in the rock And was always in prayers and
en orisons et ior et nuit. Quant Hestor fu la uenus et
in orisons both day and night When Hector was there come and
il lot recouneu et Lanselos lui, Asses i ot plouret
he him-had recognized and Lancelot him A-good-deal there had wept
et larmes espandues et de lun et de lautre, car mout
and tears shed both by the-one and by the-other for much
sentramoient de grant amor. Si dist Hestor a Lanselot:
each-other-loved-they with great love So said Hector to Lancelot
'Sire, puis ke ie vous ai chi troue en si haut mestier
Lord since that I you have here found in so high office
comme el sieruice de Ihesu Crist et iou voi ke li
as in-the service of Jesus Christ and I see that the
demorers vous i plaist, iou sui cil ki iamais ne men
staying you there pleases I am he who ever not me-thence

partirai, a mon viuant, ain[s] vous i ferai compaignie
shall-depart in my living rather you there shall-make company
a toute ma vie'. Et quant cil de laiens lentendirent, si
for all my life And when those of in-there it-heard so
en furent mout ioiant de chou ke si boins cheualiers est
thereby were-they very joyful from this that so good knight is
offiers al sieruice Diu, si le retinrent a compaignon et a
offered to-the service of-God so him kept-they as companion and as
frere auoec iaus en liermitage si i deuint mout preudon
brother with them in the-hermitage so there became-he very worthy-man
de grant maniere et sierui molt volentiers Nostre Segnor.
in great manner and served very willingly Our Lord

Ensi furent li doi frere ensamble en liermitage et furent
Thus were the two brothers together in the-hermitage and were
tous iors ententiu el sieruice Nostre Segnor faire a lors
all days intent on-the service of-Our Lord to-do to their
pooirs. Quatre ans fu Lanselos laiens en tel maniere ke il nest
powers Four years was Lancelot in-there in such manner that it not-is
hom ki plus peus[t] souffrir paine et trauail ke il faisoit,
man who more could suffer pain and toil than he did
Si comme de ieuner et de Veillier en proieres et en orisons
So as of fasting and of Watching in prayers and in orisons
et demain leuer. Au quart an morut Hestor et trespassa
and early rising In-the fourth year died Hector and passed
del siecle et fu mis en tiere en liermitage meismes.
from-the world and was put in ground in the-hermitage itself
Al quinsime ior deuant mai acoucha Lanselos et fu mout
On-the fifteenth day before May took-to-bed Lancelot and was very
malades. Et quant il senti ke il le couuenoit trespasser
sick And when he felt that it him behooved to-pass
del siecle, il proia, tout en plorant, a larceuesque et a
from-the world he prayed all in weeping to the-archbishop and to

Blyobeheri ke, si tost kil seroit deuies, kil portassent son
Bleoberis that so soon as-he should-be departed that-they should-carry his
cors a la Dolerouse Garde et le mesissent dedens la tombe
body to the Dolorous Gard and him should-put within the tomb
meismes v li cors de Galehot le segnor des Lontaines
itself where the body of Galehaut the lord of-the Distant
Isles auoit este mis. Et il li creanterent ensi comme
Isles had been put And they to-him promised thus as
frere ke tout chou li feroient il. Quatre iors apries ceste
brothers that all this to-him would-do they Four days after this
requeste uesqui Lanselos et trespassa le siecle au quint ior.
request lived Lancelot and passed the world on-the fifth day
Et a celui point ke li ame li parti del cors nestoient
And at that point that the soul to-him parted from-the body not-were-they
pas deuant lui ne li archeuesques ne Bliobleheris, ains se
at-all before him nor the archbishop nor Bleoberis rather themselves
dormoient la deuant desous .i. arbre. Si auint lors ke
slept there before below a tree So happened-it then that
Bliobleheris sesueilla premiers et vit deuant lui larcheueske
Bleoberis himself-woke first and saw before him the-archbishop
ki dormoit et en son dormant ueoit aucune auision et
who slept and in his sleep saw some vision and
faisoit la grenor fieste del monde et disoit: 'Ha! Diex,
made the greatest feast of-the world and said Ah God
benois soies vous! or voi iou bien quanques iou weil veoir'.
blessed be you now see I well whatever I wish to-see

The Death of Lancelot

LVI

The archbishop says he saw angels carry Lancelot's soul to heaven, and vows to keep his penance. They carry the body to the Dolorous Gard, where the people weep and Bors, arriving by a hermit's prophecy, swoons over his lord. Lancelot is laid in Galehaut's tomb as the best knight who ever entered Logres, except Galahad his son. Bors joins the hermits for the rest of his life, and Walter Map ends his book.

Quant Bliobleheris vit ke li archeueskes demenoit si grant
When Bleoberis saw that the archbishop led so great
ioie et rioit si durement, il ne sesmieruella mie petit si ot
joy and laughed so hard he not himself-marveled at-all little so had-he
maintenant paor ke li anemis ne se fust mis dedens lui.
at-once fear that the enemy — himself might-be put within him
Et lors lesueille mout soues. Et quant il a les iex ouuiers et
And then him-wakes-he very gently And when he has the eyes opened and
il uoit Bliobleheri, il li dist: 'Ha! frere, por quoi maues vous
he sees Bleoberis he to-him said Ah brother for why me-have you
oste de la grant ioie v iou estoie ore?' Et cil li demande
taken from the great joy where I was now And he to-him asks
en quel ioie il estoit donc. 'Iou estoie', fait il, 'en si grant ioie
in what joy he was then I was says he in so great joy
et en si grant fieste et en si grant compaignie dangeles ke iou
and in so great feast and in so great company of-angels that I
onkes ne uic autant de gent ensamble en liu v iou fusse, et
ever not saw as-many of people together in place where I might-be and
enportoient lasus el ciel lame no frere Lanselot. Or alons
they-carried-off up into-the heaven the-soul of-our brother Lancelot Now let-us-go
veoir se il est deuies'. 'alons', fait Bliobleheris. Lors uienent
to-see if he is departed let-us-go says Bleoberis Then come-they

tout maintenant la v Lanselos estoit et trueuent ke la
all at-once there where Lancelot was and find that the
vie li estoit partie del cors. 'Ha! Diex', fait larcheueskes,
life to-him was parted from-the body Ah God says the-archbishop
'beneois soijes vous! or sai iou tout vraiement ke de lame
blessed be you now know I all truly that of the-soul
a cestui faisoient ore li angele grant fieste et grant ioie, car
of this-one made now the angels great feast and great joy for
iou le vi; or counois iou bien ke penance uaut sor toutes
I it saw now know I well that penance avails above all
choses. Iamais de penance ne me departirai, tant comme iou
things Ever from penance not myself shall-depart so-long as I
viue. Or couuient, Bliobleheri', fait il, 'ke nous portons son
may-live Now behooves-it Bleoberis says he that we may-carry his
cors a la Dolerouse Garde, car nous li creantasmes a son
body to the Dolorous Gard for we to-him promised in his
viuant'. 'voirs est', fait Bliobleheris. Lors apareillent vne biere
living true is-it says Bleoberis Then prepare-they a bier
cheualeresse. Et quant il lont aprestee, il i metent le
knightly And when they it-have made-ready they there put the
cors Lanselot, puis le prendent li vns dune part et li autres
body of-Lancelot then it take the one on-one side and the other
dautre et vont tant par lor iornees a grant trauail et
on-the-other and go so-much by their days'-journeys with great toil and
a grant paine ke il vinrent a la Dolerouse Garde. Quant
with great pain that they came to the Dolorous Gard When
cil del castiel sorent ke chou estoit li cors de Lanselot ke
those of-the castle knew that this was the body of Lancelot which
il aportoient, il vinrent encontre et rechiurent a plors et
they brought they came to-meet and received-it with weepings and
a larmes, et oissies entour le cors si grans plors et
with tears and would-you-have-heard around the body so great weepings and

si grans noises ke on ni oist mie Diu tounant. si
so great noises that one not-there would-have-heard at-all God thundering so
le descendirent en la maistre eglise del castiel et fisent av
it set-down-they in the master church of-the castle and did to-the
cors si grant hounor com il porent et comme il deuoient
body so great honor as they could and as they ought
faire a si preudome comme il auoit este en son viuant.
to-do to so worthy-man as he had been in his living

Celui ior meismes ke li cors fu aportes avint ke li rois
That day itself that the body was brought happened-it that the king
Boors descendi el castiel de la Dolerouse Garde a poi de
Bors dismounted in-the castle of the Dolorous Gard with little of
compaigni[e], si comme dun seul cheualier et dun escuier. Et
company so as of-a single knight and of-a squire And
quant il sot que li cors estoit en leglise, il ala cele part si
when he knew that the body was in the-church he went that way so
le fist descouurir et le uit tant ke il counut ke chou estoit
it had uncover and it saw so-long that he knew that this was
Lanselos, se sire. Quant il le counut, il se pasma sor lui
Lancelot his lord When he him knew he himself swooned over him
tout errant et commencha a faire si grant duel ke nus ne
all forthwith and began to make so great grief that any not
uit onkes grenor et a plaindre son segnor trop durement.
saw ever greater and to lament his lord too hard

Tout le ior fu le diex mout grans el castiel si fisent celui
All the day was the grief very great in-the castle so had-they that
ior meismes ouurir la tombe Galehot, ki tant estoit riche ke
day itself open the tomb of-Galehaut which so-much was rich that
nule plus, et lendemain misent le cors Lanselot dedens. Apries
none more and the-next-day put-they the body of-Lancelot within After
fisent metre letres par deseur ki disoient: ‘chi gist Galehos,
had-they put letters by above which said here lies Galehaut

li sires des Lontaines Illes et auoec lui si gist Lanselos del
the lord of-the Distant Isles and with him so lies Lancelot of-the
Lac, ki fu li miudres cheualiers ki onkes entrast el roiame
Lake who was the best knight who ever entered into-the kingdom
de Logres, fors seulement Galaas, sen fil'. Quant li cors fu
of Logres except only Galahad his son When the body was
entieres, vous peussies veoir el castiel grant duel et baisier la
buried you might-have seen in-the castle great grief and kiss the
tombe plus de cent fois. Et lors demanda li arceueskes au
tomb more than a-hundred times And then asked the archbishop of-the
roi Boort comment il estoit venus si a point a lentierement
king Bors how he was come so at point to the-burial
Lanselot. 'Ciertes', fait Boors, 'vns hiermites, hom relegieus ki
of-Lancelot Certainly says Bors a hermit man religious who
sest hierbegies el roiame de Gaunes, me dist, na pas
himself-has lodged in-the kingdom of Gaunes me told not-has-it at-all
.iiij. mois, ke, se iou estoie a cest ior de hui en cest castiel,
four months that if I were on this day of today in this castle
ke iov i poroie trouuer mon segnor Lanselot mort v vif.
that I there could find my lord Lancelot dead or alive
Si men est auenut tout ensi comme il me dist. Mais, por
So to-me-thereof is happened all thus as he me said But for
Diu, se vous saues v il a conuierse, puis ke iou ne le vi
God if you know where he has lived since that I not him saw
mais, si le me dites'. Et li archeueskes li conte maintenant
more so it me tell And the archbishop to-him tells at-once
toute la uie Lanselot et la fin de luj. et quant li rois Boors
all the life of-Lancelot and the end of him and when the king Bors
lot mout bien escoutet, se li respont et li dist: 'Sire,
him-had very well listened-to so to-him answers-he and to-him said Lord
puis ke me sire a este auoc uous iusques a la mort, Iou sui
since that my lord has been with you until to the death I am

cil ki en liu de luj uos ferai compaignie des ore mais en
he who in place of him you shall-make company from now more in
avant, tant comme iou viuerai; car iou men irai de ci auec
forward so-long as I shall-live for I me-thence shall-go from here with
vous et i userai le remanant de ma vie en liermitage'. et
you and there shall-use the remnant of my life in the-hermitage and
larcheuesques en mierchie Nostre Segneur molt doucement.
the-archbishop thereof thanks Our Lord very sweetly

A lendemain se parti li rois Boors de la Dolerouse Garde
On the-next-day himself departed the king Bors from the Dolorous Gard
et enuoia son cheualier et son escuier en son pais et manda
and sent his knight and his squire into his country and sent-word
a ciaus de Gaunes ke il fesissent roi tel comme il vausissent,
to those of Gaunes that they should-make king such as they would
car il ne reuenra iamais. Ensi sen ala li rois Boors auoec
for he not will-return ever Thus himself-thence went the king Bors with
larcheueske et auoec Bliobleheri et usa auoec iaus le remanant
the-archbishop and with Bleoberis and used with them the remnant
de sa vie el sieruice Nostre Segnor. Si se taist ore
of his life in-the service of-Our Lord So himself falls-silent now
atant maistre Gautiers Naap de lestoire de Lanselot, car bien
thereupon master Walter Map from the-history of Lancelot for well
la tout mene a fin selonc les coses ki en auinrent et
it-has all brought to end according-to the things which thereof happened and
fenist ichi endroit son liure si outreement ke apries lui nen
ends here in-place his book so utterly that after him not-thence
poroit nus plus conter ki nen mentist de toutes choses.
could any more tell who not-thereof would-lie of all things

Explicit de Lanselot del Lac.
Here-ends of Lancelot of-the Lake
